LƯU HOÀNG TRÍ

TỔNG ÔN TẬP CÁC CHUYÊN ĐỀ
TIẾNG ANH

- Ôn thi Tốt nghiệp THPT
- Tuyển sinh Đại học, Cao đẳng

TRƯỜNG PT-TH T[illegible] NG VƯƠNG
THƯ - VIỆN

4(N523)
8114.TK

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA HÀ NỘI

Lời nói đầu

Cuốn sách ***Tổng ôn tập các chuyên đề & dạng bài tập Tiếng Anh ôn thi Tốt nghiệp Trung học phổ thông và tuyển sinh Đại học, Cao đẳng*** được biên soạn theo cấu trúc đề thi mới nhất do Bộ Giáo dục và Đào tạo ban hành nhằm giúp các em học sinh đang học lớp 12 ôn luyện chuẩn bị cho kì thi Tốt nghiệp Trung học phổ thông và kì thi tuyển sinh vào các trường Đại học, Cao đẳng khối D theo hình thức trắc nghiệm khách quan.

Cuốn sách được chia theo các chuyên đề sau:

- Chuyên đề 1: Ngữ âm
- Chuyên đề 2: Từ vựng
- Chuyên đề 3: Ngữ pháp
- Chuyên đề 4: Chức năng giao tiếp
- Chuyên đề 5: Kĩ năng đọc
- Chuyên đề 6: Kĩ năng viết

Sau đó là một số đề thi đề nghị Tốt nghiệp Trung học phổ thông, và tuyển sinh vào các trường Đại học, Cao đẳng khối D.

Trong mỗi phần chuyên đề, chúng tôi trình bày đầy đủ và chi tiết các kiến thức quan trọng, cần thiết để học sinh có thể làm tốt các dạng bài tập theo chuyên đề đó. Chúng tôi quan niệm rằng học sinh cần nắm vững kiến thức trước khi làm bài tập thì việc luyện tập mới đạt hiệu quả cao. Hệ thống bài tập được chọn lọc kĩ càng, mang tính khái quát cao để học sinh có thể ôn tập kiến thức chuẩn bị cho các kì thi một cách tiết kiệm thời gian.

Chúng tôi hi vọng các em học sinh sẽ có một cuốn sách tham khảo bổ ích, giúp các em tự tin hơn khi làm bài kiểm tra và thi theo hình thức trắc nghiệm khách quan.

Mặc dù chúng tôi đã rất cố gắng, song cuốn sách sẽ không tránh khỏi thiếu sót. Rất mong sự đóng góp ý kiến của quí thầy cô và các bạn.

Tác giả

Chuyên đề 1:

NGỮ ÂM

Bài tập ngữ âm trong các đề thi trắc nghiệm tiếng Anh thường kiểm tra cách phát âm đúng các từ, trong đó có các nguyên âm, phụ âm và trọng âm từ, bao gồm hai dạng bài tập sau:

- Bài tập về cách phát âm (nguyên âm, phụ âm, tập hợp âm)
- Bài tập về trọng âm từ

Bài tập về cách phát âm có thể kiểm tra cách phát âm của một chữ cái hoặc nhiều chữ cái.

Ví dụ: Chọn phương án A, B, C hoặc D ứng với từ có phần gạch chân được phát âm khác với các từ còn lại trong mỗi câu sau:

1. A. such	B. cut	C. put	D. shut (đáp án C)
2. A. shown	B. flown	C. grown	D. crown (đáp án D)

Các chữ cái được kiểm tra trong một câu có thể giống nhau, nhưng cũng có thể khác nhau.

Ví dụ: Chọn phương án A, B, C hoặc D ứng với từ có phần gạch chân được phát âm khác với các từ còn lại trong mỗi câu sau:

1. A. accountant	B. amount	C. founding	D. country (đáp án D)
2. A. forget	B. forty	C. comfort	D. mother (đáp án B)

Trong hệ thống ngữ âm của tiếng Anh có 24 phụ âm (consonants), 22 nguyên âm (vowels) và nguyên âm đôi (diphthongs). Các nguyên âm và phụ âm tiếng Anh có cách phát âm nhất định, chúng ta hãy chú ý đến một số cách phát âm thông thường của một số chữ cái tiếng Anh sau:

I. NGUYÊN ÂM

Chữ cái *a* thường được phát âm là:

1. /æ/: map, national
2. /eɪ/: take, nature
3. /ɔ:/ (đặc biệt trước chữ cái *l*): all, altogether
4. /ɒ/: want, quality
5. /e/: many, any
6. /ɪ/: message, dosage
7. /ə/: afraid, familiar
8. /ɑ:/: after, car

Chữ cái *e* thường được phát âm là:

1. /e/: educate, flexible
2. /ɪ/: explore, replace
3. /i:/: fever, gene
4. /ə/: interest, camera

Chữ cái *i* thường được phát âm là:

1. /ɪ/: fit, slippery
2. /aɪ/: strive, mice
3. /ə/: terrible, principle

Chữ cái *o* thường được phát âm là:

1. /ɒ/: bottle, floppy
2. /ɔ:/: boring, lord
3. /ʌ/: son, done
4. /əʊ/: go, post
5. /ə/: computer, purpose
6. /wʌ/: one /wʌn/, once /wʌns/

Chữ cái *u* thường được phát âm là:

1. /ʊ/: put, push
2. /u:/: include
3. /ju:/: computer, human
4. /ʌ/: much, cut
5. /ə/: success
6. /ɜ:/: burn

Chữ cái *y* thường được phát âm là:

1. /ɪ/: physics, myth
2. /i/: city, worry
3. /aɪ/: shy, multiply

Một số nhóm chữ cái nguyên âm thường gặp:

Nhóm chữ cái	Cách phát âm thường gặp	Ví dụ
-ai-	/eɪ/ /eə/	main, entertain fair, armchair
-ay-	/eɪ/	say, stay
-au-	/ɔ:/	audience, naughty
-aw-	/ɔ:/	awful, law
-ea-	/e/ /eɪ/ /i:/ /ɪə/ /ɜ:/	dead great, break bean, beat fear, year heard, earth
-ei-	/eɪ/ /i:/ /aɪ/	eight, weight deceive, ceiling height
-ey-	/eɪ/ /i:/	hey, convey key
-ee-	/i:/ /ɪə/	cheese, employee engineer, deer
-ie-	/i:/ /aɪ/ /ə/ /aɪə/	piece, relieve tie, lie ancient, proficient quiet, society
-oa-	/əʊ/ /ɔ:/	load, toast abroad, broaden
-oe-	/əʊ/	toe, foe
-oi- hoặc -oy-	/ɔɪ/	voice, join, joy
-oo-	/u:/ /ʊ/ /ʌ/	tool, moon book, foot flood, blood
-ou-	/ʊ/ /u:/ /ə/ /ʌ/ /əʊ/ /aʊ/	could, would group, souvenir famous, tremendous trouble, couple soul, mould mouse, account
-ow-	/aʊ/ /əʊ/	cow, brown throw, know
-ui-	/ɪ/	build, guitar
-uy-	/aɪ/	buy, guy
-ew-	/ju:/	new, dew

Chú ý:

Những qui tắc trên chỉ là những cách đọc phổ biến, chúng ta còn gặp những trường hợp ngoại lệ. Chúng ta nên ghi nhớ cách phát âm của các từ khi học từ vựng mới.

Cách phát âm các nguyên âm còn khác nhau ở các từ loại khác nhau:

invite /ɪnˈvaɪt/ (v); invitation /ˌɪnvɪˈteɪʃn/ (n)

nature /ˈneɪtʃə(r)/ (n); natural /ˈnætʃrəl/ (adj)

II. PHỤ ÂM

Chúng ta hãy chú ý đến một số trường hợp sau.

Chữ cái *c* thường được phát âm là:

1. /k/: can, close
2. /s/ (đặc biệt khi nó đứng trước *i*, *e* hoặc *y*): city, certify, cycle
3. /ʃ/: special, ocean

Chữ cái *d* thường được phát âm là:

www.dayvanguynhon.ucoz.com

1. /d/: day, demand
2. /dʒ/: educate, graduate

Chữ cái *g* thường được phát âm là:

1. /g/: gain, regular
2. /dʒ/ (đặc biệt khi nó đứng trước *i*, *e*, hoặc *y*):origin, germ, gymnast
3. /ʒ/: garage, beige

Chữ cái *n* thường được phát âm là:

1. /n/: not, fun
2. /ŋ/: uncle, drink

Chữ cái *s* thường được phát âm là:

1. /s/: son, economist
2. /z/: rise, resumption
3. /ʃ/: sure, sugar
4. /ʒ/: usually, occasion

Chữ cái *t* thường được phát âm là:

1. /t/: ten, pretend
2. /tʃ/: culture, question
3. /ʃ/: mention, initial

Chữ cái *x* thường được phát âm là:

1. /gz/: example, exist
2. /ks/: box, mixture
3. /kʃ/: luxury, anxious

Một số nhóm chữ cái phụ âm thường gặp:

Nhóm chữ cái	Cách phát âm thường gặp	Ví dụ
-ch-	/k/	chemist, mechanic
	/tʃ/	chair, lunch
	/ʃ/	machine, chef
-gh- hoặc -ph-	/f/	rough, laugh
		photograph, paragraph
-qu-	/kw/	queen, require
-sh-	/ʃ/	share, smash
-th-	/θ/	think, depth
	/ð/	them, without

✪ Cách phát âm tận cùng –s hoặc –es

Đối với cách phát âm của tận cùng –s hoặc –es của động từ ngôi thứ ba số ít thì Hiện tại đơn hoặc danh từ số nhiều, ta có 3 cách đọc khác nhau dựa vào âm cuối của từ đó.

1. Phát âm là /s/ khi âm cuối của từ đó là: /f/, /k/, /p/, /t/, /θ/.
   Ví dụ: laughs /la:fs/, parks /pa:ks/, hopes /həʊps/, hates /heɪts/, cloths /klɒθs/.
2. Phát âm là /z/ khi âm cuối của từ đó là: /b/, /d/, /g/, /l/, /m/, /n/, /r/, /v/, /ð/, /ŋ/ và các nguyên âm.
3. Phát âm là /ɪz/ khi âm cuối của từ đó là /s/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/, /z/, /dʒ/.
   Ví dụ: crosses /ˈkrɔ:sɪz/, pushes /ˈpʊʃɪz/, watches /ˈwɒtʃɪz/, buzzes /ˈbʌzɪz/, changes /ˈtʃeɪdʒɪz/.

✪ Cách phát âm của tận cùng –ed của động từ có qui tắc

Đối với cách phát âm của tận cùng –ed của động từ có qui tắc (regular verbs), ta có 3 cách phát âm khác nhau dựa vào âm cuối của động từ nguyên mẫu.

1. Phát âm là /t/ khi âm cuối của động từ nguyên mẫu là: /f/, /k/, /p/, /s/, /tʃ/, và /ʃ/.
   Ví dụ: coughed /kɒft/, talked /tɔ:kt/, stopped /stɒpt/, watched /wɒtʃt/, brushed /brʌʃt/.
2. Phát âm là /d/ khi âm cuối của động từ nguyên mẫu là: /b/, /g/, /l/, /m/, /n/, /dʒ/, /r/, /v/, /z/ và các nguyên âm.
3. Phát âm là /ɪd/ khi âm cuối của động từ nguyên mẫu là: /t/, /d/.
   Ví dụ: waited /ˈweɪtɪd/, added /ˈædɪd/.

III. ÂM CÂM

Một số chữ cái trong một số từ bao gồm phụ âm và nguyên âm không được phát âm thành tiếng được gọi là âm câm (silent sounds). Sau đây là một số âm câm thường gặp:

Chữ cái – Trường hợp thường gặp	Ví dụ
b đứng cuối trong một số từ (thường đi sau *m*)	climb, dumb, comb
b đứng trước *t*	doubt, debt
c đứng trước *k*	snack, duck
c đứng sau *s* trong một số từ	scene, muscle, science
d trong một số từ	handsome, Wednesday
h trong một số từ	hour, exhausted
gh trong một số từ (đặc biệt là sau *i*)	weigh, sight
k đứng trước *n*	know, knee, knife
l trong một số từ	half, could
n đứng sau *m*	autumn, condemn
p đứng đầu một từ, theo sau là một phụ âm và một số trường hợp khác	psychology, receipt
r đứng trước một phụ âm khác hoặc đứng cuối từ đó	card, park, farm, burn, neighbour, volunteer
t trong một số từ	listen, castle

IV. TRỌNG ÂM

Đối với những từ trong tiếng Anh có từ hai âm tiết trở lên, có một âm tiết được nhấn mạnh với cao độ và trường độ lớn hơn những âm tiết còn lại. Đó chính là âm tiết mang trọng âm (stress) của từ đó.

Những từ có ba âm tiết trở lên thường có thêm trọng âm phụ (secondary stress) (ˌ) được nhấn nhẹ hơn so với trọng âm chính (primary stress) (ˈ).

Ta thường gặp bài tập tìm từ có trọng âm chính nhấn vào âm tiết có vị trí khác với ba từ còn lại. Ngoài ra, có thể có bài tập tìm từ có trọng âm chính rơi vào âm tiết đầu, thứ hai… hoặc âm tiết cuối trong mỗi câu.

Nhìn chung, chúng ta có một số qui tắc sau:

1. Đa số các động từ hai âm tiết có trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ hai:

   attract, begin, deny, forget, enjoy, pollute, relax…

   Trường hợp ngoại lệ: *answer, enter, happen, offer, open, open…*

2. Đa số các danh từ và tính từ hai âm tiết có trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ nhất:

   children, hobby, habit, labour, trouble, standard…

   basic, busy, handsome, lucky, pretty, silly…

   Trường hợp ngoại lệ:

   advice, reply, machine, mistake…

   alone, abrupt, absorbed, amazed…

3. Một số từ có hai âm tiết vừa là danh từ và cũng là động từ thì danh từ có trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ nhất, còn động từ thì trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ hai.

Danh từ	**Động từ**
ˈcontrast (sự tương phản)	conˈtrast (tương phản)
ˈdecrease (sự giảm)	deˈcrease (giảm)
ˈdesert (sa mạc)	deˈsert (rời bỏ)
ˈexport (hàng xuất khẩu)	exˈport (xuất khẩu)
ˈimport (hàng nhập khẩu)	imˈport (nhập khẩu)
ˈpresent (món quà)	preˈsent (trình bày)
ˈproduce (sản phẩm nói chung)	proˈduce (sản xuất)
ˈprogress (sự tiến bộ)	proˈgress (tiến bộ)
ˈprotest (sự phản đối)	proˈtest (phản đối)
ˈrebel (kẻ nổi loạn)	reˈbel (nổi loạn)
ˈrecord (hồ sơ, đĩa hát)	reˈcord (ghi lại, giữ lại)
ˈsuspect (kẻ bị tình nghi)	suˈspect (nghi ngờ)

Ngoại lệ: Một số từ sau vừa là danh từ và động từ nhưng có trọng âm chính không đổi.

ˈanswer (n, v): câu trả lời/ trả lời

ˈoffer (n, v): lời đề nghị/ đề nghị

ˈpicture (n, v): bức tranh/ vẽ một bức tranh

ˈpromise (n, v): lời hứa/ hứa

ˈtravel (n, v): du lịch/ đi du lịch

ˈvisit (n, v): cuộc viếng thăm/ viếng thăm

adˈvice (n, v): lời khuyên/ khuyên bảo

reˈply (n, v): lời đáp/ trả lời

4. Đối với các danh từ ghép được viết liền nhau thì trọng âm thường rơi vào âm tiết thứ nhất.

   airport, birthday, bookshop, gateway, guidebook, filmmaker…

Danh từ ghép tạo thành từ ngữ động từ (phrasal verbs) có trọng âm chính rơi vào thành phần thứ nhất còn ngữ động từ tương ứng có trọng âm chính rơi vào thành phần thứ hai và động từ nhận trọng âm phụ.

Danh từ ghép:

ˈcheck-up (sự kiểm tra toàn bộ nhất là sức khỏe)

ˈcheck-in (sự đăng kí ở khách sạn, sự đăng kí đi máy bay)

ˈdropout (người nghỉ học nửa chừng)

ˈbreakdown (sự hỏng máy)

ˈtryout (sự thử)

ˈwalkout (sự đình công đột ngột)

Ngữ động từ:

ˌcheck ˈup, ˌcheck ˈin, ˌdrop ˈout, ˌbreak ˈdown, ˌtry ˈout, ˌwalk ˈout…

5. Một số tính từ ghép có trọng âm chính rơi vào thành phần thứ nhất.

   ˈairsick (say máy bay)

   ˈairtight (kín hơi)

   ˈhomesick (nhớ nhà)

   ˈpraiseworthy (đáng khen)

   ˈtrustworthy (đáng tin cậy)

   ˈwaterproof (không thấm nước)…

   Ngoại lệ:

   ˌduty-ˈfree (miễn thuế), ˌsnow-ˈwhite (trắng như tuyết)

6. Các tính từ ghép có thành phần đầu tiên là tính từ hoặc trạng từ và thành phần thứ hai tận cùng là -ed thì trọng âm chính rơi vào thành phần thứ hai.

ˌbad-ˈtempered (xấu tính, dễ nổi nóng)

ˌshort-ˈsighted (cận thị)

ˌill-ˈtreated (bị đối xử tệ)

ˌwell-ˈdone (tốt, được nấu kỹ)

ˌwell-inˈformed (thông thạo, có được thông tin)

ˌwell-ˈknown (nổi tiếng)

7. Đối với các từ có tiền tố thì nhìn chung trọng âm không thay đổi so với từ gốc (nghĩa là trọng âm ít khi rơi vào tiền tố).

successful /səkˈsesfl/ → unsuccessful /ˌʌnsəkˈscsfl/

able /ˈeɪbl/ → unable /ʌnˈeɪbl/

Tuy nhiên, có một số trường hợp ngoại lệ đặc biệt là các từ có tiền tố ***under-***:

underlay /ˈʌndəleɪ/

underpass /ˈʌndəpɑːs/

8. Đối với các từ có hậu tố thì trọng âm có thể thay đổi, nhưng cũng có thể không thay đổi, và nếu có sự thay đổi về trọng âm thì cũng có thể thay đổi về cách phát âm.

protect /prəˈtekt/ → protection /prəˈtekʃn/ (không thay đổi về trọng âm)

accident /ˈæksɪdənt/ → accidental /ˌæksɪˈdentl/(thay đổi về trọng âm)

Tuy nhiên đối với các trạng từ được tạo thành từ tính từ bằng cách thêm hậu tố ***-ly*** thì không thay đổi vị trí trọng âm.

careful /ˈkeəfl/ → carefully /ˈkeəfəli/

Các hậu tố thường không làm thay đổi trọng âm của từ gốc là:

-ment	agree /əˈgriː/ → agreement /əˈgriːmənt/
-ship	relation /rɪˈleɪʃn/ → relationship /rɪˈleɪʃnʃɪp/
-ness	happy /ˈhæpi/ → happiness /ˈhæpinəs/
-er/-or	manage /ˈmænɪdʒ/ → manager /ˈmænɪdʒə(r)/
-hood	neighbour /ˈneɪbə(r)/ → neighbourhood /ˈneɪbəhʊd/
-ing	excite /ɪkˈsaɪt/ → exciting /ɪkˈsaɪtɪŋ/
-ise/-ize	modern /ˈmɒdn/ → modernize /ˈmɒdənaɪz/
-en	shorten /ˈʃɔːtn/, lengthen /ˈleŋθən/
-full	success /səkˈses/ → successful /səkˈsesfl/
-less	meaning /ˈmiːnɪŋ/ → meaningless /ˈmiːnɪŋləs/
-able	rely /rɪˈlaɪ/ → reliable /rɪˈlaɪəbl/
-ous	poison /ˈpɔɪzn/ → poisonous /ˈpɔɪzənəs/

9. Các danh từ có hậu tố là ***-sion***, ***-tion***, hoặc ***-cian*** thì trọng âm chính thường rơi vào âm tiết ngay trước đó (chính là âm tiết thứ hai từ cuối lên).

precision /prɪˈsɪʒn/

communication /kəˌmjuːnɪˈkeɪʃn/

mathematician /ˌmæθəməˈtɪʃn/

10. Các danh từ có hậu tố là ***-ity***, ***-logy***, hoặc ***-graphy*** thì trọng âm chính thường rơi vào âm tiết thứ ba từ cuối lên.

ability /əˈbɪləti/

technology /tekˈnɒlədʒi/

geography /dʒiˈɒgrəfi/

11. Các tính từ có hậu tố là ***-ic*** thì trọng âm chính thường rơi vào âm tiết ngay trước đó (chính là âm tiết thứ hai từ cuối lên).

scientific /ˌsaɪənˈtɪfɪk/

Còn những tính từ có hậu tố là ***-ical*** thì trọng âm chính thường rơi vào âm tiết thứ ba từ cuối lên.

electrical /ɪˈlektrɪkl/

mathematical /ˌmæθəˈmætɪkl/

12. Những từ có hậu tố như sau thì trọng âm chính thường rơi vào âm tiết cuối (chính là hậu tố đó).

-ee	agree /əˈgriː/, trainee /treɪˈniː/
-eer	volunteer /ˌvɒlənˈtɪə(r)/, engineer /ˌendʒɪˈnɪə(r)/
-ese	Vietnamese /ˌvjetnəˈmiːz/
-ique/ -esque	unique /juˈniːk/, picturesque /ˌpɪktʃəˈresk/
-ain (đối với động từ)	retain /rɪˈteɪn/, maintain /meɪnˈteɪn/

Ngoại lệ: committee /kəˈmɪti/, coffee /ˈkɒfi/, employee /ɪmˈplɔɪiː/

BÀI TẬP VỀ PHÁT ÂM

Exercise 1: Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.

1. A. matter B. back C. bag D. talk

2. A. that B. catch C. bad D. wash
3. A. day B. take C. face D. any
4. A. lazy B. lapel C. label D. laborer
5. A. butter B. put C. sugar D. push
6. A. too B. food C. soon D. good
7. A. would B. about C. round D. out
8. A. crew B. blew C. sew D. threw
9. A. come B. love C. women D. some
10. A. happy B. man C. many D. fat

***Exercise 2:* Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.**

1. A. pretty B. get C. send D. well
2. A. children B. child C. line D. sign
3. A. wait B. train C. said D. paid
4. A. mean B. weather C. head D. ready
5. A. those B. lose C. both D. goes
6. A. bus B. busy C. but D. bunch
7. A. wait B. rain C. laid D. hair
8. A. reply B. climb C. sign D. limb
9. A. neighbour B. receive C. weight D. great
10. A. warm B. wash C. wall D. walk

***Exercise 3:* Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.**

1. A. come B. roll C. comb D. grow
2. A. replace B. purchase C. surface D. palace
3. A. liable B. limit C. revival D. final
4. A. put B. pudding C. pull D. puncture
5. A. ghost B. hostage C. lost D. frosty
6. A. measure B. dreadful C. treasure D. breathe
7. A. suitable B. biscuit C. guilty D. building
8. A. physical B. mythology C. rhythm D. psychology
9. A. nature B. change C. gravity D. basis
10. A. talent B. campus C. many D. marry

***Exercise 4:* Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.**

1. A. hasty B. nasty C. tasty D. wastage
2. A. distribute B. tribe C. triangle D. trial
3. A. creature B. creative C. creamy D. crease
4. A. item B. idiom C. idle D. ideal
5. A. title B. destiny C. divine D. alien
6. A. taught B. laugh C. naughty D. slaughter

7. A. double B. enough C. thorough D. couple
8. A. punctual B. rubbish C. frustrate D. furious
9. A. manage B. sat C. add D. black
10. A. plenty B. marry C. merry D. heaven

***Exercise 5:* Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.**

1. A. climb B. find C. tin D. tiny
2. A. traffic B. landscape C. examination D. park
3. A. boot B. book C. hook D. foot
4. A. gather B. father C. hat D. mariage
5. A. bus B. bury C. up D. cut
6. A. head B. heat C. seat D. need
7. A. wild B. driven C. alive D. sign
8. A. penalty B. scenic C. epidemic D. level
9. A. food B. look C. took D. good
10. A. nourish B. flourish C. courageous D. southern

***Exercise 6:* Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.**

1. A. dealt B. dreamt C. heal D. jealous
2. A. slogan B. motor C. total D. proper
3. A. university B. unique C. unit D. undo
4. A. portrait B. painting C. railing D. complaint
5. A. ghost B. hostage C. lost D. frosty
6. A. examine B. famine C. determine D. miner
7. A. knowledge B. flower C. shower D. coward
8. A. practice B. device C. service D. mean
9. A. teacher B. clear C. reason D. mean
10. A. complete B. command C. common D. community

***Exercise 7:* Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.**

1. A. release B. pleasure C. leaver D. creamy
2. A. too B. good C. soon D. food
3. A. most B. cost C. coast D. host
4. A. head B. heat C. seat D. need
5. A. faithful B. failure C. fairly D. fainted
6. A. course B. court C. coursing D. courage
7. A. watch B. want C. bank D. what
8. A. low B. bow C. know D. slow
9. A. none B. tomb C. tongue D. onion
10. A. name B. flame C. man D. fame

Exercise 8: ***Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.***

1. A. count B. sound C. found D. mould
2. A. noon B. tool C. foot D. spoon
3. A. bush B. brush C. bus D. cup
4. A. dead B. bead C. thread D. bread
5. A. soul B. mould C. foul D. shoulder
6. A. says B. bays C. days D. rays
7. A. too B. food C. soon D. good
8. A. butter B. put C. sugar D. push
9. A. gear B. beard C. pear D. dear
10. A. reject B. regard C. represent D. religion

Exercise 9: ***Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.***

1. A. chooses B. houses C. rises D. horses
2. A. suit B. seven C. sugar D. sun
3. A. accurate B. accept C. accident D. success
4. A. cat B. ceiling C. nice D. centre
5. A. think B. thanks C. that D. three
6. A. happy B. hour C. high D. hotel
7. A. who B. where C. what D. why
8. A. off B. of C. safe D. knife
9. A. get B. gentle C. give D. guest
10. A. chair B. cheap C. chemist D. child

Exercise 10: ***Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.***

1. A. whole B. when C. which D. while
2. A. measure B. decision C. pleasure D. permission
3. A. while B. which C. who D. white
4. A. chorus B. cherish C. chaos D. scholarship
5. A. honourable B. honesty C. historic D. heir
6. A. research B. resent C. resemble D. resist
7. A. decision B. occasion C. expansion D. erosion
8. A. performed B. finished C. interviewed D. delivered
9. A. theatre B. therefore C. throughout D. thunder
10. A. measure B. leisure C. ensure D. pleasure

Exercise 11: ***Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.***

1. A. looked B. moved C. tried D. opened
2. A. gentle B. get C. game D. gift
3. A. church B. each C. much D. ache
4. A. pitch B. watch C. butcher D. architect
5. A. page B. game C. go D. gift
6. A. sense B. practise C. necessary D. advertise
7. A. chin B. champagne C. child D. charge
8. A. measure B. please C. his D. disease
9. A. practised B. raised C. rained D. followed
10. A. hour B. honest C. heir D. hospital

Exercise 12: ***Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.***

1. A. characteristic B. chapter C. chaotic D. archive
2. A. tiles B. follows C. letters D. books
3. A. tension B. precision C. provision D. decision
4. A. laugh B. enough C. plough D. cough
5. A. thank B. thought C. thin D. farther
6. A. think B. there C. theme D. thumb
7. A. south B. truth C. smooth D. both
8. A. loose B. lose C. cease D. dose
9. A. exchange B. ache C. stomach D. architect
10. A. ploughed B. fixed C. laughed D. coughed

Exercise 13: ***Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.***

1. A. breath B. breathe C. thank D. threat
2. A. beds B. doors C. students D. plays
3. A. myth B. with C. both D. tenth
4. A. cell B. centre C. city D. cube
5. A. though B. enough C. cough D. rough
6. A. kicked B. blocked C. naked D. locked
7. A. breathe B. breath C. myth D. thigh
8. A. cheese B. choice C. chord D. chunk
9. A. worth B. eighteenth C. path D. with
10. A. likes B. sighs C. heaps D. fuss

Exercise 14: ***Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.***

1. A. government B. glory C. worry D. wonder
2. A. promise B. devise C. surprise D. realize
3. A. weight B. height C. eight D. vein
4. A. hood B. hook C. stood D. tool
5. A. natural B. nature C. native D. nation
6. A. terrace B. territory C. terrific D. terror
7. A. kite B. blind C. right D. rigid
8. A. fond B. off C. follow D. honey

TRƯỜNG PT TH TRƯNG VƯƠNG
THƯ VIỆN
4(N523)
8114.TK

9. A. pretty B. level C. lesson D. length
10. A. eight B. weight C. heighten D. freight

Exercise 15: Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.

1. A. that B. hat C. park D. taxi
2. A. bad B. fan C. catch D. wash
3. A. worker B. teacher C. better D. prefer
4. A. monk B. boss C. shop D. got
5. A. tribe B. distribute C. triangle D. trial
6. A. clown B. cow C. plough D. tough
7. A. below B. beverage C. begin D. beneath
8. A. south B. brown C. soup D. house
9. A. comb B. come C. dome D. home
10. A. surgical B. surround C. surrender D. survival

Exercise 16: Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.

1. A. opportunity B. menu C. aptitude D. muscular
2. A. karate B. hazard C. glad D. blanket
3. A. master B. ask C. aspect D. castle
4. A. adult B. husband C. mutual D. culture
5. A. bound B. ground C. bounce D. cough
6. A. addition B. adventure C. advertise D. advantage
7. A. dealt B. dreamt C. steal D. jealous
8. A. fame B. change C. champagne D. blame
9. A. coward B. flower C. shower D. knowledge
10. A. use B. umbrella C. union D. unit

BÀI TẬP VỀ TRỌNG ÂM

Exercise 17: Choose the word that has the stress differently from that of the other words.

1. A. superman B. synthetic C. conversion D. professor
2. A. forests B. singing C. concerning D. burning
3. A. promise B. expensive C. constructive D. original
4. A. simultaneous B. feedback C. different D. errors
5. A. appropriate B. emotional C. pronounce D. situation
6. A. before B. arrive C. imply D. countless
7. A. incredible B. humidity C. environment D. definition
8. A. begin B. mountain C. kingdom D. passage
9. A. dinosaur B. calendar C. eternal D. history
10. A. document B. develop C. opponent D. astonish

Exercise 18: Choose the word that has the stress differently from that of the other words.

1. A. definition B. production C. situation D. politician
2. A. photography B. qualification C. occasion D. Canadian
3. A. ancient B. edible C. visual D. delicious
4. A. conscious B. speedometer C. thermometer D. parameter
5. A. sufficient B. deficient C. ancient D. efficient
6. A. personal B. entry C. personnel D. sample
7. A. temperature B. decorator C. calculator D. individual
8. A. particular B. subordinate C. several D. constructive
9. A. cultivate B. machine C. terminate D. operate
10. A. prediction B. judgment C. intelligent D. compulsion

Exercise 19: Choose the word that has the stress differently from that of the other words.

1. A. industry B. memory C. ambiguous D. advertise
2. A. tunnel B. nightmare C. retain D. thesis
3. A. rainfall B. inquire C. confide D. machine
4. A. tableland B. artistic C. contribute D. substantial
5. A. colony B. maintaining C. maintenance D. credible
6. A. priority B. relationship C. enthusiast D. endangerment
7. A. address B. include C. imply D. common
8. A. urbanization B. environment C. communication D. unexpectedly
9. A. computation B. unemployment C. desirable D. satisfaction
10. A. associate B. influential C. accountancy D. variety

Exercise 20: Choose the word that has the stress differently from that of the other words.

1. A. committee B. internal C. involvement D. margarine
2. A. negative B. pioneer C. interchange D. understand
3. A. relax B. wonder C. problem D. special
4. A. imagine B. confidence C. appearance D. discussion
5. A. sleepy B. trophy C. facial D. exact
6. A. original B. responsible C. reasonable D. comparison
7. A. authority B. necessity C. academic D. commercially
8. A. emotional B. simultaneous C. astrology D. applicable
9. A. reflection B. division C. industry D. remember
10. A. punctuality B. recommendation
C. undergraduate D. solidarity

Exercise 21: Choose the word that has the stress differently from that of the other words.

1. A. orientation B. electricity
C. disadvantageous D. developmental
2. A. autobiography B. responsibility
C. familiarization D. availability

3. A. adventurous B. petroleum C. recovery D. artificial
4. A. millennium B. congratulate C. corporation D. evacuate
5. A. intensive B. irritate C. implement D. enterprise
6. A. sacrifice B. waterproof C. attendant D. literal
7. A. recruit B. retail C. answer D. shortage
8. A. surface B. profound C. pursue D. perform
9. A. conclusion B. opponent C. arrival D. stadium
10. A. popular B. politics C. exciting D. origin

Exercise 22: ***Choose the word that has the stress differently from that of the other words.***

1. A. community B. peninsula C. participant D. concentration
2. A. accuracy B. individual C. recreation D. independence
3. A. accident B. direction C. factory D. hospital
4. A. beginner B. encounter C. disappear D. remember
5. A. ambulance B. another C. government D. institute
6. A. attractive B. laboratory C. investigate D. knowledgeable
7. A. capacity B. language C. dangerous D. courage
8. A. delicate B. promotion C. volcanic D. resources
9. A. disease B. design C. moustache D. aspect
10. A. material B. apologize C. disappointed D. informative

Exercise 23: ***Choose the word that has the stress differently from that of the other words.***

1. A. exception B. linguistics C. paragraph D. specific
2. A. authority B. calculation C. exceptional D. photographer
3. A. almost B. solar C. statement D. annoy
4. A. around B. legend C. question D. special
5. A. family B. mythical C. serious D. umbrella
6. A. product B. purpose C. postcard D. postpone
7. A. conversation B. potentially C. identify D. magnificent
8. A. champion B. composer C. research D. machine
9. A. beauty B. mutual C. Europe D. reduce
10. A. facilitate B. volume C. expensive D. significant

Exercise 24: ***Choose the word that has the stress differently from that of the other words.***

1. A. altogether B. amphibian C. historical D. psychology
2. A. enjoyable B. enthusiasm C. intelligent D. territory
3. A. overlook B. overnight C. overcome D. overcoat
4. A. bulletin B. enjoyable C. colorful D. beautiful
5. A. amusement B. autograph C. criticize D. fluoride
6. A. ability B. already C. retirement D. uniform
7. A. excellent B. gymnastics C. stadium D. restaurant

8. A. champion B. common C. peaceful D. respect
9. A. eventual B: qualify C. president D. volleyball
10. A. penalty B. personal C. position D. powerful

Exercise 25: ***Choose the word that has the stress differently from that of the other words.***

1. A. village B. begin C. column D. pity
2. A. average B. aquatic C. athletic D. available
3. A. schedule B. report C. promise D. orbit
4. A. accurate B. customer C. computer D. exercise
5. A. fancy B. portrait C. endless D. require
6. A. disappear B. government C. hurricane D. triangle
7. A. synthetic B. thoroughly C. tornado D. formation
8. A. basket B. blossom C. firewood D. perhaps
9. A. disease B. people C. upset D. upstairs
10. A. grapefruit B. personal C. release D. pumpkin

Exercise 26: ***Choose the word that has the stress differently from that of the other words.***

1. A. authority B. disadvantage C. photographer D. relationship
2. A. combination B: satisfaction C. transportation D. necessary
3. A. hockey B. involve C. review D. select
4. A. defensive B. spectator C. technician D. wonderful
5. A. eleven B. example C. origin D. synthetic
6. A. exhaust B. expect C. extra D. except
7. A. discharge B. honey C. decide D. appoint
8. A. captain B. belong C. respect D. avoid
9. A. evaluate B. favorable C. convenient D. relationship
10. A. signature B. scholarship C. terminal D. transaction

Chuyên đề 2:

TỪ VỰNG

Bài tập từ vựng trong các đề thi trắc nghiệm tiếng Anh thường bao gồm các dạng bài tập sau:

- Bài tập về cấu tạo từ hoặc dạng thức của từ (word formation).
- Bài tập về chọn từ (word choice) hoặc sự kết hợp của từ (collocations).

I. PHƯƠNG THỨC CẤU TẠO TỪ (Word formation)

Bài tập cấu tạo từ thường kiểm tra tất cả các dạng từ loại như danh từ, tính từ, trạng từ, động từ. Để làm tốt dạng bài tập này, trước hết, học sinh cần phải có một vốn từ vựng phong phú. Khi học một từ mới các em nên học tất cả các từ loại liên quan, bao gồm cả tiền tố hoặc hậu tố cấu tạo từ trái nghĩa.

Ví dụ: succeed (v), success (n), successful (adj), successfully (adv), unsuccessfully (adj), unsuccessfully (adv)

Khi lựa chọn đáp án đúng cho bài tập cấu tạo từ ta cần chú ý những điểm sau:

- Xác định từ loại của từ cần tìm
- Danh từ cần tìm số ít hay số nhiều
- Động từ trong câu chia ở thì nào, theo chủ ngữ số ít hay số nhiều
- Đáp án cần tìm có nghĩa khẳng định (positive) hay phủ định (negative)
- Nếu đáp án cần tìm là danh từ thì xác định đó là danh từ chỉ người, vật hay sự vật

Cần cân nhắc về nghĩa trong câu với những từ có cùng từ loại

Ví du minh họa 1: *Chọn từ thích hợp tương ứng với A, B, C hoặc D để hoàn thành câu sau:*

He cycled ________ and had an accident.

A. careful B. careless C. carefully D. carelessly

Hướng dẫn: Ta dùng trạng từ bổ nghĩa cho động từ *cycle*, ta lại chọn *carelessly* thay vì *carefully* vì nghĩa của câu.

Đáp án là D.

He cycle carelessly and had an accident. (Anh ấy đi xe máy ẩu và gặp tai nạn)

Ví du minh họa 2: *Chọn từ thích hợp tương ứng với A, B, C hoặc D để hoàn thành câu sau:*

Peter ______ opened the door of the cellar, wondering what he might find.

A. cautious B. cautiously C. cautional D. cautionally

Hướng dẫn: *Peter ___ opened the door of the cellar, wondering what he might find.* (Peter mở cửa tầng hầm __, tự hỏi rằng mình có thể tìm thấy gì.)

B Đáp án đúng: **cautiously** (trạng từ) = (một cách) thận trọng.

A Phương án sai: *cautious* (tính từ) = thận trọng.

C, D Phương án sai: không có các từ này trong tiếng Anh.

Ví du minh họa 3: *Chọn từ thích hợp tương ứng với A, B, C hoặc D để hoàn thành câu sau:*

The new dress makes you more _______.

A. beauty B. beautiful C. beautifully D. beautify

Hướng dẫn: *make + danh từ/đại từ + tính từ/tính từ so sánh hơn*: làm cho, khiến cho….

Đáp án là B. *"The new dress makes you more **beautiful**."* (Chiếc áo đầm mới làm cho bạn xinh đẹp hơn.)

Để làm tốt dạng bài tập từ vựng, ta cần lưu ý các điểm sau đây:

1. Thay đổi loại từ

Trong tiếng Anh có nhiều từ được sử dụng với những loại từ khác nhau và có nghĩa khác nhau.

Ví dụ: a cook (danh từ): đầu bếp, to cook (động từ): nấu ăn
a graduate (danh từ): sinh viên tốt nghiệp
to graduate (động từ): tốt nghiệp

2. Từ ghép

Danh từ ghép:

Phương thức thông thường nhất là sự ghép tự do hai danh từ với nhau để tạo thành danh từ mới. Cách ghép tự do này có thể áp dụng đối với nhiều trường hợp và danh từ ghép có thể là hai từ hoặc một từ, đôi khi mang một nghĩa mới.

Phần lớn danh từ ghép được tạo thành bởi:

- Danh từ + danh từ
  a tennis club: câu lạc bộ quần vợt
  a phone bill: hóa đơn điện thoại
  a train journey: chuyến đi bằng tàu hỏa
- Danh động từ + danh từ
  a swimming pool: hồ bơi
  a sleeping bag: túi ngủ
  washing powder: bột giặt
- Tính từ + danh từ
  a greenhouse: nhà kính
  a blackboard: bảng viết
  quicksilver: thủy ngân
  a black sheep: kẻ hư hỏng
- Một số ít danh từ ghép có thể gồm ba từ hoặc nhiều hơn:
  merry-go-round (trò chơi ngựa quay)
  forget-me-not (hoa lưu li)
  mother-in-law (mẹ chồng/ mẹ vợ)

Danh từ ghép có thể được viết như:

- Hai từ rời: book seller (người bán sách), dog trainer (người huấn luyện chó)
- Hai từ có gạch nối ở giữa: waste-bin (giỏ rác), living-room (phòng khách)
- Một từ duy nhất: watchmaker (thợ chế tạo đồng hồ), schoolchildren (học sinh), chairman (chủ tọa)

Trong cấu tạo "danh từ + danh từ", danh từ đi trước thường có dạng số ít nhưng cũng có trường hợp ở dạng số nhiều:

a vegetable garden (vườn rau)
an eye test (kiểm tra mắt)
a sports shop (cửa hàng bán đồ thể thao)
a goods train (tàu chở hàng)

Tính từ ghép:

Tính từ ghép thường gồm hai hoặc nhiều từ kết hợp với nhau và được dùng như một từ duy nhất. Tính từ ghép có thể được viết thành:

- Một từ duy nhất:
    - life + long → lifelong (cả đời)
    - home + sick→ homesick (nhớ nhà)
- Hai từ có dấu gạch nối ở giữa:
    - after + school →after-school (sau giờ học)
    - back + up → back-up/ backup (giúp đỡ)
- Nhiều từ có dấu gạch nối ở giữa:
    - a two-hour-long test (bài kiểm tra kéo dài 2 giờ)
    - a ten-year-old boy (cậu bé lên mười)

Tính từ ghép có thể được tạo thành bởi:

- Danh từ + tính từ:
    - duty-free (miễn thuế)noteworthy (đáng chú ý)
    - nationwide (khắp nước) blood-thirsty (khát máu)
- Danh từ + phân từ:
    - handmade (làm bằng tay) time-consuming (tốn thời gian)
    - breath-taking (đáng kinh ngạc) heart-broken (đau khổ)
- Trạng từ + phân từ:
    - ill-equipped (trang bị kém) outspoken (thẳng thắn)
    - well-behaved (lễ phép) high-sounding (huênh hoang)
- Tính từ + phân từ:
    - good-looking (xinh xắn) easy-going (thoải mái)
    - beautiful-sounding (nghe hay) middle-ranking (bậc trung)
- Tính từ + danh từ kết hợp với tận cùng –ed:
    - old-fashioned (lỗi thời) absent-minded (đãng trí)
    - fair-skinned (da trắng) artistic-minded (có óc thẩm mĩ)

3. Thay đổi phụ tố (affixation)

Bằng cách thêm phụ tố (affixation) bao gồm tiền tố (prefixes) vào đầu một từ gốc hoặc hậu tố (suffixes) vào cuối từ gốc ta có cách cấu tạo một hình thái từ mới rất phổ biến trong tiếng Anh.

✪ Hậu tố tạo động từ:

- ise/ -ize: modernize, popularize, industrialize…
- ify: beautify, purify, simplify

✪ Tiền tố phủ định của tính từ

Tiền tố phủ định	***Ví dụ***
im- (đứng trước tính từ bắt đầu *m* hoặc *p*)	immature, impatient
ir- (đứng trước tính từ bắt đầu *r*)	irreplaceable, irregular
il- (đứng trước tính từ bắt đầu *l*)	illegal, illegible, illiterate
in-	inconvenient, inedible
dis-	disloyal, dissimilar
un-	uncomfortable, unsuccessful

Lưu ý: Đối với các tiền tố in-, im-, ngoài ý nghĩa phủ định chúng còn mang nghĩa "bên trong; vào trong". ***Ví dụ:*** internal, income, import…

✪ Các tiền tố un- và dis- còn được dùng để thành lập từ trái nghĩa của động từ: tie/untie, appear/disappear… hoặc đảo ngược hành động của động từ: disbelieve, disconnect, dislike, disqualify, unbend, undo, undress, unfold, unload, unlock, unwrap…

Ngoài ra ta còn có tiền tố phủ định de- và non: decentralize, nonsense…

✪ Hậu tố tạo tính từ

-y:	bushy, dirty, hairy
-ic:	atomic, economic, poetic
-al:	cultural, agricultural, environmental
-ical:	biological, grammatical
-ful:	painful, hopeful, careful
-less:	painless, hopeless, careless
-able:	loveable, washable, breakable
-ive:	productive, active
-ous:	poisonous, outrageous

✪ Hậu tố tạo danh từ

Các hậu tố hình thành danh từ thường gặp.

Hậu tố	**Ý nghĩa**	**Ví dụ**
-er -or	– chỉ người thực hiện một hành động – ta còn dùng hậu tố này cho rất nhiều động từ để hình thành danh từ	writer, painter, worker, actor, operator
-er/-or	dùng chỉ vật thực hiện một công việc nhất định	pencil-sharpener, grater bottle-opener, projector
-ee	chỉ người nhận hoặc trải qua một hành động nào đó	employee, payee
-tion -sion -ion	dùng để hình thành danh từ từ động từ	complication admission donation, alteration
-ment	chỉ hành động hoặc kết quả	bombardment development
-ist -ism	chỉ người chỉ hoạt động hoặc hệ tư tưởng (hai hậu tố này dùng cho chính trị, niềm tin và hệ tư tưởng hoặc ý thức hệ của con người)	Buddhist, Marxist Buddhism, communism
-ist	còn dùng để chỉ người chơi một loại nhạc cụ, chuyên gia một lĩnh vực…	guitarist, violinist, pianist economist, biologist
-ness	dùng để hình thành danh từ từ tính từ	goodness, readiness,

		forgetfulness, happiness sadness, weakness
-hood	chỉ trạng thái hoặc phẩm chất	childhood, falsehood
-ship	chỉ trạng thái, phẩm chất, tình trạng, khả năng hoặc nhóm	friendship, citizenship, musicianship, membership

✪ Sau đây là các tiền tố khác trong tiếng Anh, một số từ có dấu gạch nối.

Tiền tố	**Ý nghĩa**	**Ví dụ**
anti-	chống lại	anti-war, antisocial
auto-	tự động	auto-pilot, autography
bi-	hai, hai lần	bicycle, bilingual
ex-	trước đây	ex-wife, ex-smoker
micro-	nhỏ bé	microwave, microscopic
mis-	tồi tệ, sai	misunderstand, misinform
mono-	một, đơn lẻ	monotone, monologue
multi-	nhiều	multi-national, multi-purpose
over-	nhiều, quá mức	overdo, overtired, overeat
post-	sau	postwar, postgraduate
pre-	trước	pre-war, pre-judge
pro-	tán thành, ủng hộ	pro-government, pro-revolutionary
pseudo-	giả	pseudo-scientific
re-	lần nữa, trở lại	retype, reread, rewind
semi-	phân nửa	semi-final, semicircular
sub-	bên dưới	subway, subdivision
under-	thiếu, không đủ	underworked, undercooked

✪ Bảng từ loại thông dụng

Động từ	**Danh từ**	**Tính từ**	**Trạng từ**
accept (chấp nhận)	*acceptance*	*acceptable* *unacceptable*	
	advantage (sự thuận lợi) ≠ *disadvantage*	*advantaged* (có điều kiện tốt) ≠ *disadvantaged* *advantageous* (có lợi)	*advantageously*
apologize (xin lỗi)	*apology*	*apologetic*	
appreciate (đánh giá cao, trân trọng)	*appreciation*	*appreciative*	
attend (tham dự)	*attention* (sự chú ý) *attendance* (sự tham dự, sự có mặt)	*attentive* (chú tâm, chú ý) ≠ *inattentive*	
appear (xuất hiện) *disappear* (biến mất)	*appearance* ≠ *disappearance*	*apparent* (hiển nhiên, rõ ràng)	*apparently*
apply (nộp hồ sơ)	*application* (lời xin, đơn xin) *applicant* (người nộp hồ sơ)		
approve (tán thành) *disapprove* (không tán thành)	*approval* ≠ *disapproval*		
attract (thu hút)	*attraction* (sự thu hút, điểm thu hút) *attractiveness* (tính thu hút, sự hấp dẫn)	*attractive* (hấp dẫn, thu hút) ≠ *unattractive* *attracted* (bị thu hút)	*attractively*
advertise (quảng cáo)	*advertising* (sự quảng cáo) *advertisement* (sự quảng cáo, mục quảng cáo) *advertiser* (nhà quảng cáo)		
benefit (giúp ích, làm lợi cho)	*benefit* (lợi ích)	*beneficial* (có lợi)	
believe (tin tưởng)	*belief* (niềm tin) *believer* (tín đồ)	*believable* (có thể tin được) ≠ *unbelievable*	*believably* ≠ *unbelievably*
	biology (sinh vật học) *biologist* (nhà sinh vật học)	*biological*	*biologically*
compete (cạnh tranh, tranh đua)	*competition* (cuộc thi, sự cạnh tranh) *competitor* (người tham gia thi đấu)	*competitive*	*competitively*
construct (xây dựng)	*construction*	*constructive* (tích cực, mang tính xây dựng)	*constructively*
continue (tiếp tục)	*continuation*	*continuous* (tiếp diễn, liên tục)	*continuously* *continually*

www.caykemquynhon.ucoz.com

- Một từ duy nhất:
  life + long → lifelong (cả đời)
  home + sick→ homesick (nhớ nhà)
- Hai từ có dấu gạch nối ở giữa:
  after + school →after-school (sau giờ học)
  back + up → back-up/ backup (giúp đỡ)
- Nhiều từ có dấu gạch nối ở giữa:
  a two-hour-long test (bài kiểm tra kéo dài 2 giờ)
  a ten-year-old boy (cậu bé lên mười)

Tính từ ghép có thể được tạo thành bởi:

- Danh từ + tính từ:
  duty-free (miễn thuế)noteworthy (đáng chú ý)
  nationwide (khắp nước) blood-thirsty (khát máu)
- Danh từ + phân từ:
  handmade (làm bằng tay) time-consuming (tốn thời gian)
  breath-taking (đáng kinh ngạc) heart-broken (đau khổ)
- Trạng từ + phân từ:
  ill-equipped (trang bị kém) outspoken (thẳng thắn)
  well-behaved (lễ phép) high-sounding (huênh hoang)
- Tính từ + phân từ:
  good-looking (xinh xắn) easy-going (thoải mái)
  beautiful-sounding (nghe hay) middle-ranking (bậc trung)
- Tính từ + danh từ kết hợp với tận cùng –ed:
  old-fashioned (lỗi thời) absent-minded (đãng trí)
  fair-skinned (da trắng) artistic-minded (có óc thẩm mĩ)

3. Thay đổi phụ tố (affixation)

Bằng cách thêm phụ tố (affixation) bao gồm tiền tố (prefixes) vào đầu một từ gốc hoặc hậu tố (suffixes) vào cuối từ gốc ta có cách cấu tạo một hình thái từ mới rất phổ biến trong tiếng Anh.

✪ Hậu tố tạo động từ:

- ise/ -ize: modernize, popularize, industrialize…
- ify: beautify, purify, simplify

✪ Tiền tố phủ định của tính từ

Tiền tố phủ định	*Ví dụ*
im- (đứng trước tính từ bắt đầu *m* hoặc *p*)	immature, impatient
ir- (đứng trước tính từ bắt đầu *r*)	irreplaceable, irregular
il- (đứng trước tính từ bắt đầu *l*)	illegal, illegible, illiterate
in-	inconvenient, inedible
dis-	disloyal, dissimilar
un-	uncomfortable, unsuccessful

Lưu ý: Đối với các tiền tố in-, im-, ngoài ý nghĩa phủ định chúng còn mang nghĩa "bên trong; vào trong". ***Ví dụ:*** internal, income, import…

✪ Các tiền tố un- và dis- còn được dùng để thành lập từ trái nghĩa của động từ: tie/untie, appear/disappear… hoặc đảo ngược hành động của động từ: disbelieve, disconnect, dislike, disqualify, unbend, undo, undress, unfold, unload, unlock, unwrap…

Ngoài ra ta còn có tiền tố phủ định de- và non: decentralize, nonsense…

✪ Hậu tố tạo tính từ

-y:	bushy, dirty, hairy
-ic:	atomic, economic, poetic
-al:	cultural, agricultural, environmental
-ical:	biological, grammatical
-ful:	painful, hopeful, careful
-less:	painless, hopeless, careless
-able:	loveable, washable, breakable
-ive:	productive, active
-ous:	poisonous, outrageous

✪ Hậu tố tạo danh từ

Các hậu tố hình thành danh từ thường gặp.

Hậu tố	**Ý nghĩa**	**Ví dụ**
-er -or	– chỉ người thực hiện một hành động – ta còn dùng hậu tố này cho rất nhiều động từ để hình thành danh từ	writer, painter, worker, actor, operator
-er/-or	dùng chỉ vật thực hiện một công việc nhất định	pencil-sharpener, grater bottle-opener, projector
-ee	chỉ người nhận hoặc trải qua một hành động nào đó	employee, payee
-tion -sion -ion	dùng để hình thành danh từ từ động từ	complication admission donation, alteration
-ment	chỉ hành động hoặc kết quả	bombardment development
-ist -ism	chỉ người chỉ hoạt động hoặc hệ tư tưởng (hai hậu tố này dùng cho chính trị, niềm tin và hệ tư tưởng hoặc ý thức hệ của con người)	Buddhist, Marxist Buddhism, communism
-ist	còn dùng để chỉ người chơi một loại nhạc cụ, chuyên gia một lĩnh vực…	guitarist, violinist, pianist economist, biologist
-ness	dùng để hình thành danh từ từ tính từ	goodness, readiness,

		forgetfulness, happiness sadness, weakness
-hood	chỉ trạng thái hoặc phẩm chất	childhood, falsehood
-ship	chỉ trạng thái, phẩm chất, tình trạng, khả năng hoặc nhóm	friendship, citizenship, musicianship, membership

✪ Sau đây là các tiền tố khác trong tiếng Anh, một số từ có dấu gạch nối.

Tiền tố	Ý nghĩa	Ví dụ
anti-	chống lại	anti-war, antisocial
auto-	tự động	auto-pilot, autography
bi-	hai, hai lần	bicycle, bilingual
ex-	trước đây	ex-wife, ex-smoker
micro-	nhỏ bé	microwave, microscopic
mis-	tồi tệ, sai	misunderstand, misinform
mono-	một, đơn lẻ	monotone, monologue
multi-	nhiều	multi-national, multi-purpose
over-	nhiều, quá mức	overdo, overtired, overeat
post-	sau	postwar, postgraduate
pre-	trước	pre-war, pre-judge
pro-	tán thành, ủng hộ	pro-government, pro-revolutionary
pseudo-	giả	pseudo-scientific
re-	lần nữa, trở lại	retype, reread, rewind
semi-	phân nửa	semi-final, semicircular
sub-	bên dưới	subway, subdivision
under-	thiếu, không đủ	underworked, undercooked

✪ Bảng từ loại thông dụng

Động từ	Danh từ	Tính từ	Trạng từ
accept (chấp nhận)	*acceptance*	*acceptable* *unacceptable*	
	advantage (sự thuận lợi) ≠ *disadvantage*	*advantaged* (có điều kiện tốt) ≠ *disadvantaged* *advantageous* (có lợi)	*advantageously*
apologize (xin lỗi)	*apology*	*apologetic*	
appreciate (đánh giá cao, trân trọng)	*appreciation*	*appreciative*	
attend (tham dự)	*attention* (sự chú ý) *attendance* (sự tham dự, sự có mặt)	*attentive* (chú tâm, chú ý) ≠ *inattentive*	
appear (xuất hiện) *disappear* (biến mất)	*appearance* ≠ *disappearance*	*apparent* (hiển nhiên, rõ ràng)	*apparently*
apply (nộp hồ sơ)	*application* (lời xin, đơn xin) *applicant* (người nộp hồ sơ)		
approve (tán thành) *disapprove* (không tán thành)	*approval* ≠ *disapproval*		
attract (thu hút)	*attraction* (sự thu hút, điểm thu hút) *attractiveness* (tính thu hút, sự hấp dẫn)	*attractive* (hấp dẫn, thu hút) ≠ *unattractive* *attracted* (bị thu hút)	*attractively*
advertise (quảng cáo)	*advertising* (sự quảng cáo) *advertisement* (sự quảng cáo, mục quảng cáo) *advertiser* (nhà quảng cáo)		
benefit (giúp ích, làm lợi cho)	*benefit* (lợi ích)	*beneficial* (có lợi)	
believe (tin tưởng)	*belief* (niềm tin) *believer* (tín đồ)	*believable* (có thể tin được) ≠ *unbelievable*	*believably* ≠ *unbelievably*
	biology (sinh vật học) *biologist* (nhà sinh vật học)	*biological*	*biologically*
compete (cạnh tranh, tranh đua)	*competition* (cuộc thi, sự cạnh tranh) *competitor* (người tham gia thi đấu)	*competitive*	*competitively*
construct (xây dựng)	*construction*	*constructive* (tích cực, mang tính xây dựng)	*constructively*
continue (tiếp tục)	*continuation*	*continuous* (tiếp diễn, liên tục)	*continuously* *continually*

		continual (lặp đi lặp lại, thường xuyên)	
contribute (đóng góp)	*contribution* (sự đóng góp) *contributor* (người đóng góp)	*contributory* ≠ *non-contributory*	
conserve (bảo tồn)	*conservation* (sự bảo tồn, sự bảo quản) *conservationist* (nhà bảo tồn)	*conservative* (bảo thủ)	*conservatively*
create (tạo ra)	*creation* (sự sáng tạo) *creativity* (tính sáng tạo) *creator* (người tạo ra)	*creative* (sáng tạo)	*creatively*
endanger (gây nguy hiểm)	*danger* (sự nguy hiểm)	*dangerous* (nguy hiểm) *endangered* (bị nguy hiểm)	*dangerously*
develop (phát triển)	*development* (sự phát triển)	*developed* (phát triển) *developing* (đang phát triển) *underdeveloped* (chậm phát triển)	
decide (quyết định)	*decision* (quyết định) *decisiveness* (tính quyết đoán)	*decisive* (quyết đoán) ≠ *indecisive* (do dự)	*decisively*
depend (phụ thuộc)	*dependence* (sự phụ thuộc) ≠ *independence* (sự độc lập)	*dependent* (phụ thuộc) ≠ *independent* (độc lập)	
destroy (phá hủy)	*destruction* (sự phá hủy) *destructiveness* (tính phá hoại)	*destructive* (có tính chất phá hoại)	*destructively*
direct (chỉ dẫn)	*direction* (sự chỉ dẫn, hướng) *director* (giám đốc, đạo diễn)		

differ (khác, không giống)	*difference* (sự khác biệt)	*different* (khác biệt) *indifferent* (hờ hừng)	*differently*
disappoint (làm thất vọng)	*disappointment* (sự thất vọng)	*disappointed* (bị thất vọng) *disappointing* (thất vọng)	*disappointingly*
economize (tiết kiệm)	*economy* (nền kinh tế) *economics* (kinh tế học)	*economic* (thuộc về kinh tế) *economical* (tiết kiệm)	*economically*
educate (giáo dục)	*education* (sự/nền giáo dục) *educator* (người làm công tác giáo dục) *educationalist* (nhà giáo dục)	*educational* (thuộc giáo dục, mang tính giáo dục) *educated* (được giáo dục)	*educationally*
employ (thuê, tuyển dụng)	*employment* (việc làm) ≠ *unemployment* *employer* (người chủ) *employee* (nhân viên)	*employed* (có việc làm) ≠ *unemployed*	
	environment (môi trường) *environmentalist* (người bảo vệ môi trường)	*environmental* (thuộc về môi trường)	*environmentally*
excite (kích thích, gây hào hứng)	*excitement* (sự hào hứng)	*excited* *exciting*	*excitedly* *excitingly*
experience (trải qua)	*experience* (trải nghiệm, kinh nghiệm)	*experienced* (có kinh nghiệm) ≠ *inexperienced*	
explain (giải thích)	*explanation* (sự/ lời giải thích)	*explanatory* (có tính giải thích)	
afforest (trồng rừng)	*forest* (rừng) *afforestation* (sự trồng rừng) ≠ *deforestation* (sự phá rừng)		

harm (gây hại)	*harm* (sự tổn hại) *harmfulness* (tính gây hại) ≠ *harmlessness*	*harmful* (có hại) *harmless* (vô hại)	*harmfully* ≠ *harmlessly*
hope (hi vọng)	*hope* (niềm hi vọng) *hopefulness* (tính đầy hi vọng) ≠ *hopelessness*	*hopeful* (đầy hi vọng) *hopeless* (vô vọng)	*hopefully* *hopelessly*
inform (thông báo)	*information* (thông tin) *informer* (người cung cấp thông tin)	*informative* (chứa nhiều thông tin) *informed* (có hiểu biết)	
imagine (tưởng tượng)	*imagination* (sự tưởng tượng)	*imaginary* (không thật, do tưởng tượng) *imaginative* (giàu trí tưởng tượng)	*imaginatively*
impress (gây ấn tượng)	*impression* (ấn tượng)	*impressive* (gây ấn tượng)	*impressively*
improve (cải thiện)	*improvement* (sự cải thiện)	*improved* (được cải thiện)	
know (biết)	*knowledge* (kiến thức, sự hiểu biết)	*knowledgeable* (hiểu biết)	*knowledgeably*
live (sống)	*life* (cuộc sống) *lifestyle* (lối sống) *living* (sự kiếm sống) *livelihood* (sinh kế) *lifespan* = *life expectancy* (tuổi thọ)	*alive* (còn sống) *lively* (sống động) *living* (đang tồn tại) *lifelong* (suốt đời) *live* (trực tiếp) *lifelike* (giống như thật)	
	major (chính yếu) ≠ *minor* (nhỏ, thứ yếu)	*majority* (đa số) ≠ *minority* (thiểu số)	
marry (kết hôn)	*marriage* (hôn nhân)	*married* ≠ *unmarried*	
necessitate (làm cho cái gì cần thiết)	*necessity* (thứ cần thiết)	*necessary* (cần thiết) ≠ *unnecessary*	*unnecessaribly*
obey (tuân theo)	*obedience* (sự tuân theo) ≠ *disobedience*	*obedient* (vâng lời) ≠ *disobedient*	*obediently* ≠ *disobediently*

oppose (chống đối)	*opposition* (sự chống đối) *opponent* (đối thủ)	*opposed* *opposing*	
	patience (sự kiên nhẫn) ≠ *impatience*	*patient* (kiên nhẫn) ≠ *impatient*	*patiently* ≠ *impatiently*
popularize (phổ cập)	*popularity* (tính phổ biến)	*popular* ≠ *unpopular*	*popularly*
	possibility (khả năng, sự có thể) ≠ *impossibility*	*possible* (có thể) ≠ *impossible*	*possibly* ≠ *impossibly*
prefer (thích hơn)	*preference* (sự ưu tiên)	*preferential* (ưu đãi) *preferable* (thích hơn)	*preferably*
produce (sản xuất, tạo ra)	*product* (sản phẩm) *produce* [U] (sản phẩm nói chung) *productivity* (năng xuất) *producer* (nhà sản xuất)	*productive* (sinh lợi, có năng suất)	
	profit (lợi nhuận) *profitability* (tính có lợi)	*profitable* (có thể mang lại lợi nhuận) *non-profit* (phi lợi nhuận) *profitless* (vô dụng)	*profitably*
protect (bảo vệ)	*protection* (sự bảo vệ)	*protective* (bảo hộ, che chở) *protected* (được bảo vệ)	*protectively*
pollute (làm ô nhiễm)	*pollution* (sự ô nhiễm) *pollutant* (chất gây ô nhiễm)	*polluted* (bị ô nhiễm)	
publicize (quảng cáo, làm cho mọi người biết)	*public* (công chúng, quần chúng) *publicity* (sự công khai, sự quảng cáo) *publicist* (người làm quảng cáo)	*public* (công cộng)	*publicly*

recognize (nhận ra)	*recognition*	*recognizable* (có thể nhận ra được) ≠ *unrecognizable*	*recognizably*
reduce (làm giảm)	*reduction* (sự cắt giảm)		
refuse (từ chối)	*refusal*		
repeat (lặp lại)	*repetition*	*repeated* (lặp đi lặp lại) *repeatable* (có thể nhắc lại)	*repeatedly*
	responsibility (trách nhiệm)	*responsible* (có trách nhiệm) ≠ *irresponsible*	*responsibly*
satisfy (làm hài long, thoả mãn)	*satisfaction*	*satisfied* (thoả mãn) *satisfactory* (thoả đáng)	
	science (khoa học) *scientist* (nhà khoa học)	*scientific*	*scientifically*
secure (bảo vệ)	*security* (sự an toàn)	*secure* (an toàn) ≠ *insecure*	*securely*
shorten (làm ngắn lại)	*shortage* (sự thiếu hụt) *shortlist* (danh sách rút gọn) *shortcoming* (thiếu sót)	*short*	*shortly* (nhanh, sớm)
signify (làm cho có ý nghĩa)	*significance* (ý nghĩa, tầm quan trọng)	*significant* (có ý nghĩa)	*significantly*
solve (giải quyết)	*solution* (giải pháp) *solver* (người tìm ra giải pháp)	*solvable* (có thể giải quyết được)	
submit (nộp)	*submission* (sự nộp, bài nộp)		
succeed (thành công)	*success*	*successful* ≠ *unsuccessful*	*successfully* *unsuccessfully*
survive (sống sót)	*survival* (sự sống sót)		
value (đánh giá, định giá)	*value* (giá trị)	*valuable* (có giá trị) ≠ *unvaluable* *invaluable* (vô giá)	
vary (thay đổi)	*variety* (sự đa dạng)	*various* (nhiều, đa dạng) *variable* (hay thay đổi) *varied* (khác nhau)	*variably*
widen (mở rộng)	*width* (bề rộng)	*wide* (rộng rãi) *widespread* (rộng khắp)	*widely*
	wisdom (sự khôn ngoan)	*wise* (khôn ngoan) ≠ *unwise*	*wisely*

II. CHỌN TỪ – SỰ KẾT HỢP TỪ (Word choice – Collocations)

Để làm tốt bài tập chọn từ hoặc sự kết hợp của từ ta cần chú ý những điểm sau:

– Đọc kĩ câu hỏi và chú ý dạng từ loại cần điền vào;

– Đọc kĩ 4 lựa chọn và ngữ nghĩa của chúng;

– Lựa chọn đáp án đúng dựa vào kiến thức từ vựng đã học;

– Nếu chưa quyết định dứt khoát đáp án đúng thì hãy dùng phương pháp loại trừ dần những phương án sai.

Ví dụ minh họa 1: *Chọn từ thích hợp tương ứng với A, B, C hoặc D để hoàn thành câu sau:*

English is now an effective medium of international _____.

A. communication B. talking C. speech D. saying

Hướng dẫn: Câu này hỏi sự sử dụng đúng từ trong ngữ cảnh.

A Đáp án đúng. *English is now an effective medium of international communication*. (Bây giờ tiếng Anh là phương tiện giao tiếp quốc tế hiệu quả). *communication* = sự giao tiếp.

B *talking* = sự nói; câu chuyện (không thể kết hợp với *international*).

C *speech* = lời nói; cách nói; bài diễn văn.

D *saying* = tục ngữ, châm ngôn.

Ví dụ minh họa 2: *Chọn từ thích hợp tương ứng với A, B, C hoặc D để hoàn thành câu sau:*

It was such a boring speech that I fell ______.

A. asleep B. sleep C. sleepy D. sleepily

Hướng dẫn: Câu này hỏi về khả năng kết hợp từ của động từ *fall*:

fall asleep = ngủ thiếp đi; dạng quá khứ của *fall* là *fell*.

Ngoài ra ta có: *feel sleepy* (cảm thấy buồn ngủ); quá khứ của *feel* là *felt*.

Đáp án là A.

It was such a boring speech that I fell alseep. (Bài diễn văn chán đến nỗi tôi ngủ thiếp đi.)

Ví dụ minh họa 3: *Chọn từ thích hợp tương ứng với A, B, C hoặc D để hoàn thành câu sau:*

He kindly offered to _______ me the way to the station.

A. explain B. direct C. describe D. show

Hướng dẫn:

D Đáp án đúng: **show someone the way** = chỉ đường cho ai.
He kindly offered to show me the way to the station. (Ông ta tử tế chỉ đường cho tôi đến nhà ga.)

A Phương án sai: *explain* = giải thích.

B Phương án sai: *direct someone to somewhere* = chỉ đường cho ai.
Ví dụ: *Could you direct me to the airport?* (Ông làm ơn chỉ đường cho tôi đến sân bay.)

C Phương án sai: *describe* = mô tả.

SỰ KẾT HỢP TỪ VỚI CÁC ĐỘNG TỪ THÔNG DỤNG

✪ DO (= *accomplish, carry out* – hoàn thành, thực hiện một công việc)

do an assignment:	làm một nhiệm vụ được giao
do business (with):	kinh doanh
do one's best:	cố gắng hết sức
do a crossword:	chơi ô chữ
do damage:	gây thiệt hại
do a course:	theo một khóa học
do history/ economics:	học lịch sử/ kinh tế học…
do an experiment:	làm thí nghiệm
do good:	bổ ích
do harm:	gây hại
do a job:	làm một công việc
do one's duty:	làm nghĩa vụ
do one's hair:	làm tóc
do one's homework:	làm bài tập về nhà
do research:	nghiên cứu
do someone a favour:	làm giúp ai điều gì
do the shopping:	mua sắm
do wonders/ miracles:	mang lại kết quả kì diệu
do without:	làm mà không có cái gì
do wrong:	làm sai

✪ MAKE (= *produce, manufacture* – làm ra, chế tạo ra)

make an appointment:	thu xếp một cuộc hẹn
make an attempt:	cố gắng, nỗ lực
make an announcement:	thông báo
make the bed:	dọn giường
make a cake:	làm bánh
make changes:	thay đổi
make a choice:	chọn lựa
make a decision:	quyết định
make a comment:	nhận xét
make a complaint:	phàn nàn, than phiền
make a comparison:	so sánh
make a contribution:	đóng góp vào
make a decision:	quyết định
make a difference:	tạo sự khác biệt
make a distinction:	tạo sự khác biệt/ tương phản
make an effort:	nỗ lực
make an excuse:	viện cớ
make a law:	thông qua đạo luật
make a mistake:	mắc sai lầm
make money:	kiếm tiền
make progress:	tiến bộ
make a plan:	vạch kế hoạch
make a phone call:	gọi điện thoại
make preparations for:	chuẩn bị cho
make a profit:	thu lợi nhuận
make a promise:	hứa hẹn
make a speech:	đọc bài diễn văn
make noise:	làm ồn
make a start:	khởi hành
make a suggestion:	đề nghị
make a will:	làm di chúc
make up one's mind:	quyết định
make use of:	sử dụng

✪ TAKE

take sb/sth for granted:	xem ai/ cái gì là tất nhiên
take place:	xảy ra
take part in:	tham gia vào
take effect:	có hiệu lực
take advantage of sth:	tận dụng cái gì
take notice of sth:	chú ý đến cái gì

take responsibility for sth:	chịu trách nhiệm về cái gì
take interest in:	quan tâm đến
take offence:	thất vọng, phật ý
take power/ office:	nhậm chức
take a pity on sb:	thông cảm cho ai
take a view/ attitude:	có quan điểm/ thái độ
take sth as a compliment:	xem cái gì như lời khen tặng
take sth as an insult:	xem cái gì như lời sỉ nhục

✪ HAVE

have difficulty (in) doing sth:	gặp khó khăn khi làm cái gì
have a problem:	có vấn đề, gặp khó khăn
have a go/ a try:	thử

✪ PAY

pay attention to:	chú ý đến
pay a compliment:	khen
pay a visit to sb:	đến thăm ai
pay tribute to:	bày tỏ lòng kính trọng

SỰ KẾT HỢP TỪ VỚI CÁC DANH TỪ THÔNG DỤNG

Danh từ	Cụm từ kết hợp
advice	– *follow/ take/ listen to/ act on sb's advice* (nghe theo lời khuyên của ai) – *get/ obtain/ receive advice* (nhận lời khuyên)
bill	– *pay/ settle/ pick up a bill* (trả một hóa đơn) – *be landed with/ face a bill* (chịu một hóa đơn) – *an unpaid bill* (một hóa đơn chưa thanh toán)
career	– *at the height/ peak of one's career* (ở đỉnh cao sự nghiệp) – *embark on a career* (dấn thân vào một nghề) – *have a career in* (có sự nghiệp trong lĩnh vực) – *climb the career ladder* (thăng tiến nghề nghiệp) – *wreck/ ruin one's career* (hủy hoại sự nghiệp của mình) – *a promising/ brilliant career* (sự nghiệp đầy hứa hẹn)
chance	– *get/ have a chance* (có cơ hội) – *give/ offer/ provide a chance* (tạo cơ hội) – *jump at/ seize/ grab a chance* (nắm lấy cơ hội) – *not stand a chance of doing sth* (không có khả năng làm gì) – *sheer/ pure chance* (sự tình cờ hoàn toàn) – *good/ fair/ high/ strong chance* (khả năng cao) – *minimal/ slight/ little chance* (khả năng mong manh)
demand	– *meet/ satisfy/ cope with a demand* (đáp ứng/ thoả mãn nhu cầu) – *increase/ boost/ stimulate demand* (tăng nhu cầu) – *big/ huge/ great/ considerable/ enormous/ strong demand* (nhu cầu lớn/ cao)
difference	– *make a difference* (tạo/ mang lại sự khác biệt) – *make all the difference* (thay đổi lớn) – *tell the difference* (phân biệt) – *feel/ know/ notice/ see/ perceive the difference* (cảm nhận, nhận thức sự khác biệt) – *considerable/ enormous/ major/ profound/ dramatic/ sharp difference* (sự khác biệt đáng kể, rõ rệt) – *with a difference* (đặc biệt khác thường)
difficulty	– *have/ experience/ encounter/ face/ get into/ run into difficulties* (gặp khó khăn) – *do sth with/ without difficulty* (làm gì một cách khó khăn/ dễ dàng) – *solve/ cope with/ deal with diff*iculties (giải quyết khó khăn) – *overcome/ surmount difficulties* (vượt qua khó khăn) – *great/ enormous/ considerable/ serious difficulty* (khó khăn lớn, nghiêm trọng)
fault	– *find/ locate/ identify/ discover fault* (tìm lỗi) – *correct/ fix/ repair/ rectify a fault* (sửa chữa một lỗi) – *be all/ entirely one's own fault* (hoàn toàn do lỗi của ai) – *be hardly one's own fault* (hầu như không phải lỗi của ai) – *at fault* (chịu trách nhiệm về một sai lầm)
favour	– *do sb a favour* (làm giúp ai điều gì) – *ask a favour* (hỏi xin một ân huệ) – *owe sb a favour* (mang ơn ai) – *return a favour* (đáp lại một ân huệ) – *find/ gain/ win favour* (có được sự ủng hộ) – *enjoy/ have/ stand in favour* (được sự ủng hộ) – *in favour of sth* (ủng hộ, tán thành cái gì)
habit	– *be in/ have the habit of* (có thói quen) – *form/ get into/ fall into/ make/ develop/ acquire a habit* (hình thành, tạo thành một thói quen) – *change a habit* (thay đổi một thói quen) – *break/ give up/ get out of a habit* (bỏ một thói quen) – *by habit* (do thói quen) – *out of habit* (vì thói quen)

measure	– *adopt/ take/ implement/ impose/ introduce a measure* (thực hiện/ áp dụng một giải pháp) – *appropriate/ effective/ necessary/ practical measure* (giải pháp thích hợp/ hiệu quả/ cần thiết/ thực tế) – *short-term/ temporary measure* (giải pháp tạm thời)
occupation	– *follow/ take up an occupation* (theo một nghề) – *choose an occupation* (chọn một nghề) – *give up one's occupation* (bỏ nghề)
opportunity	– *have/ find/ get an opportunity* (có/ tìm được một cơ hội) – *have ample/ considerable/ plenty of opportunity* (có nhiều cơ hội) – *have limited/ little/ not much opportunity* (có ít cơ hội) – *a good/ great/ wonderful/ golden opportunity* (cơ hội tốt, cơ hội tuyệt vời, cơ hội vàng)
problem	– *encounter/ be faced with/ confront/ be confronted with a problem* (gặp phải một vấn đề) – *solve/ deal with/ clear up/ overcome a problem* (giải quyết/ vượt qua một vấn đề) – *big/ great/ serious/ acute problem* (vấn đề lớn/ nghiêm trọng)
popularity	– *gain/ grow/ enjoy popularity* (ngày càng được ưa thích) – *at the peak of sb's/ sth's popularity* (ở đỉnh cao của sự nổi tiếng) – *an increase/ a rise in popularity* (sự ưa chuộng gia tăng) – *a decline/ drop in popularity* (sự giảm/ ít nổi tiếng)
relationship	– *have/ enjoy a close/ good relationship* (có mối liên hệ gần gũi/ tốt) – *build (up)/ develop/ establish/ foster a relationship* (xây dựng/ thiết lập mối quan hệ) – *improve/ strengthen a relationship* (cải thiện/ củng cố mối quan hệ)
standard	– *set a standard* (đưa ra, lập ra một tiêu chuẩn) – *meet/ achieve/ conform to/ comply with standards* (đáp ứng/ đảm bảo tiêu chuẩn) – *raise/ improve standards* (nâng cao/ cải thiện chất lượng)
subject	– *bring up a subject* (đưa ra một đề tài) – *cover/ discuss/ talk about/ touch a subject* (đề cập/ thảo luận một đề tài) – *drop a subject* (thôi nói về một đề tài) – *get off a subject* (chán nói về một đề tài)
time	– *spend time doing sth* (dành thời gian làm gì) – *take sb time to do sth* (mất thời gian làm gì) – *find/ make time to do sth* (có thời gian làm gì) – *kill/ pass time* (giết thời gian) – *time + pass/ go by/ elapse* (thời gian trôi qua)
title	– *hold a title* (giữ một danh hiệu) – *defend/ retain a title* (bảo vệ/ duy trì danh hiệu) – *lose a title* (mất danh hiệu) – *award/ bestow/ confer a title* (ban một danh hiệu) – *under a/ the title* (với tựa đề)
trouble	– *bring/ cause/ give sb trouble* (gây phiền toái) – *take the trouble to do sth* (nhọc công làm gì) – *have trouble with sth* (gặp rắc rối với cái gì) – *run into/ get into trouble* (gặp rắc rối)

NGỮ ĐỘNG TỪ (Phrasal verbs)

Ngữ động từ là động từ kép gồm có một động từ và một giới từ, trạng từ hoặc với cả hai. Các ngữ động từ không có nghĩa do các từ gộp lại nên ta phải học thuộc nghĩa của chúng.

Ví dụ: *turn down* (bác bỏ), *break down* (hỏng máy), *give up* (từ bỏ)

Ngữ động từ có thể phân biệt làm bốn loại:

– Ngữ động từ tách ra được (separable phrasal verbs) là các ngữ động từ cho phép tân ngữ chen vào giữa.

We put out the fire.
We put the fire out.
We put it out. (không được nói "We put out it.")

– Ngữ động từ không tách ra được (inseparable phrasal verbs) là các ngữ động từ không cho phép tân ngữ chen vào giữa, dù tân ngữ là danh từ hoặc đại từ.

We should go over the whole project.
We should go over it.

– Ngoài ra, ta còn gặp ngữ động từ không có tân ngữ (intransitive phrasal verbs).

When we got to the airport, the plane had taken off.
His grandfather passed away last year.

– Ngữ động từ gồm có 3 từ (three-word phrasal verbs) là các ngữ động từ không tách ra được.

We've put up with our noisy neighbours for years.
The machine stopped working because it ran out of fuel.

Các giới từ và trạng từ thông dụng trong ngữ động từ.

Các ngữ động từ thường có nghĩa khác với nghĩa của các thành phần tạo nên chúng. Tuy nhiên, trong một số trường hợp chúng ta có thể dễ dàng đoán được nghĩa của ngữ động từ qua việc nắm vững nghĩa của các giới từ và trạng từ thông dụng.

down (xuống đất):

cut down a tree, pull down a building, knock him down

down (lên giấy):

write down the number, copy down the address, note down a lecture

down (giảm bớt)

turn down the volume, slow down, (a fire) that died down

down (ngừng hoạt động hoàn toàn)

break down, close down

off (rời khỏi, lìa khỏi)

set off a journey, a plane that took off, a book cover that came off, see a friend off at the airport, sell goods off cheaply

off (làm gián đoạn)

turn off/ switch off the television, cut off the electricity, ring off

on (mặc, mang vào)

have a shirt on, put the shoes on, try a coat on

on (tiếp tục)

keep on doing something, work on late, hang on/ hold on

on (kết nối)

turn on/ switch on the light, leave the radio on

out (biến mất)

put out a fire, blow out a candle, wipe out the dirt, cross out a word

out (hoàn toàn, đến hết)

clean out the table, fill out a form, work out the answer

out (phân phát)

give out/ hand out copies, share out the food between them

out (lớn giọng)

read out all the names, shout out, cry out, speak out

out (rõ ràng)

make out the meanings, point out a mistake, pick out the best

over (từ đầu đến cuối)

read over/ check over something, think over/ talk over a problem, go over a report

up (làm gia tăng)

turn up the volume, blow up/ pump up a tyre, step up production

up (hoàn toàn, hết sạch)

eat/ drink it up, use up something, clear up/ tidy up the mess, pack up a suitcase, cut up into pieces, lock up before leaving, sum up a situation

Một số ngữ động từ thường gặp

✪ Ngữ động từ tách ra được

back up (ủng hộ)

If you don't believe me, ask Bill. He'll back me up.

blow up (làm nổ tung)

They blew up the bridge.

bring about (làm xảy ra, dẫn đến, gây ra)

What brought about the change in his attitude?

bring down (hạ xuống, làm tụt xuống)

We must bring the price of the product down if we are going to be competitive.

bring up (đưa ra một vấn đề)

My friend brought up that matter again.

bring up (nuôi dạy)

He was born and brought up in a good environment.

call off (hoãn lại, ngừng lại, bỏ đi)

They called off the meeting.

carry on (tiếp tục)

He carried on the task while others had left.

cheer up (làm cho ai phấn khởi, vui vẻ lên)

Mary's unhappy – we should do something to cheer her up.

clear up (dọn dẹp, giải quyết)

She cleared up the spare room.

cut down (giảm bớt, cắt bớt)

He cut down the number of employyes in his company.

do over (làm lại từ đầu)

I'm sorry but your writing is not good enough. You'll have to do it over.

draw up (lập kế hoạch)

The residents of the building drew up a plan to catch the thief.

fill in/ out (điền vào đơn, tờ khai)

He filled out the job application form.

fill up (đổ đầy, lấp đầy)

She filled up the jug with water.

find out (phát hiện ra)

She found out the truth.

figure out (suy nghĩ để tìm ra)

Can you figure out how to do it?

give away (cho, phân phát)

He gave away his clothes to the poor.

give back (hoàn lại, trả lại)

He hasn't given back my book yet.

give up (từ bỏ, bỏ cuộc)
You should always keep trying. Don't give up!

hand in (nộp bài vở…)
The students handed in their essays.

hand out (phân phát)
Peter, please hand these copies out to the class.

hang up (treo lên, cúp máy)
We were talking when she suddenly hung up the phone.

hold up (làm đình trệ, trì hoãn)
I was held up in the traffic for nearly two hours.

lay off (cho ai nghỉ việc)
His company has laid off another 50 people this week.

leave out (bỏ đi)
He left out all the prepositions.

let down (làm thất vọng)
He really let me down by not finishing the assignment.

look over (xem xét, kiểm tra)
I am going to look the house over next week.

look up (tìm kiếm trong tài liệu tra cứu)
She had to look up too many words in the dictionary.

make up (bịa, dựng chuyện)
He made up a story about how he got robbed on the way to work.

make out (hiểu)
He was so far away, we really couldn't make out what he was saying.

pass on (truyền, chuyển tiếp)
He passed the news on to the president.

pick out (chọn ra)
She picked out some very nice clothes.

pick up (đón ai bằng xe)
He had to leave early to pick up his daughter.

point out (chỉ ra)
She pointed out the mistakes.

put away (cất đi chỗ khác)
They put away the books.

put off (hoãn lại)
He asked me to put off the meeting until tomorrow.

put on (mặc quần áo)
He put on his hat and left.

put out (dập tắt)
They arrived in time to put out the fire.

set up (bắt đầu, thành lập, mở văn phòng, trường học…)
They set up a new office in Vietnam.

take down (ghi chép)
Take down the instructions.

take off (cởi bỏ quần áo)
He took off his hat when he saw her.

take over (tiếp quản, tiếp tục)
CBS Records was taken over by Sony.

throw away (ném đi, vứt đi)
Don't throw the book away.

try on (mặc thử quần áo)
She tried on five blouses in the shop.

try out (kiểm tra cái gì qua việc sử dụng nó)
I tried out the car before I bought it.

turn down (giảm âm lượng)
Could you turn down the radio, please?

turn down (khước từ)
his application was turned down.

turn into (biến thành, trở thành)
The prince was turned into a frog by the witch.

turn off (khóa, tắt…)
We turned off the television.

turn on (khởi động, bật lên)
Would you mind turning on the cassette player?

use up (dùng hết)
They have used up all the money.

✪ Ngữ động từ không tách ra được

break in/ into (đột nhập)
Someone broke into my apartment last night and stole all my money.

call on (thăm viếng)
He called on his friend.

call for (đòi hỏi)
This plan called for a lot of effort.

care for sb (chăm sóc)
He cared for his sick father for three years.

come across (gặp một cách tình cờ)
I came across a photo of my grandmother yesterday when I was cleaning the house.

count on (tin cậy vào, dựa vào)
I counted on him to show me what to do.

get over (vượt qua)
It took me two weeks to get over the flu.

go over (xem lại, đọc lại)

The students went over the material before the exam.

hear from (nhận được tin của ai)

Have you heard from him lately?

look after (chăm sóc, trông nom)

Who is looking after your dog?

look for (tìm kiếm)

He's looking for his keys.

look into (điều tra)

The police are looking into the murder.

run across (tình cờ gặp ai hoặc tìm thấy cái gì)

I ran across my old roommate at the college reunion.

run into (tình cờ gặp ai)

I ran into my old friend on the way to school.

stand for (thay cho, đại diện cho)

VIP stands for "very important person".

take after (giống ai)

He takes after his mother.

✪ Ngữ động từ không có tân ngữ

break down (hỏng máy)

The car has broken down.

break out (nổ ra, bùng nổ)

The war broke out when the talks failed.

catch on (hiểu)

He catches on very quickly. You never have to explain twice.

come back (quay lại, trở lại)

I will never come back to this place.

come in (đi vào)

They came in through the back door.

come to (tỉnh lại)

He was hit on the head very hard, but after several minutes, he started to come to again.

come over (ghé thăm nhà ai)

The children promised to come over, but they never do.

come up (nêu lên một vấn đề)

That issue never came up during the meeting.

die down (lắng xuống)

The dispute had died down and he was able to lead a normal life again.

dress up (mặc diện)

We should dress up to go to the theater.

drop by (tạt vào thăm, nhân tiện đi qua ghé vào thăm)

If you come to our town, please drop by to see us.

eat out (ăn tối ở nhà hàng)

Do you feel like eating out tonight?

get on (tiến bộ)

How are you getting on in your new job?

get up (ngủ dậy)

He got up early to go to the airport.

go back (trở về, về, trở lại)

I'll never go back to that place.

go off (nổ, reo lên)

The gun went off while he was cleaning it.

go off (đèn, điện... tắt)

Suddenly the lights went off.

go on (tiếp tục)

I though he would stop, but he just went on.

go on (xảy ra, diễn ra)

What's going on here?

go up (tăng, tăng lên)

The price of gas went up by 5%.

grow up (trưởng thành)

This is the town where I grew up.

hold on (giữ máy điện thoại không cắt)

Could you hold on a minute, please?

keep on (tiếp tục)

They kept on looking for the dog.

pass out (mê đi, bất tỉnh)

She passed out when she heard the news.

pull up (dừng lại, làm dừng lại)

A black car has just pulled up outside your front door.

set off (bắt đầu lên đường)

We set off very early.

show off (khoe khoang)

He's always showing off about how much money he has got.

show up (xuất hiện)

He didn't show up last night.

speak up (nói to hơn)

Can you speak up a little? I can't hear you?

take off (máy bay cất cánh)

The plane is taking off.

turn up (đến nơi, xuất hiện)

She invited a lot of people to her party, but only a few turned up.

✪ Ngữ động từ gồm có 3 từ

break in on (cắt ngang, làm gián đoạn)
He broke in on our conversation.

catch up with (đuổi kịp)
She left an hour ago. I'll never catch up with her now.

come in for (hứng chịu sự phê bình, công kích)
He has come in for a lot of criticism lately.

come up with (tìm ra lời giải, ý tưởng…)
He came up with a very good idea.

cut down on (giảm bớt)
He's trying to cut down on cigarettes.

do away with (loại bỏ)
Most students want to do away with the present curriculum.

drop out of (bỏ học nửa chừng)
A lot of students dropped out of school last year.

face up to (chấp nhận và đối mặt với một điều không dễ chịu)
You must face up to the fact that you can't do the job.

get away with (thoát khỏi sự trừng phạt)
This is the third time you have been late this week. You're not going to get away with it again.

get down to (bắt đầu công việc một cách nghiêm túc)
It's time to get down to business.

get on/ along with (hòa đồng với, có quan hệ thân hữu)
Do you get on with your neighbours?

get through with (hoàn thành, hoàn tất)
When will you ever get through with that project?

keep up with (theo kịp)
Salaries are not keeping up with inflation.

look forward to (mong chờ)
I look forward to the holiday.

look down on (xem thường)
He looks down on his neighbours.

look out for (cẩn thận, coi chừng)
Slow down. Look out for children crossing.

look up to (ngưỡng mộ, kính trọng)
He really looks up to his older brother.

make up for (bù đắp)
I got up late; I've spent all day making up for lost time.

put up with (chịu đựng)
I can't put up with him any more. He's so rude.

run out of (cạn, hết)
The car has run out of petrol.

THÀNH NGỮ (Idioms)

Một số thành ngữ thông dụng

Session 1: (dùng cho *Exercise 1 – Phần thành ngữ*)

- take someone/something for granted: cho là điều dĩ nhiên
- take something into account/ consideration: tính đến cái gì, kể đến cái gì
- take it easy: không làm việc quá căng thẳng
- keep an eye on someone/something: để mắt đến
- lose touch with someone: mất liên lạc
- pay attention to someone/something: chú ý đến
- catch sight of someone/something: nhìn thấy (trong chốc lát)
- at someone's disposal: có sẵn cho ai sử dụng theo ý muốn
- splitting headache: nhức đầu như búa bổ
- beat about the bush: nói vòng vo tam quốc
- off the peg: (quần áo) may sẵn
- on the house: không phải trả tiền
- on the shelf: (đồ vật) xếp xó, bỏ đi, không còn có ích nữa
- hit the roof: giận dữ
- make someone's blood boil: làm cho ai giận điên lên
- bring down the house: làm cho cả rạp hát vỗ tay nhiệt liệt
- pay through the nose: trả giá mắc
- by the skin of one's teeth: sát sao
- pull someone's leg: trêu chọc ai

Session 2: (dùng cho *Exercise 2 – Phần thành ngữ*)

- get butterflies in one's stomach: cảm thấy bồn chồn
- sell like hot cakes: bán đắt như tôm tươi
- shooting star: sao băng
- sow one's wild oats: trải qua thời kì theo đuổi những thú vui bừa bãi
- close shaves: những lần thóat hiểm trong gang tấc
- have a bee in one's bonnet about something: hay chú trọng, đặt nặng vấn đề gì
- blow one's own trumpet: huênh hoang
- fight tooth and nail: chiến đấu ác liệt, đánh nhau ác liệt
- head over heels: lăn lông lốc, hòan tòan
- smell a rat: nghi ngờ có âm mưu, nghi ngờ có sự dối trá
- know something like the back of one's hand: biết rõ điều gì
- the last straw: giọt nước tràn ly
- fly off the handle: mất bình tĩnh, thình lình nổi nóng

Session 3: (dùng cho *Exercise 3 – Phần thành ngữ*)

- drop someone a line: viết thư cho ai

- have/get cold feet: sợ hãi
- beside the point: không thích hợp
- for the time being: trong lúc này
- off the record: không được ghi, không chính thức
- piece of cake: việc dễ làm
- chip off the old block: người có tính cách giống bố
- one's cup of tea: người hoặc vật mình ưa thích
- get something on one's mind: đang bận tâm điều gì
- down at heel: tàn tạ xơ xác
- make money hand over fist: vớ được lợi lộc béo bở
- in/ out of practice: có/ không có thời gian luyện tập
- burn the candle at both ends: làm việc hết sức, không biết giữ sức
- play with fire: chơi với lửa
- go to town (on something): làm cái gì rất hăng hái (nhất là bằng cách chi tiền)
- have something on the tip of one's tongue: sắp nhớ ra, sắp nói ra

Session 4: (dùng cho *Exercise 4 – Phần thành ngữ*)

- put one's feet in it: làm phiền ai
- kill two birds with one stone: một công đôi việc, nhất cử lưỡng tiện
- hit the nail on the head: nói chính xác
- put two and two together: cứ thế mà suy ra
- keep one's fingers crossed for someone: cầu mong điều tốt đẹp cho ai
- its' no use/good crying over spilt milk: kêu ca cũng bằng thừa
- by a hair's breath: trong đường tơ kẽ tóc
- have a narrow/hairbreadth escape: súyt nữa thì bị tóm, may mà thóat được hình phạt
- a sight for sore eyes: cảnh tượng dễ chịu
- keep one's chin up: giữ vững can đảm
- come out of one's shell: trở nên dạn dĩ, cởi mở
- catch someone on the hop: đến một cách bất ngờ
- on the spot: lập tức, tại chỗ
- (like) water off a duck's back: nước đổ đầu vịt (không có tác dụng đối với ai)
- fight windmills: đánh nhau với kẻ địch tưởng tượng
- spitting image: có mặt giống như khuôn đúc

Session 5: (dùng cho *Exercise 5 – Phần thành ngữ*)

- money for old rope: cách làm ra tiền một cách dễ dàng
- old wives' tale: chuyện mê tín huyễn hoặc
- long shot: biện pháp xa vời, ít có cơ may thành công
- fly in the ointment: mắc míu nhỏ

- crying shame: sự xấu hổ
- wet blanket: người làm cho tập thể cụt hứng (vì bản thân ủ rũ buồn rầu)
- in every nook and cranny: trong mọi ngóc ngách
- general dogsbody: người gánh công việc cho người khác
- a soft spot for someone/ something: thích ai/ cái gì
- a last/ final fling: trò đùa, ăn chơi cuối cùng

Một số thành ngữ thông dụng về so sánh

Session 6: (dùng cho *Exercise 6 – Phần thành ngữ*)

- as strong as a horse/ an ox: khỏe như voi
- as thin as a rake: gầy đét
- as tough as old boots (nhất là về thịt): rất dai, khó nhai
- as white as a sheet: trắng bệch, xanh như tàu lá (do sợ hãi, chóang váng)
- as cool as a cucumber: bình tĩnh, không hề nao núng
- as deaf as a post: điếc đặc
- as different as chalk and/ from cheese: hòan tòan khác nhau
- fit as a fiddle: khỏe như vâm, rất sung sức
- like a lamb: hiền lành
- as good as gold: có đạo đức rất tốt, rất có giáo dục

Session 7: (dùng cho *Exercise 7 – Phần thành ngữ*)

- as light as air/ a feather: rất nhẹ
- as old as the hills: rất cũ, cổ xưa
- as plain as the nose on one's face: rõ như ban ngày
- as flat as a pancake: dét như cá mắm
- with knobs on (dùng để đáp lại một câu lăng mạ hoặc sự đồng ý dứt khóat): chẳng kém gì, được đấy
- as pleased as Punch: rất hài lòng
- as keen as mustard: hết sức hăng hái hoặc nhiệt tình
- as clear as a bell: rành rọt, dễ nghe
- as fresh as a daisy: tươi như hoa
- as hard as nails: cứng rắn, tàn nhẫn
- as large as life: được thấy xuất hiện bằng xương bằng thịt (không thể nhầm lẫn)
- as stubborn as a mule: cứng đầu cứng cổ, ương bướng

Session 8: (dùng cho *Exercise 8 – Phần thành ngữ*)

- as sober as a judge: tỉnh táo không hề say rượu
- (as) steady as a rock: vững như bàn thạch
- as thick as thieves: rất ăn ý với nhau, rất thân
- as red as a beetroot: đỏ như gấc
- to sleep like a log: ngủ say như chết

- to hold on like grim death: bám chặt không rời
- to eat/work like a horse: ăn/ làm khỏe
- to smoke like a chimney: hút thuốc lá cả ngày
- to fit like a glove: vừa khít
- to spread like wildfire: (tin đồn) lan rất nhanh
- like a house on fire: rất nhanh, mạnh mẽ
- as peas in a pod: giống nhau như hai giọt nước
- like a clockwork: đều đặn như một cái máy

BÀI TẬP VỀ PHƯƠNG THỨC CẤU TẠO TỪ

Exercise 1: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. Opera singer Maria Callas was known for her ________, powerful voice.
A. intensity B. intensify C. intense D. intensely
2. Many readers will disagree with the selection and the assessments as any guide will inevitably be __________.
A. subject B. subjected C. subjective D. subjectivism
3. Politicians ________ blame the media if they don't win the election. They're so predictable.
A. variable B. variety C. various D. invariably
4. This is very ________! Can't you practise your violin somewhere else?
A. convenient B. conveniently C. inconvenient D. convenience
5. I would like to show you my latest ________, which I have called "Boats on a Lake".
A. creativity B. creator C. create D. creation
6. During the festival ________ were hanging from every tree.
A. decorator B. decorations C. decorative D. decorativeness
7. He offered to give me a _______ of how the machine worked.
A. demonstrator B. demonstration C. demonstrate D. demonstrative
8. Those countries are _________ on other countries for most of their food.
A. dependent B. independence C. dependable D. dependability
9. He acted in an extremely ________ manner, which made him very unpopular.
A. dictation B. dictatorial C. dictate D. dictatorship
10. He hoped the _________ agency would find him a job.
A. employee B. unemployed C. employer D. employment

Exercise 2: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. I'm afraid they weren't very ________ about your idea of going out this evening.
A. enthusiastically B. enthusiastic C. enthusiasm D. enthusiast
2. The student did not do well in the class; he had a problem with _______.
A. absent B. absently C. absentee D. absenteeism
3. The information in that article is ________ inaccurate.
A. historian B. historical C. history D. historically
4. Some people show _________ attitude toward the misery of others, totally untouched by their suffering.
A. passionate B. dispassionate C. passion D. passionately
5. The charity organization received a large gift from the ________.
A. donation B. donor C. donate D. donated
6. The sick child must stay away from others because he has a ___ disease.
A. communicate B. communicable
C. communicator D. communication
7. The technician applying for the position was asked to supply a _______ list of her former places of employment.
A. chronological B. chronologically
C. chronologist D. chronology
8. I do not understand what these results _________.
A. significant B. signify C. significance D. significantly
9. They said my illness was _____. Don't they realize I'm in a lot of pain?
A. imaginary B. imagination C. imagine D. imaginative
10. She was a much less _________ student than her sister.
A. industrial B. industrious C. industrialist D. industrialized

Exercise 3: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. It was very _______ of you to notice that.
A. observant B. observatory C. observation D. observe
2. There is a __________ of carrots because of the bad weather.
A. shortly B. shorten C. shortage D. short
3. The factory manager was so ______ that the employees left in disgust.
A. dictator B. dictatorial C. dictatorship D. dictate
4. Their failure to act is ________ of their lack of interest.
A. indicate B. indicator C. indication D. indicative
5. The company was ________ and made a tremendous amount of money.
A. progress B. progressive C. progression D. progressively
6. The _______ account given by the witness convinced the jury of the plaintiff's right to a settlement.
A. description B. describing C. descriptive D. describe
7. We drove at five miles an hour because the ________ was so poor.
A. visible B. visual C. view D. visibility
8. They handled the merchandise ________ for the manufacturer.
A. exclude B. exclusion C. exclusive D. exclusively

www.dayvanquynhon.ucoz.com

9. The job was done ________, and we were extremely displeased.
A. incompetence B. incompetency C. incompetence D. incompetently
10. "Since the goal seems ________, I believe we should begin at once," Tom argued.
A. achievements B. achieve C. achievable D. achieving

Exercise 4: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. She seemed always to speak ________, especially at our club meeting.
A. controversy B. controversial C. controversially D. controvert
2. When the automobile salesman described the car so ________, we became very uneasy about buying it.
A. ambiguity B. ambiguousness
C. ambiguous D. ambiguously
3. He is under 25, hard-working and ________.
A. energy B. energize C. energizing D. energetic
4. Phil was sentenced to three years' _______ for his part in the robbery.
A. prisoner B. imprison C. imprisonment D. prison
5. Julia is being kept in an isolation ward because she is highly ______.
A. infectious B. infection C. infected D. infecting
6. The Pikes live in a four-bedroomed bungalow in a very nice ______ area.
A. residing B. resident C. residence D. residential
7. Don't put David in charge of arranging the theatre trip; he's too _____.
A. organized B. disorganized C. unorganized D. inorganized
8. The rhinoceros, whose numbers have dropped alarmingly recently, has been declared a/an ______ species.
A. danger B. endanger C. endangered D. dangerous
9. David's compositions are full of mistakes but they are very _______.
A. imaginative B. imaginary C. imagination D. imaginable
10. Scientists always _______ their data before writing up the results of their research.
A. analyse B. analysis C. analyses D. analyst

Exercise 5: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. Our professor _____ said we should turn in the assignment on Friday.
A. specific B. specifically C. specifying D. specifyingly
2. Students can gain _______ benefits from learning to work together.
A. considerate B. considering C. consideration D. considerable
3. The ______ dressed woman in the advertisement has a posed smile on her face.
A. stylish B. stylishly C. stylistic D. stylistically
4. Most people can _____ clearly between a real and a simulated smile.
A. differ B. different C. difference D. differentiate

5. Many citizens say they are ______ of the political policies of the candidates in a local election.
A. ignoring B. ignorant C. ignorantly D. ignorance
6. Although the professor gave _______ directions for the research paper, I was still confused.
A. define B. definite C. definitely D. definition
7. I am currently researching the reasons why birds _____ in winter.
A. migrate B. migrating C. migrant D. migration
8. During the Industrial Revolution, there was a complete ______ of society in urban areas.
A. transforming B. transformer C. transformation D. transformable
9. It's a very depressed area and almost 20% of young adults are ______.
A. employed B. unemployed
C. employment D. unemployment
10. I don't know why it caused so much ________.
A. embarrass B. embarrassed
C. embarrassing D. embarrassment

BÀI TẬP CHỌN TỪ – SỰ KẾT HỢP TỪ

Exercise 1: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. "How was your exam?" "A couple of questions were tricky, but on the ______ it was pretty easy."
A. spot B. general C. hand D. whole
2. If you practise regularly, you can learn this language skill in a short ______ of time.
A. period B. aspect C. arrangement D. activity
3. Students can ________ a lot of information just by taking an active part in class.
A. concern B. install C. appear D. memorize
4. A few years ago, a fire _____ much of an overcrowded part of the city.
A. battled B. devastated C. mopped D. developed
5. I have learned a lot about the value of labour from my ________ at home.
A. credit B. energy C. chores D. pot plants
6. Although he tried to hide it, it was ________ that Peter didn't like his birthday present.
A. foolish B. basic C. obvious D. vigorous
7. Environmental groups try to stop farmers from using harmful _______ on their crops.
A. economy B. agriculture C. investments D. chemicals
8. If you _________ too much on study, you will get tired and stressed.
A. concentrate B. develop C. organize D. complain

9. Good health and good methods of study are very necessary, or ______ for success in college.
A. available B. dependable C. essential D. efficient

10. In order to ________ their goals in college, students need to invest the maximum amount of time, money, and energy in their studies.
A. manage B. catch C. establish D. achieve

Exercise 2: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. Parents have great hopes or great ________ when they send their children to school.
A. wishes B. obligations C. expectations D. plans

2. No one ever takes any notices of what I say. They never give ______ to what I say.
A. reply B. opinion C. attention D. support

3. She has changed so much that I didn't _________ her right away.
A. admit B. recognize C. know D. believe

4. After graduation, she found ________ with a local finance company.
A. career B. workplace C. service D. employment

5. Education in Britain has improved since the government started a programme of educational __________.
A. reform B. resources C. experience D. system

6. The group leader wanted that everyone worked together; she asked for everyone's _______.
A. combination B. responsibility C. competition D. cooperation

7. With hard work and study, you can _______ the goals you set for yourself.
A. establish B. succeed C. achieve D. increase

8. David never wastes his time; he tries to improve himself at every ________.
A. technique B. opportunity C. consideration D. operation

9. All students in the school are free to ______ any youth club they wish.
A. perform B. become C. join D. participate

10. His _______ has always been to become a movie director. He wants very much to achieve it.
A. direction B. ambition C. business D. study

Exercise 3: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. All the negative violence on television has had a negative ______ on children.
A. damage B. programme C. process D. effect

2. My mother _________ for an environmental group. She helps raise money to protect wildlife.
A. identifies B. encourages C. shares D. volunteers

3. Students can _______ a lot of information just by attending class and taking good notes of the lectures.
A. absorb B. provide C. transmit D. read

4. Some people ________ that you can learn more by travelling to a place than by reading about it. They say firmly that it is true.
A. require B. encourage C. insist D. offer

5. Electric cars are better for the environment. ________, they can save money on gas.
A. In brief B. In conclusion
C. In contrast D. In addition

6. Overpopulation tends to create conditions which may result in ________ of food in developing countries.
A. supplies B. surpluses C. shortages D. failures

7. Because of the intensive farming, it's now hard to find certain wild birds in the region. Actually, they have become ________ birds.
A. unknown B. frightened C. hungry D. rare

8. While some areas are suffering from ________, others are experiencing heavy rains and floods.
A. the weather B. the climate C. drought D. problems

9. It will certainly enhance your _______ of reading when you are aware of very slight differences in the writer's expression.
A. condition B. recommendation
C. material D. enjoyment

10. A nurse must be ________ to the patients' needs; she must understand what they need, and be helpful and kind to them.
A. sensitive B. elegant C. aware D. likeable

Exercise 4: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. The area has an ________ of wildlife; there are lots of animals, birds, fish, and insects living there.
A. abundance B. impression C. entertainment D. organization

2. You should read this novel. It has been ________ recommended by all the critics.
A. deeply B. fully C. highly D. truly

3. True learning does not _______ in gathering facts from the teachers; it requires active assimilation of knowledge.
A. achieve B. consist C. depend D. come

4. There should be a law against ___________.
A. violent family B. fights for households
C. violent domestics D. domestic violence

5. The documentary was so _______ that many viewers cried.
A. moody B. touching C. touchy D. moved

6. ________ of patience, no one can beat Martha.
A. In front B. In spite C. In terms D. Regardless
7. The manager of the hotel always puts a _______ on the service quality.
A. pressure B. great stress C. stressed D. stressful
8. Human carelessness has been ________ damaging marine life.
A. warned against B. said to
C. prevented D. accused of
9. During the flood, many local people ran out of food and starved to _______.
A. dying B. die C. death D. dead
10. The saying that "Problems don't come _______," means that many problems can happen at the same time.
A. soon B. at once C. single D. singly

Exercise 5: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. In fairy tales, bad witches often try to cast a spell on the _______.
A. innocent B. innovative C. innovation D. initiative
2. The assistant manager is going to present a complete report on the _______ situation of the company.
A. funded B. financial C. financing D. finance
3. The environmental impact of tourism can be shocking and upsetting, but many governments think it is _______.
A. negative B. comprehensive
C. bad D. acceptable
4. In the recent decades, greater cultural ________ has been encouraged by tourism.
A. contact B. relation C. touch D. details
5. The majority of people agree that modern drugs are the most effective way to cure a(n) ________.
A. treatment B. symptom C. illness D. sicken
6. The government should take _______ to reduce the current high unemployment rate.
A. solutions B. charge C. measures D. steps
7. Janet has to travel a lot in her new job. She is on the _____ all the time.
A. field B. mood C. way D. go
8. Many companies now advertise their new products by distributing free _______ in public places.
A. deals B. examples C. instances D. samples
9. While there has been a significant _____ in the sales figures, there has been no corresponding profit growth because of increased production costs.
A. addition B. form
C. boost D. encouragement

10. There can be no doubt that recent statements ________ the company's true financial position were misleading.
A. referring B. dealing C. concerning D. respecting

Exercise 6: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. Before choosing a job, you should take into consideration several _______ including the supply and demand for professionals in any particular field.
A. turns B. factors C. remarks D. sides
2. The Business Advisory Council has been specially designed for those in _______ of advice about setting up new businesses.
A. absence B. duty C. want D. need
3. The city has ________ of young consumers who are sensitive to trends, and can, therefore, help industries predict the potential risks and success of products.
A. a high rate B. a high proportion
C. a high tendency D. a great level
4. Don't _______ to conclusions, we don't yet know all the relevant facts.
A. hurry B. jump C. rush D. run
5. I wonder if you could ________ me a small favour, Tom?
A. bring B. make C. give D. do
6. Scientists warn that many of the world's great cities are ________ flooding.
A. being B. at risk C. in danger of D. endangered
7. The boy's strange behavior aroused the _______ of the shop assistant.
A. thought B. consideration
C. expectations D. suspicions
8. The young should ________ themselves in social activities.
A. determine B. serve C. involve D. promote
9. I know from __________ that everything will be all right.
A. conscience B. experience C. wisdom D. care
10. Your second essay _________ improvement on the first one.
A. showed B. made C. cast D. presented

Exercise 7: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. The Women's World Cup is _________ in popularity.
A. competing B. establishing C. advancing D. growing
2. Our class team has won four _________ football matches.
A. successful B. unsuccessful C. success D. successive
3. We interviewed a number of candidates but none of them _______ us.
A. enlivened B. encouraged C. delighted D. impressed
4. __________ to British universities depends on examination results.
A. Admission B. Admittance C. Permission D. Permit

www.caykenquynhon.ucoz.com

5. I prefer ________ jobs because I don't like keep on moving and changing all the time.
A. demanding B. challenging C. tough D. secure

6. The investment has had ________ on the development of our project.
A. results B. progress C. interruptions D. effects

7. In China, there are still a lot of ______ families sharing the same house.
A. extent B. extension C. extended D. extensive

8. The deadline is coming, and we still have a lot of ________ problems.
A. unsolving B. dissolved C. unsolved D. solving

9. He received a medal in _______ for his bravery.
A. turns B. response C. favour D. reward

10. He left the country ________ arrest if he returned.
A. in fear that B. with fear of
C. under threat of D. with threat of

Exercise 8: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. Governments have ______ laws to protect wildlife from commercial trade and overhunting.
A. practised B. acted C. enacted D. observed

2. He was chosen for the post because of his keenness and ______ of responsibility.
A. sense B. meaning C. from D. way

3. My brother rarely ________ responsibilities in the family, which makes my father really angry.
A. gets B. takes C. receives D. puts on

4. My mother always ____ that we leave home for school with breakfast.
A. ensures herself B. checks again
C. takes certain D. makes sure

5. The shop assistant is ready to ___ me a helping hand. She was very nice.
A. offer B. take C. get D. lend

6. Many people do not realize that they are causing disasters ______ themselves.
A. to B. for C. with D. about

7. Forests all over the world are being ________ into deserts.
A. switched B. turned C. sent D. transferred

8. Many countries have built ________ to carry water to desert areas.
A. rivers B. channels C. canals D. lakes

9. People living in that area are _____ the threat ______ lead poisoning.
A. in – on B. with – to C. under – of D. on – for

10. Maps are made with the help of ________ photography.
A. air B. aeronautics C. aerial D. aeroplane

Exercise 9: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. The dunes in the Simpson Desert have gently ______ western faces and ______ eastern faces.
A. sloping – steep B. downward – upward
C. shallow – deep D. low – high

2. The great stretches of sandy desert almost ____ the centre of Australia.
A. round B. circle C. hold D. keep

3. Spinifex grows on the slopes of the dunes, which are up to 20 metres ________.
A. in high B. of height C. high D. tall

4. Hummock grasses grow in ____ sand on the crest, the top of the slope.
A. loose B. lost C. lose D. loosened

5. I saw a very nice apartment, _______ I decided to rent it right away.
A. if B. because C. so D. but

6. A newborn baby can neither walk nor crawl. A newborn antelope, _______, can run with minutes of birth.
A. however B. so C. otherwise D. even though

7. Endangered animals should be well protected in their natural ______.
A. position B. condition C. habitat D. status

8. The government has ____ different measures to protect the wildlife.
A. made B. listed C. done D. taken

9. One of the conservation efforts is the development of wildlife ______.
A. conserves B. reserves C. reservoirs D. reverses

10. Commercial exploration has driven many species to the ________ of extinction.
A. verge B. bank C. limit D. edge

Exercise 10: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. The biggest company in our local area is ________ the verge of bankruptcy.
A. in B. on C. at D. to

2. The Congress has ________ laws to protect wildlife from commercial trade and overhunting.
A. implied B. carried C. acted D. passed

3. The book is so interesting that I can hardly ______ it ______.
A. get – down B. pick – up
C. put – down D. not put – down

4. Books are a wonderful ______ of knowledge.
A. source B. resource C. flow D. provision

5. She had just enough time to _______ the report before the meeting.
A. turn round B. dip into C. get through D. go into

6. The book ________ quite well during the first few months.
A. had been sold B. was sold C. sold D. sells

7. If a water polo game is tied, there are two ________ periods of three minutes each.
A. overdue B. overlong C. overwork D. overtime

8. The player was ejected after committing five personal ________.
A. mistakes B. faults C. fouls D. errors

9. Sports competitions are held to _____ cooperation and solidarity among countries.
A. grow B. upgrade C. spring up D. promote

10. We have made careful preparations to welcome the _______ from 40 countries.
A. acquaintances B. attendants C. delegates D. hosts

Exercise 11: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. The footballers often sing the national ___ at the beginning of a match.
A. version B. lyrics C. anthem D. composition

2. The 22nd Southeast Asian Games were the first big sports event Vietnam ______.
A. owned B. hosted C. presented D. led

3. _______ swimming involves the players who perform beautiful maneuvers to music underwater.
A. Athletic B. Synchronized C. Aquatic D. Artistic

4. Our basketball team successfully _______ the championship.
A. protected B. held C. assured D. defended

5. When we reached the top of the hill, it was getting ________.
A. darkest B. the darker and the darker
C. darker and darker D. the darkest

6. Michael is obviously _________ anybody else here.
A. more and more talented B. talented as
C. more talented than D. the most talented among

7. ________ you give the answer, __________.
A. The quicker – the better you can get marks
B. The more quickly – the better marks you can get
C. More quickly – better marks you can get
D. The quickest – the best marks you can get

8. As you get _______, your memory gets ________.
A. old – worse B. older – worse C. oldest – worst D. older – bad

9. I am having ________ my colleagues.
A. responsibilities more than B. more than responsibilities
C. more responsibilities than D. as much responsibilities as

10. Although John is ______ than us, he is ________ at work.
A. as young – less experienced
B. younger – much more experienced
C. not older – more much experienced
D. older – least experienced

Exercise 12: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. _______ the Tet holidays come, ______ the children feel.
A. The more near – the more exciting
B. The nearer – the more exciting
C. The nearer – the more excited
D. Nearer – more excited

2. They solved the problems _______ we had expected.
A. more effective than B. most effectively as
C. more effectively than D. as effective as

3. Although I have _______ my cousin, I felt _______.
A. fewer money – happier B. more money – more happy
C. much money than – less happy D. less money than – happier

4. The institute was ________ by a famous scientist.
A. put up B. set out C. erected D. founded

5. Women in developing countries have spent time looking for ________ and encouragement from the society.
A. realization B. modernization C. development D. recognition

6. The Red Cross is ________ to giving medical aid and other help to victims of disasters.
A. aimed B. promoted C. dedicated D. designed

7. In 1864, twelve nations signed the first Geneva Convention, _______ down rules for the treatment and protection of the wounded.
A. laying B. lying C. lied D. laid

8. The Red Cross all over the world has carried out a lot of _______.
A. jobs B. works
C. missions D. responsibilities

9. The tsunami in 2004 _____ some countries and caused a lot of damage.
A. reached B. beat C. defeated D. hit

10. The belief that a woman's place is in the home is _______.
A. seating-deep B. deep-seating C. seated-deep D. deep-seated

Exercise 13: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. The policeman lost his temper. He _____________.
A. got nervous B. was in a bad mood
C. lost his nerve D. was in bad humour

2. I decided to visit a fortune-teller. That's what I _______ to do.
A. made up B. made up my mind
C. minded D. cared
3. You should go to your dentist for regular ________.
A. check-ins B. check-outs C. check-ups D. check-up
4. ________, Carlos is very punctual, but he was late tonight.
A. For a rule B. Like a rule
C. As a rule D. For a rule of thump
5. Without written evidence, we don't have a _________ on.
A. leg to stand B. foot to stand
C. leg to lean D. foot to lean
6. I was taking a quiet walk last night when, _____, there was a loud explosion.
A. all in all B. all at once
C. suddenly at once D. once at all
7. Everything could be done by _______.
A. a nod and bow B. a nod and wink
C. a wink and a nod D. a nod and a wink
8. These workers are at the ______ of the economic _______.
A. line – heap B. heap – bottom
C. bottom – heap D. heap – line
9. Tickets are available on a first come, __________ basis.
A. first got B. early served C. first served D. early got
10. "You should get rid of that old leather jacket." I know, but I hate to _______with it."
A. part B. leave C. break D. cut

Exercise 14: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. You can't get a soda from that machine. There's a sign on it says that "________".
A. Out of job B. Out of hand
C. Out of order D. Out of mind
2. I don't have much cash _______, but I can get some from an automatic teller machine.
A. in hand B. on hand C. into hand D. under hand
3. "I like that painting you bought. Did it cost much?" "No, the artist sold it to me for ______."
A. close to nothing B. next to anything
C. next to nothing D. anything next
4. "What's Peter's cousin's name?" "It's on the tip of my _______, but I can't quite remember."
A. mouth B. lips C. tongue D. memory

5. What a confusing story! I can't make ______ of it.
A. sense B. meaning C. logic D. understanding
6. Women have struggled for the same social, economic, and political _______ for them as for men.
A. state B. status C. being D. welfare
7. Women now are more ______ in the public life than years ago.
A. involved B. ensured C. felt D. influenced
8. Every citizen can enjoy the same _______ to vote, to gain education and to work.
A. authority B. right C. way D. chance
9. The local council ________ campaigns against illiteracy.
A. requires B. advocates C. admits D. affects
10. Widespread _______ about women's intellectual ability restricted their job opportunities.
A. suspicion B. challenge C. doubt D. rumour

Bài tập THÀNH NGỮ (Idioms)

Exercise 1: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. I just took it ______ that he'd always be available.
A. into consideration B. easy
C. into account D. for granted
2. I accidentally _____ Mike when I was crossing a street downtown yesterday.
A. kept an eye on B. lost touch with
C. paid attention to D. caught sight of
3. I was glad when he said that his car was ______.
A. for my use B. for me use
C. at my use D. at my disposal
4. I really must go and lie down for a while; I've got a _____ headache.
A. cutting B. splitting C. ringing D. cracking
5. Stop _______ about the bush, John! Just tell me exactly what the problem is.
A. rushing B. hiding C. beating D. moving
6. I usually buy my clothes ____. It's cheaper than going to a dress-maker.
A. off the peg B. on the house
C. in public D. on the shelf
7. My father _______ when he found out that I'd damaged the car.
A. hit the roof B. saw pink elephants
C. made my blood boil D. brought the house down
8. If you want a flat in the centre of the city you have to pay through the _______ for it.
A. teeth B. back of your head
C. nose D. arm
9. I caught the last bus by the skin of my _______.
A. mouth B. leg C. neck D. teeth

10. It was a joke! I was pulling your ______.
A. thumb B. hair C. toe D. leg

Exercise 2: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. I always get ________ in my stomach before visiting the dentist.
A. worms B. butterflies C. crabs D. hedgehogs

2. Those smart phones are selling like ________. If you want one, you'd better buy one now before they're all gone.
A. shooting stars B. fresh bread
C. hot cakes D. wild oats

3. I haven't had an accident yet but I've had a number of ______ shaves.
A. narrow B. near C. close D. tiny

4. My father refused to eat meat that had been fried. He had ______ in his bonnet about it causing cancer.
A. a bug B. a bee C. a bull D. an ant

5. I can't stand Mr. Brian. He's always blowing his own ______ - telling everyone how good he is at everything.
A. balloon B. breath C. mind D. trumpet

6. The escaped prisoner fought ______ before he was finally overpowered.
A. head over heels B. tooth and nail
C. heart and soul D. foot and mouth

7. I didn't suspect anything at first, but when I noticed her going through the office drawers I began to smell ________.
A. a rat B. a pig C. a thief D. a culprit

8. Peter was born and brought up in Hastings and knows it like the _____.
A. nose on his face B. tip of his tongue
C. back of his hand D. hair on his head

9. I was already fed up with the job, but when the boss walked into my office and told me he expected me to work overtime that was the _______. I quit.
A. final curtain B. last straw
C. end of the line D. last waltz

10. He has a quick temper and easily ________ off the handle.
A. leaps B. goes C. runs D. flies

Exercise 3: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. Before she left for Australia she promised her parents that she would drop them ________ at least once a month.
A. a note B. a word C. the news D. a line

2. I was all set to take the job in Tokyo, but at the last minute I ____ and decided to stay in Britain.
A. pulled my finger out B. got cold feet
C. held my horses D. called it a day

3. "What I've got to say to you now is strictly _____ and most certainly not for publication," said the government official to the reporter.
A. beside the point B. for the time being
C. by the way D. off the record

4. I've never enjoyed going to the ballet or the opera; they're not really my ________.
A. piece of cake B. chip off the old block
C. biscuit D. cup of tea

5. "What's wrong with Tom today? He's unusually quiet." "He's got something on his ______. I expect."
A. brain B. mind C. thoughts D. brow

6. He was wearing very shabby, dirty clothes and looked very _____.
A. easy-going B. down to earth
C. out of shape D. down at heel

7. Since he started his own business he has been making money hand over ______.
A. fist B. heel C. head D. palm

8. I can't see us beating them at tennis this year – we're so out of _____.
A. step B. practice C. fitness D. breath

9. I'm not surprised that Tom is ill. He's been _________ for a long time. It was bound to affect his health sooner or later.
A. having his cake and eating it B. burning the candle at both ends
C. playing with fire D. going to town

10. I just couldn't remember her name even though it was on the _____ of my tongue.
A. edge B. tip C. top D. front

Exercise 4: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. That's exactly what I mean, Tom. You've _______!
A. put your foot in it B. killed two birds with one stone
C. put two and two together D. hit the nail on the head

2. "I'm going for an interview for a job this afternoon." "Good luck! I'll keep my ______ crossed for you."
A. legs B. fingers C. arms D. hands

3. "If only I hadn't lent him all that money!" "Well, you did, so it's no good crying over _____ milk."
A. spilt B. wasted C. sour D. goat's

4. The car swerved to avoid a cyclist and just missed hitting a passer-by by _______.
A. a slight edge B. a narrow escape
C. a close thing D. a hair's breath

5. Well, well, if it isn't Kathy Lewis! You're a sight for _____ eyes!
A. old B. blue C. sore D. crocodile

6. I know times have been bad lately, Peter, but keep your ______ up; things are bound to get better soon.
A. chin B. head C. socks D. mind

7. He may be shy now, but he'll soon come out of his ______ when he meets the right girl.
A. shoe B. shell C. shed D. hole

8. I'm afraid you've caught me on the ______. I wasn't expecting you until this afternoon.
A. stove B. grapevine C. spot D. hop

9. Nagging Susan to stop smoking has no effect on her. It's like water off _______.
A. a windmill B. a duck's back
C. a dripping tap D. an umbrella

10. Have you seen the new boss? She's the _____ image of Marilyn Monroe.
A. live B. true C. spitting D. same

Exercise 5: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. Writing rhymes for birthday cards is really easy. It's money for old _____.
A. rags B. bread C. rope D. rubbish

2. Of course you won't become more intelligent if you eat a lot of fish – that's just an old _______ tale.
A. maids' B. ladies' C. mothers' D. wives'

3. I agree that this is a bit of a ______ shot, but we're desperate – we have to do something to try to save the company.
A. hot B. long C. wild D. high

4. I like my new job; the only fly in the ______ is the fact that I have to work every other weekend.
A. fat B. porridge C. soup D. ointment

5. It's a ______ shame that so little is done nowadays to help the homeless in our large cities.
A. sweeping B. crying C. dying D. pitying

6. My aunt is a bit of a wet ______. She's always spoiling everyone's fun.
A. rag B. sheep C. rat D. blanket

7. We looked in every _______ and cranny for the missing ring, but we couldn't find it anywhere.
A. nook B. gap C. hole D. niche

8. Everyone bosses me about at work. I'm nothing but a _______.
A. lame duck B. general dogsbody
C. blue-eye boy D. marked man

9. He had a soft _______ for his granddaughter and thoroughly spoilt her.
A. heart B. way C. smile D. spot

10. He just wanted one ______ before setting down and getting married.
A. final fling B. last leap
C. happy hop D. joyful jump

Exercise 6: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. Ask David to give you a hand moving the furniture. He's as strong as ________.
A. an elephant B. a mountain
C. a gorilla D. a horse

2. You're not getting enough to eat, Jane! Look at you! You're as thin as a _______.
A. stick insect B. rake C. finger D. wire

3. We can't eat this meat – it's as tough as ________!
A. canvas B. old boots C. rubber D. stale bread

4. You shouldn't have frightened her like that. Poor thing! She went as white as ______!
A. a sheet B. snow C. milk D. whitewash

5. Nothing ever seems to bother Colin. No matter what happens, he always seems to remain as cool as _______.
A. cool feet B. ice-cream C. a cucumber D. as Eskimo

6. You'll have to shout, I'm afraid. My father's as deaf as ______.
A. a leaf B. a post C. a politician D. a stone

7. It's hard to believe Brian and Stephen are brothers, isn't it? They're as different as _________.
A. Mars from Jupiter B. milk from honey
C. chalk from cheese D. margarine from butter

8. Ever since I've given up smoking I feel as fit as ______!
A. a fighter B. a fiddle C. a frog D. an athlete

9. Our dog looks very ferocious, but don't worry, Liz. It's gentle like _______.
A. a pony B. snowflakes
C. a lamb D. washing-up liquid

10. "I hope the children didn't play you up, Doris?" "No, not at all, Mrs Garderner. They've been as good as ________."
A. religion B. gold C. God D. brass

Exercise 7: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. "The suitcase isn't too heavy, is it?" "No, it's as light as ______."
A. dust B. lightning C. a feather D. a fish

2. "By the way, have you heard the one about the Welshman, the Irishman and the pig?" "Yes, we have. That joke's as old as ______."
A. Solomon B. the hills C. a dinosaur D. Jupiter
3. Of course he loves you! It's as plain as ______.
A. a pancake B. the knob on your door
C. the nose on your face D. a bell
4. Kate was as pleased as ______ when she heard she had passed the exam.
A. Punch B. a poppy C. a sunflower D. pound notes
5. I hope the computer course starts this term. We're all as keen as ______ to get going.
A. coffee B. mustard C. a gigolo D. cornflakes
6. He was a natural singer with a voice that was as clear as _____.
A. a waterfall B. a lake C. a bell D. a mirror
7. After a good night's sleep he woke up feeling as fresh as ______ and eager to start work again.
A. fruit B. a daisy C. a kitten D. a maiden
8. He might look kind and sympathetic, but deep down he's as hard as ______.
A. nails B. a mountain C. a gangster D. an iceberg
9. Pauline can't have emigrated to New Zealand because I saw her last night at Peter's party, as _____ as life.
A. true B. real C. good D. large
10. It's no use arguing with him, he won't listen. He's as stubborn as ____.
A. a mule B. a spoilt child C. a strawberry D. a trade union

Exercise 8: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. "You're drunk!" "No, I'm not. I'm as sober as ______."
A. a priest B. Sunday C. a judge D. a Muslim
2. Am I nervous? Of course not. Look at my hand – it's as steady as ____.
A. a bridge B. a rock C. steel bars D. a stepladder
3. As students, David, Kevin and William were as thick as _____.
A. thieves B. boy scouts C. a team D. thistles
4. Whenever I feel embarrassed I always go as red as ______.
A. a rose B. lipstick C. a raspberry D. a beetroot
5. She was so tired last night that she slept like ______ until 10 o'clock this morning.
A. a squirrel B. death C. a log D. a zombie
6. We'd better get some extra food in if your brother is coming to stay with us. He eats like ______!
A. a lion B. a starving man
C. an eagle D. a horse

7. Normally she smoked 15-20 cigarettes a day, but whenever she was worried or nervous she smoked like ______.
A. a chimney B. a forest fire
C. a steam engine D. a salmon
8. "Is the dress too big?" "No, not at all. It fits like ______."
A. a mould B. a glove C. glue D. a pillowcase
9. News of the new pay agreement spread like ______ throughout the factory.
A. wildfire B. butter C. the plaque D. a flood
10. From the moment they first met they got on like ______.
A. two peas in a pod B. fish and chips
C. a house on fire D. clockwork

Bài tập NGỮ ĐỘNG TỪ (Phrasal verbs)

Exercise 1: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. When the police investigate a crime, they ______ evidence such as fingerprints, hair, or clothing.
A. look after B. look up to C. look for D. look into
2. "Do you ______ your new roommate, or do you two argue?"
A. keep in touch with B. get along with
C. on good terms with D. get used to
3. After months of testing, the Russian space scientists ______ a space suit that works better than any other in history.
A. came to B. came up with
C. came up to D. came out with
4. Let's check our hotel room ______ before we pay for it.
A. out B. away C. up D. off
5. He lost the tennis match, so we will try to cheer him ______.
A. off B. away C. on D. up
6. The mechanic broke the engine ______ its many components.
A. up into B. into C. down into D. off into
7. The couple broke ___ their engagement after they had a huge argument.
A. in B. over C. off D. away
8. The new mayor will bring _____ a change in local government policies.
A. with B. out C. up D. about
9. Sara said she took golf ______ so that she could meet more interesting people.
A. on B. over C. back D. up
10. Try ______ this bicycle to determine if you feel comfortable on it.
A. out B. on C. off D. at

Exercise 2: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. She turned the first offer _______ because she wanted more money for her house.
A. off B. away C. out D. down
2. They decided to name the new baby boy ________ Grandpa.
A. of B. after C. with D. as
3. Mom told her little boy to put all his toys ___ before coming to dinner.
A. out B. off C. away D. in
4. The couple put their wedding ________ until next year.
A. off B. up C. on D. away
5. The gunman told the victim to hand ________ all his money.
A. out B. over C. in D. off
6. Don't throw your jacket on the bed. Hang it _________.
A. up B. over C. on D. in
7. The supervisor told her to keep ________ the good work.
A. over B. on C. with D. up
8. Man is killing _________ all the fish in the sea.
A. out B. away C. off D. up
9. If you leave ________ any information, the form will be returned to you.
A. down B. out C. up D. away
10. Security is very important in this building. Don't let anyone ________ unless they show you proper identification.
A. in B. out C. off D. on

Exercise 3: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. Look this document ________ carefully before you sign it.
A. up B. on C. at D. over
2. If you don't know what a word means, look it _______ in the dictionary.
A. over B. up C. on D. at
3. I couldn't make ________ all the words on the sign because my glasses were dirty.
A. up B. out C. clear D. up with
4. Tony and Nancy always kiss and make _______ after their arguments.
A. up B. off C. with D. up with
5. Cross ________ my name because I won't be able to attend.
A. out B. down C. up D. away
6. She will cut ________ the number of cigarettes she smokes.
A. off B. in C. up D. down
7. Have you figured ________ how to solve the problem yet?
A. out B. on C. in D. of
8. After you fill the application form ________, sign it and date it.
A. on B. off C. out D. with

9. You should always fill _____ your tank when it gets down to a quarter full.
A. off B. up C. in D. out
10. All students must hand ______ their homework the day after it is assigned.
A. out B. on C. to D. in

Exercise 4: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. The daughter looked _________ her mother after her mom was sent home from the hospital with a broken hip.
A. upon B. after C. on D. at
2. Why don't you look ________ this situation and see if you can figure out a way to fix it without spending too much money?
A. into B. on C. up D. out
3. My grandfather passed _______ when I was only six years old. He had lung cancer.
A. out B. over C. away D. off
4. Every day many of us have to put _______ people that we don't like.
A. on with B. off with C. up D. up with
5. Nancy ran _______ Bob while both were shopping at the supermarket.
A. over B. across C. upon D. onto
6. If you go hiking, you should watch ________ for poison oak and snakes. Both can cause you problems.
A. over B. up C. out D. on
7. Let's get _________ the bus at the next stop. We can visit the museum and catch another bus in a couple of hours.
A. onto B. out C. in D. off
8. When the student got _______the test, he gave it to the teacher.
A. over with B. through with C. through at D. over
9. If you're going to give ______ smoking, you must have a lot of will power.
A. away B. up C. in to D. off
10. After you write your report, give it to your boss. He will go _______ it and make any necessary changes.
A. upon B. through with C. over D. with

Exercise 5: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. She kept ________ taking the real estate exam until she finally passed it and got her license.
A. on B. onto C. in D. at
2. Kids have to walk fast if they want to _________ their parents on a stroll through the park.
A. keep with B. keep up with
C. keep on to D. keep over with

3. You'd better cut _______ animal fat if you want to lower your cholesterol level.
A. down with B. off with
C. out in D. down on

4. I wish my friends would call me first before they drop ________.
A. in B. out C. at D. off

5. Sales of the toy dropped ________ sharply when the TV news reported that a child had swallowed part of the toy and almost died.
A. out B. over C. away D. off

6. People who don't get __________ their coworkers sometimes don't last long at their jobs.
A. up with B. along with C. on to D. by with

7. At a crime scene, the police will tell you to get back. They don't want civilians to interfere __________ the investigation.
A. at B. on C. with D. into

8. The boy was always getting _________ trouble as a youth. Then, to everyone's surprise, he became a policeman.
A. into B. onto C. on D. with

9. Mankind has managed to wipe ________ many kinds of animals.
A. away B. off C. out D. over

10. My car broke ________ on the way to work. I had to call a tow truck.
A. down B. up C. off D. away

Exercise 6: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. Before you finish this project, check _______ your supervisor for further instructions.
A. on B. on with C. back with D. up

2. As soon as we got to the motel, we checked __________.
A. at B. in C. on D. off

3. While looking for my nail clipper, I came ______ a knife that I thought I had lost.
A. at B. with C. up D. across

4. We've ________ out of milk. You'll have to drink your tea without it.
A. come B. taken C. gone D. run

5. It's difficult to ________ luxuries when you're used to having them.
A. cut down on B. cut down at
C. cut off on D. cut down into

6. I missed the seven o'clock news on the radio this morning. I _______ up too late.
A. came B. turned C. grew D. woke

7. Governments should ________ international laws against terrorism.
A. bring up B. bring about C. bring in D. bring back

8. You can't possibly say no to such a wonderful job offer. It's too good to _________.
A. turn it up B. turn it down
C. put it up D. put it down

9. Eva was born in the South, but she grew _______ in the North.
A. up B. on C. about D. at

10. "What ________ your flight?" "There was a big snowstorm in Denver that delayed a lot of flights."
A. delayed up B. postponed up
C. held up D. hung up

Exercise 7: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. "Can you read that sign?" "Just a minute. Let me _______ my glasses."
A. put off B. put on C. put with D. put away

2. This is Bob speaking. I need my pocket calculator. Can I have it back tomorrow? I can't _________ it.
A. do with B. do without
C. deal with D. deal without

3. "That old paint that you have stored in your garage is a fine hazard." "You're right. I should ________ it."
A. get away from B. get rid of
C. get through with D. get along with

4. "You must be anxious to go on your vacation." "I certainly am. I'm really _________ this trip."
A. looking for B. looking forward
C. looking forward to D. looking up to

5. "Who _________ out that tie for you?" "No one. I chose it myself."
A. bought B. brought C. turned D. picked

6. We didn't like John when we first met him, but he has turned ______ to be a good friend to us.
A. down B. up C. on D. out

7. "Have you ________ this contract yet?" "Not yet. I'll try to read it this weekend."
A. looked over B. looked into
C. looked up D. looked out

8. After ten minutes, the students ______ in their quizzes to the instructor.
A. gave B. had C. held D. handed

9. "Hello, is Bill there?" "Yes, ______ a minute, and I'll get him."
A. hang on B. hang up
C. hold on D. A and C are correct

10. I was talking to my aunt when suddenly my cousin George _______ in on our conversation.
A. interrupted B. broke C. went D. intervened

Chuyên đề 3:

NGỮ PHÁP

I. THÌ CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ

1. Simple Present (Thì hiện tại đơn)

a) Hình thức: **S + V/ V-s/es**

b) Cách dùng:

- Diễn tả một thói quen hoặc hành động thường xuyên ở hiện tại.

Ví dụ: *I usually have bread and eggs for breakfast.* (Tôi thường ăn sáng với bánh mì và trứng.)

Cách dùng này thường được dùng với các trạng từ: ***always*** (luôn luôn), ***usually*** (thường thường), ***generally*** (nói chung), ***normally*** (thông thường), ***regularly*** (thường xuyên), ***frequently*** (thường xuyên), ***often*** (thường), ***repeatedly*** (lặp đi lặp lại), ***sometimes*** (thỉnh thoảng), ***occasionally*** (đôi khi), ***hardly ever*** (hầu như không), ***rarely*** (hiếm khi), ***seldom*** (ít khi), ***never*** (không bao giờ) và các cụm từ như: ***once a week*** (một tuần một lần), ***twice a year*** (một năm hai lần), ***three times a day*** (một ngày ba lần)…

- Diễn tả một trạng thái ở hiện tại.

Ví dụ: *I know many things about him.* (Tôi biết nhiều điều về anh ấy.)

- Diễn tả một sự thật hiển nhiên, một điều đúng trong thực tế.

Ví dụ: *The earth goes round the sun.* (Trái đất quay quanh mặt trời.)

Asian people grow rice for food. (Người châu Á trồng lúa làm lương thực.)

- Diễn tả một hành động hoặc sự việc sẽ xảy ra theo thời gian biểu.

Ví dụ: *Clerk: The next train leaves at 11 am.*

(Nhân viên: Chuyến tàu kế tiếp khởi hành lúc 11 giờ sáng.)

2. Present Continuous (Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn)

a) Hình thức: **S + am/is/are + V-ing**

b) Cách dùng:

– Diễn tả một sự kiện đang diễn ra ngay tại thời điểm nói chuyện.

Ví dụ: *She is writing a letter now.* (Bây giờ cô ấy đang viết một bức thư.)

Cách dùng này thường dùng với các trạng từ chỉ thời gian như: ***now*** (bây giờ), ***at the moment*** (ngay lúc này), ***at present*** (bây giờ).

– Diễn tả một sự kiện đang diễn ra ở hiện tại, nhưng không nhất thiết đang diễn ra tại thời điểm nói chuyện.

Ví dụ: *He is writing another novel this year.* (Năm nay ông ấy đang viết một cuốn tiểu thuyết nữa.) (Nhưng không nhất thiết ông ấy đang viết tiểu thuyết khi ta nói câu này.)

Cách dùng này thường được dùng với các từ và cụm từ: ***today*** (hôm nay), ***this week*** (tuần này), ***this year*** (năm nay), ***these days*** (dạo này), ***currently*** (hiện nay), ***at the moment*** (ngay lúc này), ***at present*** (bây giờ)…

– Bày tỏ sự phàn nàn khi được dùng với trạng từ ***always, continually***.

Ví dụ: *You are always making noise in class.* (Em lúc nào cũng làm ồn trong lớp.)

– Diễn tả sự thay đổi.

Ví dụ: *The weather is getting hotter and hotter.* (Thời tiết ngày càng trở nên nóng hơn.)

3. Present Perfect (Thì hiện tại hoàn thành)

a) Hình thức: I/ We/ You/ They + **have** + **past participle**

He/ She/ It + **has** + **past participle**

b) Cách dùng:

– Diễn tả một sự kiện đã diễn ra tại thời điểm không xác định trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: *Have you ever talked to a film star? – No, I haven't.*

I've already bought a new bicycle.

Cách dùng này thường được dùng với trạng từ: ***ever, never, already, yet***.

– Diễn tả một sự kiện vừa mới xảy ra, thường dùng với trạng từ ***just***.

Ví dụ: *My uncle has just called me from London.*

– Diễn tả một sự kiện đã xảy ra có kèm theo số lần thực hiện.

Ví dụ: *I have watched that film 4 times.*

– Diễn tả một sự kiện bắt đầu từ quá khứ và kéo dài đến hiện tại.

Ví dụ: *I have read this book for a week.*

Cách dùng này thường được dùng với các giới từ và trạng từ: ***since, for, so far, up to now***.

- Diễn tả một sự kiện đã hoàn tất trong quá khứ nhưng kết quả của hành động đó vẫn còn ảnh hưởng đến hiện tại.

Ví dụ: *She has sold her motorbike. Now, she takes the bus to work.*

4. Present Perfect Continuous (Thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn)

a) Hình thức: **S + have/has + been + V-ing**

b) Cách dùng: Thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn có cách dùng tương tự như thì hiện tại hoàn thành.

– Diễn tả một sự kiện bắt đầu từ quá khứ và kéo dài liên tục đến hiện tại.

Ví dụ: *He has been waiting for you for two hours. Will you meet him now?* (Anh ấy đã chờ anh trong suốt hai giờ. Bây giờ anh có muốn gặp anh ấy không?)

Cách dùng này thường được dùng với các giới từ và trạng từ: ***since*** (kể từ), ***for*** (trong vòng), ***so far*** (cho đến nay)…

- Diễn tả một sự kiện vừa mới kết thúc trong quá khứ nhưng kết quả của hành động đó vẫn còn ảnh hưởng đến hiện tại.

Ví dụ: *You're out of breath. Have you been running up here?* (Anh thở hổn hển. Có phải anh vừa chạy đến đây không?)

Ta dùng thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn khi muốn nhấn mạnh về sự diễn tiến của hành động hoặc sự việc.

5. Past Simple (Thì quá khứ đơn)

a) Hình thức: **Subject + Verb-ed/ V_2**

Động từ ở quá khứ có hai dạng:

- Động từ có qui tắc (regular verbs): ta thêm "ed" vào sau động từ.

Đối với các động từ kết thúc bằng một phụ âm, trước phụ âm đó là một nguyên âm thì ta phải gấp đôi phụ âm cuối trước khi thêm "ed" vào sau động từ.

Ví dụ: rub → rubbed

- Các động từ kết thúc bằng "y" mà ngay trước nó là một phụ âm thì ta đổi "y" thành "i" trước khi thêm "ed" vào.

Ví dụ: carry → carried

- Động từ bất qui tắc (irregular verbs): ta phải học thuộc cột thứ hai trong bảng động từ bất qui tắc.

Ví dụ: go → went; lose → lost; see → saw

b) Cách dùng

Diễn tả một sự kiện đã xảy ra tại một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: *I enjoyed the TV show last night.*

She did her homework yesterday.

Thì quá khứ đơn thường được dùng với các từ và cụm từ chỉ thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ như: **yesterday** (hôm qua), **last night** (tối qua), **last month** (tháng rồi), **three days ago** (cách đây ba ngày), **in 2008** (vào năm 2008)....

6. Past Continuous (Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn)

a) Hình thức:

I/ He/ She/ It + was + V-ing
We/ You/ They + were + V-ing

b) Cách dùng:

- Diễn tả một sự kiện đang diễn ra ngay tại một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: *I was watching a film at 8.00 last night.*

Some of my friends were doing homework at that time.

- Diễn tả một sự kiện đang diễn ra quanh một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ, nhưng không nhất thiết phải diễn ra ngay tại thời điểm đó.

Ví dụ: *At that time, I was looking for a new job.*

7. Past Perfect (Thì quá khứ hoàn thành)

a) Hình thức: **S + had + past participle (PP)**

b) Cách dùng:

- Diễn tả một sự kiện đã xảy ra trước một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: *I had finished my homework by 8.00 last night.* (Tôi đã hoàn thành bài tập ở nhà trước 8 giờ tối hôm qua.)

- Diễn tả một hành động hoặc sự việc đã xảy ra trước một hành động hoặc sự việc khác trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: *I had finished my homework before I went to bed.* (Tôi đã hoàn thành bài tập ở nhà trước khi đi ngủ.)

The little girl started crying. She had lost her doll. (Đứa bé gái bật khóc. Nó đã đánh mất con búp bê.)

Thường được dùng với các trạng từ hoặc giới từ như: ***by the time*** (cho đến lúc), ***by (= before)*** (trước khi), ***after*** (sau khi), ***when*** (khi)...

8. Past Perfect Continuous (Thì quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn)

a) Hình thức: **S + had + been + V-ing**

b) Cách dùng: Thì quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn có cách dùng tương tự như thì quá khứ hoàn thành.

- Diễn tả một hành động hoặc sự việc đã bắt đầu và kéo dài đến một thời điểm trước một thời điểm khác trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: *I had been living in New York for 10 years by September last year.* (Đến tháng 9 năm ngoái tôi đã ở New York được 10 năm.)

- Diễn tả một hành động hoặc sự việc đã bắt đầu và kéo dài đến một thời điểm trước một sự việc khác trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: *I had been living in New York for 10 years before I moved to London.* (Tôi đã ở New York được 10 năm trước khi dọn đến London.)

Thường được dùng với các trạng từ hoặc giới từ như: ***by the time*** (cho đến lúc), ***by (= before)*** (trước khi), ***after*** (sau khi), ***when*** (khi)...

9. Simple Future (Thì tương lai đơn)

a) Hình thức: **S + will + V (bare infinitive)**

b) Cách dùng:

- Dự đoán một sự kiện sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai nhưng không có bằng chứng cụ thể.

Ví dụ: *I think Mary will stay here for a few days.* (Tôi nghĩ Mary sẽ ở đây trong vài ngày.) (Nhưng tôi không chắc.)

- Cách dùng này thường được dùng với các trạng từ: ***tomorrow*** (ngày mai), ***next week*** (tuần tới), ***next month*** (tháng tới), ***in 2020*** (vào năm 2020), ***in 10 minutes*** (10 phút nữa)....

- Diễn tả một quyết định tức thời.

Ví dụ: *Hey, today's Ann's birthday. – Really? I'll buy her something.* (À, hôm nay là sinh nhật của Ann. – Thật ư? Tôi sẽ mua món quà nào đó cho cô ấy.)

- Diễn tả một đề nghị giúp đỡ người khác (*an offer*).

Ví dụ: *The phone's ringing. I'll answer it for you.* (Chuông điện thoại reo kìa. Tôi sẽ trả lời giúp anh.)

- Diễn tả một lời hứa.

Ví dụ: *I promise I'll study better next semester.* (Em hứa học kì sau sẽ học tập tốt hơn.)

10. Thì tương lai "going to"

a) Hình thức: **S + am/is/are + going to + V (bare infinitive)**

b) Cách dùng:

- Dự đoán một sự việc sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai dựa vào bằng chứng ở hiện tại.

Ví dụ: *Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain.* (Hãy nhìn những đám mây đen kia. Trời sắp mưa rồi.)

- Diễn tả một kế hoạch cho tương lai.

Ví dụ: *I'm going to watch that film on TV tonight.* (Tối nay tôi sẽ xem bộ phim đó trên truyền hình.)

✪ Chú ý: Thì tương lai "going to" thường không đi chung với động từ ***come*** hoặc ***go***. Khi đó ta dùng thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn: ***be going/coming***.

Ví dụ: She is going to the cinema tonight. (Tối nay cô ấy sẽ đi xem phim.)

They are coming back next month. (Họ sẽ trở lại vào tháng tới.)

Thường được dùng với các từ và cụm từ chỉ thời gian tương lai như: ***tomorrow*** (ngày mai), ***next week*** (tuần tới), ***next month*** (tháng tới), ***tonight*** (tối nay), ***soon*** (chẳng bao lâu), ***in 10 minutes*** (10 phút nữa)…

11. Future Continuous (Thì tương lai tiếp diễn)

a) Hình thức: **S + will + be + V-ing**

b) Cách dùng:

- Diễn tả một hành động hoặc sự việc đang diễn ra tại một thời điểm xác định trong tương lai.

Ví dụ: *At 8.00 tomorrow morning, I will be studying at the library.* (Vào lúc 8 giờ sáng mai tôi đang học ở thư viện.)

- Diễn tả một sự việc sẽ xảy ra theo mong đợi hoặc theo một xu hướng chung.

Ví dụ: *In the next 20 years, all Vietnamese people will be using running water.* (Trong 20 năm nữa, tất cả người Việt Nam sẽ dùng nước máy.) (diễn tả sự mong đợi)

People will be using more and more modern devices. (Người ta sẽ ngày càng sử dụng nhiều thiết bị hiện đại hơn.) (diễn tả xu hướng chung)

12. Future Perfect (Thì tương lai hoàn thành)

a) Hình thức: **S + will + have + past participle (PP)**

b) Cách dùng:

Diễn tả một hành động hoặc sự việc sẽ hoàn tất trước một thời điểm xác định trong tương lai.

Ví dụ: *My father will have retired by the year 2020.* (Đến năm 2020 thì cha tôi đã nghỉ hưu rồi.)

Thường được dùng với các từ và cụm từ chỉ thời gian như: ***by*** (trước lúc), ***by this time*** (cho đến khi), ***next week/month/…*** (tuần tới/tháng tới/…), ***by that time*** (cho đến lúc đó), ***by then*** (cho đến lúc đó) …

13. Future Perfect Continuous (Thì tương lai hoàn thành tiếp diễn)

a) Hình thức: **S + will have been + V-ing**

b) Cách dùng:

Diễn tả một hành động hoặc sự việc đã bắt đầu và kéo dài được một khoảng thời gian cho đến một thời điểm xác định trong tương lai.

Ví dụ: *I will have been working here for 5 years next month.* (Đến tháng tới thì tôi đã làm việc ở đây được 5 năm.)

Thường được dùng với các từ và cụm từ chỉ thời gian như: ***by, by this time, next week/month/…, by that time, by then…***

Bài tập về THÌ CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. She came into the room while they _______ television.
A. watched B. have watched C. are watching D. were watching

2. I ____ a headache since yesterday.
A. had B. was having C. have had D. would have

3. The teacher _____ into the room.
A. has still come B. has already come
C. has yet come D. has recently come

4. When he failed to meet us, we ______ without him.
A. left B. would leave C. was leaving D. has left

5. He ______ book the tickets, but he had no time to call at the cinema.
A. would B. will C. is going to D. was going to

6. Peter has been trying for an hour, but his car still ____ start.
A. won't B. wouldn't C. didn't D. hasn't

7. It's an hour since he ______, so he must be at the office now.
A. is leaving B. was leaving C. has left D. left

8. Most students ______ hard for the last few weeks.
A. were working B. worked C. are working D. have been working

9. He _______ up his mind yet.
A. didn't make B. hasn't made C. wasn't made D. wasn't making

10. The baby ______ non-stop for the last two hours.
A. cried B. was crying C. is crying D. has been crying

Exercise 2: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. The girl weeps whenever she ______ such a story.
A. hears B. has heard C. will hear D. heard

2. As soon as we _______ this new apartment, we _______.
A. are finding – will move B. found – moved
C. would find – move D. find – would move

3. My teacher arrived after ______ for him for ten minutes.
A. was waiting B. have waited C. had waited D. waited

4. This is the first time I ____ to play badminton.
A. have tried B. am trying C. was trying D. would be trying

5. She ______ here but she doesn't worked here now.
A. has worked B. had worked C. used to work D. used to working
6. Jack went out, but he ______ anyone where he was going.
A. doesn't tell B. not told C. wasn't telling D. didn't tell
7. London ______ the capital of the United Kingdom.
A. is B. was C. will be D. is being
8. Someone ________ at the door. Can you hear it?
A. knocks B. is knocking C. will knock D. was knocking
9. What are you cooking in that saucepan? It _______ good.
A. smells B. is smelling C. smelled D. has smelled
10. I used to swim in this river when I _______ young.
A. am B. was C. will be D. have been

Exercise 3: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. By the year 2050, many people currently employed _____ their jobs.
A. have lost B. will be losing C. will have lost D. are losing
2. Susan _____ as a nurse for three years before her marriage.
A. has been working B. has worked
C. worked D. is working
3. Since they had that big argument, he crosses the street whenever he _____ her.
A. saw B. sees C. will see D. is seeing
4. This time tomorrow I _____ in the swimming pool.
A. am relaxing B. relax C. will be relaxing D. relaxed
5. At the end of this month, we _____ here for ten years.
A. will have been living B. are living
C. live D. will be living
6. The beach was so crowded the other day that we _____ difficulty finding an empty spot.
A. have B. have had C. had D. have been having
7. Robert _____ for the company for very long before he was promoted.
A. hasn't been working B. didn't work
C. hadn't been working D. wasn't working
8. ________? Your eyes are red.
A. Did you cry B. Have you been cried
C. Were you crying D. Have you been crying
9. He looked tired because he _____ for six hours.
A. ran B. was running
C. has been running D. had been running
10. In 1875 archeologists _____ the ruins of the Olympic Stadium in Greece.
A. discovered B. were discovering
C. have discovered D. had discovered

Exercise 4: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. We _____ very hard at the office lately as we are negotiating an important contract.
A. are working B. were working
C. have been working D. had been working
2. You can't believe a word he says. He _____.
A. always lies B. is always lying
C. has always lied D. will always lie
3. I often find things on the beach. I _____ this very old bottle yesterday.
A. found B. was finding C. had found D. had been finding
4. They _____ the new bridge by the end of the year.
A. will complete B. will have completed
C. have completed D. had been completing
5. He said he _____ his homework since 7 o'clock.
A. did B. has done C. had been done D. had been doing
6. A taxi collided with his car ten minutes ago but the police _____ yet.
A. has not come B. have not come C. did not come D. had not come
7. At this moment tomorrow night I _____ on a ship.
A. sleep B. shall sleep C. shall be slept D. shall be sleeping
8. Before leaving home in the morning, she _____ her mother she _____ in the factory that afternoon.
A. had told – would work B. told – would work
C. told – works D. had told – worked
9. Before you mentioned him, I _____ of that author.
A. never hear B. have never heard
C. had never heard D. never heard
10. By the end of this year, Tom _____ English for three years.
A. will be studying B. has studied
C. will have studied D. has been studying

Exercise 5: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. By the time you finish cooking they _____ their homework.
A. will have done B. are doing C. have been doing D. have done
2. Can you tell me how _____?
A. they escaped B. they were escaped
C. did they escape D. have they escaped
3. "Does Tom own that car?" "No, I think his brother _____ it now."
A. has owned B. is owning C. owns D. can own
4. Fish ______ on the earth for ages.
A. exists B. are existing C. exist D. have existed

5. Firemen _____ to receive an increase in pay next month.
A. will be B. are C. have been D. would be

6. How many times _____ him since he went to Hanoi?
A. have you seen B. do you see C. did you see D. had you seen

7. He _____ as a cashier for twenty-five years. Then he _____ and went to live in the country.
A. worked – retired B. had been working – retired
C. has worked – had retired D. had been working – had retired

8. He wrote to her a month ago, but I'm sure he _____ since then.
A. has not written B. didn't write
C. was not writing D. was not written

9. How many lessons _____ before you passed your tests?
A. did you have B. do you have C. have you had D. were you having

10. How _____ to stop in time when that car shot out in front of you?
A. did you manage B. were you managing
C. do you manage D. had you managed

Exercise 6: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I do not feel good. I _____ home from work tomorrow.
A. am staying B. will be staying
C. will have stayed D. stayed

2. I'm sorry for keeping you waiting. I _____ to make a telephone call to London.
A. have tried B. will try C. tried D. have been trying

3. I cannot begin sewing my dress until my mother _____ it out for me.
A. will cut B. cut C. has cut D. will be cutting

4. I _____ everywhere for the pen I _____ yesterday.
A. am searching – had lost B. searched – lost
C. have searched – lost D. searched – has lost

5. In few minutes' time, when the clock strikes six, I _____ here for three hours.
A. waited B. will have been waiting
C. have waited D. have been waiting

6. I _____ sunglasses today because the sun is very strong.
A. am wearing B. wear
C. have been wearing D. have worn

7. The car stopped for the children who _____ to cross the road.
A. were waiting B. had waited C. had been waiting D. waited

8. Their football team _____ a championship until last season.
A. has never won B. is never winning
C. had never been winning D. had never won

9. After ancient Greek athletes won a race in the Olympics, they _____ a simple crown of olive leaves.
A. received B. had received C. were receiving D. have received

10. Even though they ______ for a flat for a month, they ______ able to find one anywhere.
A. is looking – are not
B. have looked – are not
C. have been looking – have not been
D. have been looked – have not been

Exercise 7: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. When I last saw him, he ______ in London.
A. has lived B. is living C. was living D. has been living

2. We _______ Dorothy since last Saturday.
A. don't see B. haven't seen C. didn't see D. hadn't seen

3. The train ______ half an hour ago.
A. has been leaving B. left C. has left D. had left

4. Be careful! Jack ________ the door.
A. has just painted B. paint
C. will have painted D. painting

5. My sister __________ for you since yesterday.
A. is looking B. was looking C. has been looking D. looked

6. I _________ Texas State University now.
A. am attending B. attend C. was attending D. attended

7. He has been selling motorbikes _______.
A. ten years ago B. since ten years
C. for ten years ago D. for ten years

8. Christopher Columbus ________ America more than 500 years ago.
A. discovered B. has discovered
C. had discovered D. had been discovering

9. He fell down when he _______ towards the church.
A. run B. runs C. was running D. had run

10. We _______ there when our father died.
A. still lived B. lived still
C. was still living D. were still living

Exercise 8: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. They ______ table-tennis when their father comes back home.
A. will play B. will be playing C. play D. would play

2. By Christmas, I ______ for Mr. Smith for six years.
A. shall have been working B. shall work
C. have been working D. shall be working

3. I _______ in the room right now.
A. am being B. was being C. have been being D. am

4. I _______ to New York three times this year.
A. have been B. was C. were D. had been

5. I'll come and see you before I _______ for the States.
A. leave B. will leave C. have left D. shall leave

6. The little girl asked what ______ to her friend.
A. has happened B. happened
C. had happened D. would have been happened

7. John ______ a book when I saw him.
A. is reading B. read C. was reading D. reading

8. He said he _______ return later.
A. will B. would C. can D. would be

9. Our teacher told us yesterday that he _____ England in 2004.
A. visited B. had visited C. has visited D. would be visiting

10. I have been waiting for you _______.
A. since early morning B. since 9 a.m.
C. for two hours D. All are correct

Exercise 9: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Oil ________ if you pour it on water.
A. floated B. floats C. will be floated D. float

2. The movie was very boring and many people began to leave early. By the end, most people _______.
A. had already left B. were already leaving
C. were already left D. had already been leaving

3. The dancing club _______ north of this district.
A. lays B. lies C. locates D. lain

4. Almost everyone _______ for home by the time we arrived.
A. leave B. left C. leaves D. had left

5. By the age of 25, he _______ two famous novels.
A. wrote B. writes C. has written D. had written

6. While her husband was in the army, Mary ____ to him twice a week.
A. was writing B. wrote C. was written D. had written

7. I couldn't cut the grass because the lawn mower ______ a few days previously.
A. broke down B. has been broken
C. had broken down D. breaks down

8. Up to then I _______ such a fat man.
A. never saw B. had never seen C. never had seen D. will never see

9. I have never played badminton before. This is the first time I ____ to play.
A. try B. tried C. have tried D. am trying

10. Since ________, I have heard nothing from him.
A. he had left B. he left C. he has left D. he was left

Exercise 10: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. After I ______ lunch, I looked for my bag.
A. had B. had had C. has had D. have had

2. By the end of next year, George _______ English for two years.
A. will have learned B. will learn
C. has learned D. would learn

3. The man got out of the car, ____ round to the back and opened the boot.
A. walking B. walked C. walks D. walk

4. For several years, his ambition _____ to a pilot.
A. is B. has been C. was D. had been

5. Henry _____ into the restaurant when the writer was having dinner.
A. was going B. went C. has gone D. had gone

6. He will take the dog out for a walk as soon as he _______ dinner.
A. finish B. finishes C. will finish D.shall have finished

7. Before you asked, the letter _______.
A. was written B. had been written
C. had written D. has been written

8. I shall be glad when he ________.
A. had gone B. did go C. went D. has gone

9. Ask her to come and see me when she _______ her work.
A. finish B. has finished C. finished D. finishing

10. After you finish your work, you ______ a break.
A. should take B. have taken
C. might have taken D. takes

II. ĐỘNG TỪ TÌNH THÁI (Modal verbs)

Động từ tình thái hay còn được gọi là động từ khiếm khuyết là loại động từ đặc biệt, có chức năng làm rõ các tính chất của hành động diễn tả bởi động từ chính trong câu.

Các động từ tình thái: ***will, would, can, could, may, might, shall, should, must.***

Hình thức: **modal verb + bare infinitive**

Ví dụ: *I can swim very well.*
May I go out?
We shouldn't bring him to that party.

Ngoài ra, còn có các cụm động từ có tính chất và ý nghĩa gần giống với động từ tình thái như: ***have to, have got to, had better, ought to, would rather, would prefer.***

Ví dụ: ***She has to be there before 3pm today.***

Cách dùng của các động từ tình thái:

1. Diễn tả một khả năng hoặc kĩ năng (ability).

Động từ tình thái: **can, could** hoặc **be able to.**

Ví dụ: *He can speak five languages.*
She could swim when she was only six years old.
We will be able to swim very fast after this swimming course.

Chú ý: Không dùng *can* để diễn tả một khả năng hoặc kĩ năng mà mình chưa có ở hiện tại nhưng sẽ có trong tương lai, thay vào đó ta dùng *will be able to.*

Ví dụ: *He **will be able to** speak Japanese very well after this course.*

2. Diễn tả một khả năng xảy ra trong tương lai (future possibility).

Động từ tình thái: **may, might, can could** hoặc **be likely to. Could** và **might** diễn tả một sự ít chắc chắn hơn **may, can** và **be likely to.**

Ví dụ: *He may win the race.*
She might not visit us tomorrow.
I could leave tomorrow.

Dùng động từ *will* để diễn tả một khả năng hoặc sự kiện mà người nói cảm thấy chắc chắn xảy ra trong tương lai.

Ví dụ: *She will leave tomorrow. She's ready now.*

Dùng *will* với các trạng từ *maybe, probably,* hoặc *perhaps* để diễn tả một khả năng hoặc sự kiện không chắc chắn sẽ xảy ra.

Ví dụ: *Maybe she will move next summer.*
They will probably ask you about this.

Chú ý: Không dùng *could not* để diễn tả một khả năng hoặc sự kiện có thể hoặc không thể xảy ra trong tương lai.

Ví dụ: *We **may not/might not/~~could not~~** find a good solution to the pollution.*

3. Đưa ra một yêu cầu (request).

Dùng động từ ***can, could, will*** hoặc ***would*** để yêu cầu người khác làm một điều gì đó.

Could và *would* được dùng trong những tình huống trang trọng và lịch sự.

Ví dụ: *Can you close the door?*
Will you send this package on your way home?
Could you please help me with this exercise?
Would you look at my report?

Chỉ được dùng *can* hoặc *will* để trả lời các yêu cầu này, hoặc có thể dùng các cụm từ: *OK, Sure, Certainly, Sorry...*

Ví dụ: *Can you close the door for me? – OK.*
Will you send this package on your way home? – Yes, I will.
Would you look at my report? – Sorry, but I don't have enough time.

Dùng *be required to* để diễn tả một yêu cầu được đưa ra đối với ai.

Ví dụ: *I was required to work overtime last week.*
They are required to go to class on time.

4. Đưa ra một lời đề nghị giúp đỡ (offer).

Dùng ***Can/Shall I?*** hoặc ***Can/Shall we?*** để đưa ra một lời đề nghị giúp đỡ người khác.

Ví dụ: *Can I help you?*
Shall we do it for you now?

Để trả lời lời đề nghị này, có thể dùng các cụm từ: *OK. Thanks, That would be very nice, Yes, please...*

Ví dụ: *Can I help you? – Yes, please.*
Shall we do it for you now? – That's OK. I can do it by myself.

Chú ý: Cũng có thể dùng *Would you like* để đưa ra một lời đề nghị giúp đỡ.

Ví dụ: *Would you like me to help you?*
Would you like us to clean the house for you?

5. Đưa ra một lời xin phép (permission).

Dùng ***Can/Could/May I/we?*** để đưa ra một lời xin phép.

Could và *may* được dùng trong những tình huống trang trọng và lịch sự.

Ví dụ: *Can we go to the movies tonight, Mum?*
Could I use your computer for a moment?
May I leave early today?

Dùng *can, may* (không dùng *could*) hoặc các cụm từ *Sure, Go ahead, Certainly, I'm sorry but* để trả lời các lời xin phép này.

Ví dụ: *Can we go to the movies tonight, Mum? – Yes, you can.*
Could I use your computer for a moment?
– Yes, you can/may/could.

Chú ý: dùng *be allowed to/be permitted to* diễn tả những việc được phép hoặc không được phép làm.

Ví dụ: *We were not allowed to play games before finishing our homework.*
They are permitted to enter the house at any time.

6. Diễn tả lời khuyên (advice), sự bắt buộc (obligation), sự cần thiết (necessity).

- Dùng động từ ***should*** hoặc ***ought to*** để đưa ra một lời khuyên.

Ví dụ: *She should prepare for her trip carefully.*
We ought to look for a safer apartment.

- Dùng động từ ***should*** hoặc ***ought to*** để đưa ra một ý kiến tổng quát. (general opinion).

Ví dụ: *People should try their best to stop environmental problems.*
Students ought not to do too much homework.

- Dùng cụm động từ ***be supposed to*** để diễn tả một qui định hoặc mong đợi (expectation), việc gì đó sẽ được thực hiện hoặc sẽ diễn ra.

Ví dụ: *I'm supposed to attend the meeting.*
The meeting is supposed to start tomorrow. (It is scheduled.)

- Dùng động từ ***had better*** để đưa ra một lời cảnh báo (warning) về một sự việc hoặc hành động (có thể mang lại hậu quả).

Ví dụ: *You'd better study for the test if you don't want to fail.*
He'd better go to work on time.

Chú ý: thể phủ định của *had better* là *had better not*.

I'd better not call him. He may get angry with me.

- Dùng động từ ***must, have to*** hoặc ***have got to*** để diễn tả một sự bắt buộc (obligation).

Ví dụ: *You have to stop when the red light is on.*
Motorists must obey all traffic lights in the city.
They've got to leave soon.

- Dùng cụm động từ ***be to*** để diễn tả một mệnh lệnh (command) cần phải thực hiện.

Ví dụ: *I am to be at the airport by 4 pm tomorrow. (My boss has told me to be there.)*

I was to call him last night. (That was what I was told to do.)

- Dùng các động từ ***needn't/ not… need to/not…have to*** **hoặc** ***haven't got to*** để diễn tả một điều không bắt buộc hoặc không cần thiết.

Ví dụ: *They don't have to/haven't got to/needn't wear uniforms to that school.*

7. Diễn tả sự ngăn cấm (prohibition).

Dùng động từ ***must not*** để diễn tả một điều cấm đoán.

Ví dụ: *They mustn't bring pets into that restaurant.*
You mustn't blow your car horn in front of the hospital.

Chú ý: *must not* dùng để diễn tả một điều cấm đoán trong khi *not...have to* dùng diễn tả một điều không bắt buộc hoặc không cần thiết.

Ví dụ: *You mustn't bring your cell phone into the classroom.*
You don't have to bring your cell phone with you at any time.

8. Diễn tả một kết luận ở hiện tại (logical assumption).

Dùng động từ ***must, may*** (khẳng định) hoặc ***can't, couldn't, might not*** (phủ định) để diễn tả một kết luận có cơ sở về một sự việc ở hiện tại (logical assumption).

Ví dụ *You have worked all night these days. You must be very tired.*
Look at him. He looks very young. He can't be over forty years old.
Tom couldn't be at the library now. I just saw him five minutes ago.

9. Diễn tả một điều ưa thích (preference).

Dùng cụm động từ ***would like, would prefer*** hoặc ***would rather*** để diễn tả một điều ưa thích hoặc mong muốn.

Ví dụ: *I would prefer to watch Vietnam Idol.*
I would like to go camping today.
I would rather eat at home.

Chú ý:

Thể khẳng định:
would like/would prefer + to-infinitive
would rather + bare infinitive

Thể phủ định:

would prefer not + to-infinitive
would rather not + bare infinitive

KHÔNG dùng *would like* ở thể phủ định, dùng *not... want* để thay thế.

Ví dụ: *She would rather not stay here.*
They would prefer not to watch that movie.
They don't want to eat in this restaurant.

10. Diễn tả sự việc đang diễn tiến ở hiện tại.

Động từ tình thái có thể kết hợp với hiện tại phân từ (V-ing) để diễn tả các sự việc đang diễn tiến ở hiện tại.

Modal + be + V-ing

- Diễn tả một kết luận ở hiện tại (present deduction)

Để diễn tả một kết luận về sự việc đang diễn tiến ở hiện tại, ta dùng:
must/may/could/might/couldn't/can't + be + V-ing

Ví dụ: *Tom is in the library now. He must be studying for his test tomorrow.*
Jane can't be working now. I just saw her at the coffee shop.
They couldn't be going on vacation. They are having an important project.

- Diễn tả một khả năng có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

Ta dùng: *may/might/could + be + V-ing.*

Ví dụ: *Don't call me tonight. I could be going to the movies with my family.*

11. Diễn tả sự việc trong quá khứ.

Modal + have + past participle (PP)

- Diễn tả một lời khuyên trong quá khứ.

should/ought to have + PP (đáng lẽ ra): diễn tả lời khuyên về một điều đáng lẽ nên làm trong quá khứ nhưng không được thực hiện.

shouldn't have/ought not to have + PP (lẽ ra không): diễn tả lời khuyên về một điều đáng lẽ KHÔNG nên làm trong quá khứ nhưng đã thực hiện.

Ví dụ: *She should have studied hard during the course last semester (but she didn't).*

They ought to have seen the doctor earlier (but they didn't).

I shouldn't have gone through the red light yesterday (but I did and got a ticket).

- Diễn tả một kết luận trong quá khứ.

98%	**must have + PP**	*The grass is all wet. It must have rained very hard last night.*
50%	**may have + PP**	*John looks upset. Something bad may have happened to him.*
<50%	**could have + PP** **might have + PP**	*Some students were late this morning. They could have got stuck in traffic.* *Tom wasn't at the party. He might have forgotten about it.*
	couldn't have + PP	*You couldn't have talked to Tim yesterday.*

		He was not in town.
2%	**can't have + PP**	*Mary can't have been at home. She ate out with me.*

- Diễn tả một điều không có thật trong quá khứ.
  Ta dùng: *would/could/might have + PP.*
  Nó tương đương với câu điều kiện loại III.

Ví dụ: *I would have accepted this job, but I didn't want to leave my country.*
I could have become an artist, but my parents made me study medicine.

Bài tập ĐỘNG TỪ TÌNH THÁI

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. When she was young, she _______ swim across this river.
A. was able B. had better C. would D. should
2. He ______ stop making personal calls at work, or he will lose his job.
A. would rather B. had better C. could D. will
3. ______ I clean the room before the guests arrive?
A. Shall B. Would C. Could D. Might
4. ______ I use your computer for a minute?
A. Might B. Could C. Must D. Would
5. My brother _____ attend a university in the USA, but he isn't sure yet.
A. should B. will C. shall D. can
6. I think the principal of this school _____ give students more freedom in choosing the courses they want to study.
A. would B. would like C. might D. ought to
7. You _____ ask for permission before going inside the room.
A. have got to B. would C. will D. might
8. The exhibition is free for all students. We _____ pay any fee.
A. mustn't B. shouldn't C. may not D. don't have to
9. Is that Tom over there? – No, it ______ be him. He's not that tall.
A. shouldn't B. might not C. can't D. won't
10. They are doing very hard on their project. It _____ be very important to them.
A. should B. could C. must D. would

Exercise 2: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. We _______ protect the environment if we continue treating the earth this way.
A. are permitted to B. are not allowed to
C. are unlikely to D. are required to

2. ________ me to deliver these flowers to the recipient for you? – That'd be nice.
A. Will you want B. Would you like
C. Are you permitted D. Should
3. You look very tired this morning. You _____ up late last night.
A. shouldn't have stayed B. mustn't stay
C. couldn't have stayed D. can't stay
4. Readers ______ bring food and drink to the library. Please leave them outside.
A. aren't allowed to B. are permitted to
C. don't have to D. have to
5. You ______ disturb him. He has been very aggressive these days.
A. had better not B. hadn't better
C. would rather not D. wouldn't rather
6. She ______ take a five-week business trip. That's what her boss told her yesterday.
A. is able to B. would rather C. is to D. would like to
7. _______ skiing with us this weekend?
A. Would you go B. Would you rather to go
C. Would you prefer go D. Would you like to go
8. Look at all the tools on the floor. He _______ somewhere around here. Let's find him.
A. couldn't be working B. can't be working
C. couldn't be working D. must be working
9. Tom ______ finish the report as soon as possible. He needs it for the meeting tomorrow.
A. is supposed to B. is allowed to
C. isn't permitted to D. doesn't have to
10. He _______ very hard to get such a good result.
A. could be studying B. may be studying
C. must have studied D. should have studied

Exercise 3: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Who would you _______, a famous singer or a famous actor?
A. like meeting B. prefer to meet
C. rather to meet D. rather meeting
2. She is leaving. She _____ here tonight.
A. wouldn't rather stay B. wouldn't like to stay
C. doesn't want to stay D. wouldn't prefer to stay
3. Our math class was canceled yesterday. The teacher _____ busy with something.
A. should be B. could be C. should have been D. could have been

4. Tom _______ watch TV than go to the party with her.
A. would like   B. isn't allowed   C. isn't permitted   D. would rather
5. You have to wait for him because he _____ a meeting now.
A. may be having   B. may have had
C. may not have   D. may have been having
6. Why don't you tell us right now what he ________?
A. would rather not do   B. wouldn't prefer to do
C. wouldn't rather do   D. would like not to do
7. Athletes ______ be careful when using medicines or any kinds of drugs.
A. are permitted to   B. are able to
C. are allowed to   D. are required to
8. That player only played in the first half. He _____ near the end of the game.
A. must have scored   B. couldn't have scored
C. might have scored   D. may not have scored
9. _____ finish the test yesterday? – No, I didn't have enough time.
A. Were you able to   B. Were you supposed to
C. Were you permitted to   D. Were you allowed to
10. The lights in Susan's room are still on. She ______ her assignment.
A. must have written   B. might have written
C. should have written   D. might be writing

Exercise 4: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. She spoke in a low voice, but I ______ what she was saying.
A. can understand   B. could understand
C. were able understand   D. could have understood
2. The fire spread through the building very quickly, but everyone ______ escape.
A. could   B. can be able   C. was able to   D. could be
3. We didn't go out last night. We ______ to the movies, but we decided to stay at home.
A. could go   B. can go   C. could be going   D. could have gone
4. You've been travelling all day. You ______ tired.
A. must be   B. have been   C. are able to   D. ought to be
5. I hear that your exams are next week. You ______ very hard right now.
A. must to study   B. must be studying
C. had to study   D. must have studied
6. The phone rang but I didn't hear it. I ______ asleep.
A. must be   B. had to be   C. ought to be   D. must have been
7. She passed me on the street without speaking. She ______ me.
A. mustn't see   B. can't see
C. mustn't have seen   D. can't have seen

8. Jack was an excellent tennis player. He ______ anybody.
A. can beat   B. is able to beat   C. could beat   D. was able to beat
9. It's really a good movie. You ______ and see it this evening.
A. should have gone   B. must have to go
C. ought to go   D. used to go
10. I'm not sure where to go on my vacation, but I ______ to Ha Long Bay.
A. able to go   B. may go
C. can be going   D. may not be going

Exercise 5: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. This building ______ finished by the end of last year but there have been so many strikes that it isn't finished yet.
A. will have been   B. should have been
C. was to have been   D. may not have been
2. Jenny's engagement ring is enormous! It _____ have cost a fortune.
A. can   B. must   C. could   D. should
3. Tom painted his bedroom black. It looks dark and dreary. He _____ a different colour.
A. has to choose   B. should have chosen
C. must have chosen   D. could have been choosing
4. I know you didn't see me yesterday because I was in Hanoi. You _____ me.
A. may not have seen   B. mustn't have seen
C. shouldn't have seen   D. can't have seen
5. They _____ married next week but now they have quarreled and the wedding has been cancelled.
A. will have   B. were to have been
C. will have been   D. should have been
6. Why are you so late? You _____ here two hours ago.
A. need have been   B. must have been
C. should have been   D. oughtn't to have been
7. I found this baby bird at the foot of a tree. It _____ from a nest.
A. might not have fallen   B. must have fallen
C. can have fallen   D. ought to have fallen
8. It's a pity you didn't ask because I _____ you.
A. could help   B. could have helped
C. should have helped   D. would help
9. "The instructions were in French, and I translated them into English for him." "You ______ them. He knows French."
A. needn't have translated   B. oughtn't to have translated
C. shouldn't have translated   D. can't have translated

10. "I can't think why they didn't try to help him." "They _____ that he was drowning."
A. couldn't have realized B. mightn't have realized
C. must have realized D. mustn't have realized

III. TÍNH TỪ, TRẠNG TỪ, CẤU TRÚC SO SÁNH

A. Tính từ

Tính từ thường có các vị trí:

– trước danh từ nó mô tả:

We visited an old house.

– theo sau động từ nối như *be* (là, thì), *get* (trở nên), *become* (trở nên), *look* (trông có vẻ), *seem/appear* (dường như), *sound* (nghe có vẻ), *smell* (có mùi), *feel* (cảm thấy):

The flowers smelt beautiful and the garden looked wonderful.

Hầu hết các tính từ đều có thể dùng ở cả hai vị trí (*a noisy meeting/ the meeting is noisy*), nhưng một số tính từ chỉ đứng trước danh từ trong khi một số khác chỉ đứng sau động từ nối.

Tính từ chỉ đứng trước danh từ: chief, elder, eldest, former, indoor, inner, main, only, outdoor, outer, principal, sheer (= complete), upper, utter (= complete).

Ví dụ: *The chief problem is the shortage of oil.*

We walked for hours in utter darkness.

Tính từ chỉ đứng sau động từ nối: fine, well (= healthy), ill, ashamed, pleased, upset, và các tính từ có tiền tố a- như afraid, alike, alive, alone, asleep, awake...

Ví dụ: *The victim is still alive.*

Tính từ có thể đứng sau danh từ khi chúng được theo sau bởi các cụm giới từ như *(full) of, (tired) of...* hoặc có các đại từ bất định (*something, anything...*) đứng trước.

Ví dụ:

He found a box full of precious stomes.

Many people anxious for news are waiting at the gate.

There is nothing new.

Thứ tự của tính từ chỉ tính chất:

(a) kích thước (size)
(b) mô tả tổng quát (general description)
(c) chỉ tuổi tác (age)
(d) chỉ hình dáng (shape)
(e) chỉ màu sắc (colour)
(f) chất liệu (material)
(g) chỉ nguồn gốc (origin)
(h) chỉ mục đích (purpose)

Ví dụ: *two small black kittens*
two large white pocket handkerchiefs
a small square room

Khi có nhiều tính từ thuộc cùng một nhóm, chúng ta dùng dấu phẩy để tách ra và đặt tính từ ngắn hơn đứng trước.

a soft, comfortable chair
a bright, cheerful smile

Khi hai tính từ có độ dài tương đương thì tính từ nào đứng trước cũng được: *a peaceful, happy place* hoặc *a happy, peaceful place*

Tính từ tận cùng bằng *–ing* và *–ed*.

Tính từ có dạng hiện tại phân từ (V-ing): được dùng để chỉ tính chất của người, vật hoặc sự vật.

Tính từ có dạng quá khứ phân từ (V-ed/V$_3$): được dùng để chỉ cảm xúc, ấn tượng về một tính chất nào đó.

Ví dụ: *It's a boring film.* (Nó là một bộ phim nhàm chán.)

The visitors are bored. (Du khách nhàm chán.)

B. Trạng từ

Trạng từ được dùng để bổ nghĩa cho động từ, tính từ, trạng từ khác hoặc cả mệnh đề. Ta có trạng từ chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn, cách thức, tần suất,...

Ta thường thêm –ly vào các tính từ để hình thành trạng từ.

Ví dụ: bad → badly; quick → quickly

Các qui tắc thay đổi chính tả khi thành lập trạng từ:

		Ví dụ
tận cùng bằng *-y*	bỏ *-y* và thêm *-ily*	*happily*
tận cùng bằng *-ie*	bỏ *-e* và thêm *-y*.	*miserably*
tận cùng bằng *-e*	giữ nguyên *e* và thêm *-ly*	*extremely*

Vị trí của trạng từ trong câu

Trạng từ trong tiếng Anh có nhiều vị trí khác nhau như đầu câu, giữa câu hoặc cuối câu.

- Đầu câu (*front position*) là vị trí của trạng từ và cụm trạng từ được dùng để bổ nghĩa cả câu.

Naturally, we all hope for good news.

Luckily, the bicycle was still there when I got back.

Sure enough, there was an enormous queue at the booking office.

- Giữa câu (*mid position*): các trạng từ chỉ tần suất (*always, sometimes, never...*) và một vài trạng từ chỉ mức độ (*slightly, completely, quite...*) thường được đặt trước động từ chính.

They always deal with the mail first.

We hardly ever go out in the evening.

We quite agree with what you said.

- Cuối câu (*end position*): các trạng từ chỉ thời gian (*tomorrow, yesterday*...), thể cách (*slowly, quickly*...) và nơi chốn (*there, at home*...) thường được đặt sau động từ chính hoặc ở cuối câu.

We planned to finish the project next month.

The sun still shown brightly in the quiet garden.

Các trạng từ chỉ thể cách (tận cùng bằng *-ly*) thường có thể được đặt ở cả 3 vị trí trên.

Naturally, we all hope for good news.

We are naturally hope for good news.

We all hope for good news, naturally.

C. So sánh

1. Tính từ ngắn và tính từ dài.

Tính từ ngắn:

- có 1 âm tiết

Ví dụ như: *loud, short, long, fast, late, soft.*

- có 2 âm tiết và kết thúc bằng: **-y, -ow, -et, -er, -le**

Ví dụ: *happy, narrow, quiet, clever, simple*

Tính từ dài:

- có 1 âm tiết và kết thúc bằng *–ed*

Ví dụ: *bored, tired, pleased*

- có 2 âm tiết, không kết thúc bằng **-y, -ow, -et, -er, -le**

Ví dụ: *useful, afraid, correct, often*

- có 3 âm tiết trở lên

Ví dụ: *expensive, intelligent*

Chú ý: Các tính từ sau được xem vừa là tính từ ngắn vừa là tính từ dài: ***free, keen, safe, sure, true, wise, clever, common, gentle.***

2. So sánh hơn (Comparatives)

Cấu trúc so sánh hơn được dùng để so sánh hai đối tượng, trong đó một đối tượng có các **tính chất, trạng thái, hình thức**... hơn đối tượng kia.

Với tính từ ngắn: **Adjective-ER + THAN**

Với tính từ dài: **MORE + Adjective + THAN**

Ví dụ: *Her house is **bigger than** mine.*

*Some of my friends are **more intelligent than** me.*

Chú ý:

a. Nhân đôi phụ âm cuối trước khi thêm '-er' nếu tính từ tận cùng là 'một nguyên âm + một phụ âm'.

Ví dụ: *big → bigger; hot → hotter; thin → thinner*

b. Đối với các tính từ vừa là tính từ ngắn vừa là tính từ dài:

Ví dụ: *She is **cleverer than** him. = She is **more clever than** him.*

*Tom felt **surer than** I did. = Tom felt **more sure than** I did.*

c. "**than**" trong cấu trúc so sánh hơn có thể được bỏ đi khi đối tượng so sánh thứ hai được hiểu ngầm (không đề cập).

Ví dụ: *What do you think about these two proposals? – I think this one is **more practical** (than the other one).*

d. Có thể sử dụng từ ***even, much, far, a lot*** trong cấu trúc so sánh hơn để làm tăng mức độ so sánh.

Ví dụ: *He is even **better than** his brother.*

*This book is much **more expensive**.*

e. Ngược lại, các từ ***a bit, a little, slightly*** được dùng trong cấu trúc so sánh hơn có tác dụng làm giảm mức độ so sánh.

Ví dụ: *He studies a bit **harder than** me.*

*This hotel is slightly **cheaper than** that one.*

3. So sánh nhất (Superatives)

Cấu trúc so sánh nhất được dùng để so sánh ba đối tượng trở lên, trong đó một đối tượng có các **tính chất, trạng thái, hình thức**... hơn các đối tượng còn lại.

Với tính từ ngắn: **THE + Adjective-EST**

Với tính từ dài: **THE MOST + Adjective**

Ví dụ: *This film is **the longest** of the three.*

*John is **the most outgoing** person in the class.*

Chú ý:

a. Đối với các tính từ vừa là tính từ ngắn vừa là tính từ dài:

Ví dụ: *This is **the commonest** mistake. = This is **the most common** mistake.*

b. Sau cấu trúc so sánh nhất, có thể dùng cụm giới từ bắt đầu bằng **in** hoặc **of**.

Ví dụ: *He is **the smartest** student in class.*

*This book is **the most interesting** of the three (books).*

4. Các trường hợp bất qui tắc.

NGUYÊN CẤP	SO SÁNH HƠN	SO SÁNH NHẤT
good	*better*	*the best*
bad	*worse*	*the worst*
much/many	*more*	*the most*
little	*less*	*the least*
far	*farther/further*	*the farthest/furthest*
old	*older/elder*	*the oldest/eldest*

Chú ý:

a. "**farther**" có nghĩa là xa hơn, còn "**further**" có nghĩa là nhiều hơn, sâu hơn,...

Ví dụ: *His house is farther away than mine.*

For further information, please contact our office.

b. ***Elder/eldest*** luôn đứng trước danh từ và thường được dùng để so sánh về tuổi tác giữa các thành viên trong gia đình. ***Older/oldest*** được dùng cho mọi đối tượng.

Ví dụ: *He is my **eldest** brother.*
*He is **the oldest** player in the team.*

5. So sánh bằng với "as…as":

Ta dùng "**as + tính từ/trạng từ + as**" để so sánh hai người hoặc hai vật có các **tính chất, trạng thái, hình thức**…bằng nhau, hoặc "**not as/so + tính từ/trạng từ + as**" để so sánh không bằng nhau.

Ví dụ: *John said that no other car could go **as fast as** his car.*
*The facilities of the older hospital are **as good as** those of the new hospital.*
*Ann cannot cook **as/so well as** her sister does.*

Ta có thể dùng *twice* (gấp đôi) hoặc *half* (bằng nửa) trước "as…as".

Ví dụ: *Your room is twice as large as mine.*
He works half as hard as he used to.

Tuy nhiên, khi dùng *three times, four times,…* thì chúng ta dùng với tính từ hoặc trạng từ so sánh hơn.

Ví dụ: *The trip was **three times longer than** we expected.*
*She can type **four times faster than** you.*

6. So sánh kép (double comparison)

Ta dùng "cấp so sánh hơn + and + cấp so sánh hơn" (càng ngày càng).

Ví dụ: *Their business is getting **better and better.***
It rained more and more heavily as the game was going on.

Ta còn có thể dùng "the + cấp so sánh hơn…, the + cấp so sánh hơn…" (càng…thì càng…). Với danh từ, ta dùng: **the more** + danh từ.

Ví dụ: ***The earlier** she leaves, **the sooner** she will arrive.*
***The more** you study, **the more** knowledge you gain.*

Bài tập TÍNH TỪ, TRẠNG TỪ, CẤU TRÚC SO SÁNH

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. The examination was _____. All the students passed.
A. surprising easy B. surprisingly easy
C. surprising easily D. surprisingly easily
2. Tom sounded _____ when I spoke to him on the phone.
A. angry B. angrily C. to be angry D. to be angrily
3. Jane is ____ because her job is ____.
A. bored – bored B. boring – boring
C. boring – bored D. bored – boring
4. Her illness was _____ than we had thought first.
A. much serious B. more serious C. serious D. most serious

5. The garden looks _____ since you tidied it up.
A. better B. well C. more good D. more well
6. Petrol is twice ______ it was a few years ago.
A. more expensive than B. much expensive as
C. as expensive as D. as v than
7. That house over there is ______ building in the city.
A. the eldest B. the oldest C. the elder D. the older
8. Thank you for the money. It was _____ of you.
A. more generous B. the more generous
C. most generous D. the most generous
9. We were lucky to have one of _____ rooms in the hotel.
A. a nice B. a nicer C. the nicer D. the nicest
10. Your English is improving. It is getting _____.
A. well and better B. good and well
C. better and better D. good and better

Exercise 2: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. In the kitchen there is a ______ table.
A. beautiful large round wooden B. large beautiful wooden round
C. wooden round large beautiful D. round large wooden beautiful
2. Ann works _____ than most of her friends.
A. much harder B. a lot more hardly
C. more hardly D. many harder
3. The shop wasn't _____ crowded this morning _____ it usually is.
A. as – than B. so – as C. more – than D. so – than
4. It's ____ film that I have ever watched.
A. most boring B. the most boring
C. best boring D. the best boring
5. ______ we leave, ______ we will arrive.
A. The earlier – the sooner B. The earliest – the soonest
C. Earlier – sooner D. The earliest – the sooner
6. Let me know immediately if you hear any _____ news.
A. farther B. further C. farthest D. furthest
7. I have never had a ______ meal than that.
A. more delicious B. most delicious
C. delicious more D. delicious most
8. Jane didn't do so well in the exam _____ she had hoped.
A. as B. so C. than D. more
9. Your writing is terrible. I can ____ it.
A. hard read B. read hard C. hardly read D. read hardly

10. It is a ______ restaurant and the food is good.
A. reasonable cheap
B. reasonable cheaply
C. reasonably cheap
D. reasonably cheaply

Exercise 3: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Don't walk so _____! Can't you walk ______?
A. fast – slower
B. fast – more slowly
C. fastly – slower
D. fastly – more slowly

2. It was ______ that she passed the exam. Everyone had thought that she failed.
A. surprising B. surprised C. surprisingly D. surprisedly

3. There is a ______ bag in the corner of the room.
A. small black plastic
B. black small plastic
C. plastic small black
D. plastic black small

4. The driver of the car was ______ in the accident.
A. serious injured
B. seriously injured
C. serious injuredly
D. seriously injuredly

5. Could you speak ______ so I can understand what you mean?
A. a bit slowly
B. a little slower
C. a bit slowlier
D. a little more slowly

6. Please cut my hair ______ the style in this magazine.
A. the same long as
B. the same length like
C. the same long like
D. the same length as

7. The chef tasted the meat ______ before presenting it to the President.
A. cautious
B. cautiously
C. more cautious
D. much cautiously

8. The climate in Sa Pa is much colder ______ of Hanoi.
A. than it B. that that C. than there D. than this

9. Please give me ______ of the two pieces of the cake.
A. smaller B. smallest C. the smaller D. the smallest

10. This is the _____ dog I've ever seen.
A. dirtier-looking
B. dirtiest-looking
C. more dirty-looking
D. most dirty-looking

Exercise 4: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. So far as Mrs. Brown was concerned she did not seem to be in the least ______.
A. embarrassed B. embarrassment C. embarrassing D. embarrass

2. He did not come and she looked rather ________.
A. worrying B. worry C. worrier D. worried

3. The rise of crime is ________.
A. depressing B. depressed C. depressive D. depression

4. The pictures made a _______ impression on him.
A. depressed B. depressing C. depression D. depressive

5. She is not _________ with her position.
A. satisfying B. satisfaction C. satisfactory D. satisfied

6. I don't like horror films. I think they are ______ and ______.
A. frightening – boring
B. frightening – bored
C. frightened – boring
D. frightened – bored

7. Don't look so _______. Of course, it was a ______ decision but we had no other choices.
A. surprised – surprised
B. surprising – surprising
C. surprised – surprising
D. surprising – surprised

8. It was a _____ journey. I wish I hadn't it. I feel completely _____ later.
A. tiring – exhausting
B. tired – exhausted
C. tired – exhausting
D. tiring – exhausted

9. The football match was ______. Our team lost the game and we left the stadium quite ______.
A. disappointing – disappointing
B. disappointing – disappointed
C. disappointed – disappointed
D. disappointed – disappointing

10. He can't remember his pupils' names. It seemed funny at first, but now it is rather _______.
A. embarrassed B. embarrassment C. embarrassing D. embarrass

Exercise 5: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. That is ______ story I have ever heard.
A. more incredible
B. as incredible
C. the most incredible
D. most incredible

2. It is not always _______ students who do well in tests.
A. brighter B. most bright C. more bright D. the brightest

3. Terylene shirts are ______ to wear, but cotton shirts are much ______.
A. harder – most comfortable
B. hardest – more comfortable
C. harder – more comfortable
D. more hard – more comfortable

4. Which is _______, Lake Michigan or Lake Superior?
A. deeper B. the deepest C. deepest D. deep

5. She is far ______ than she used to be.
A. self-confident
B. more self-confident
C. self-confidenter
D. most self-confident

6. ________ man among the guests is a basketball player.
A. The tallest B. Taller C. The taller D. Tallest

7. I like both of them, but I think Kate is _______ to talk to.
A. more easy B. as easy C. as easy as D. easier

8. Most people are ________ than their parents used to be.
A. better off B. the best off C. as well off D. best off
9. She has a lot to be thankful for; but ______ thing of all is that she does not realize it.
A. the sadder B. sadder C. the saddest D. saddest
10. I want to buy a car – _____________ one you have.
A. more powerful B. the more powerful
C. as most powerful D. the most powerful

Exercise 6: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Actually, today I feel _______ than I did yesterday.
A. bad B. worst C. worse D. the worst
2. This is ______ interesting exhibition I've ever visited.
A. more B. less C. most D. the most
3. At college the work is harder than the work we did at school, but it is much _______ interesting.
A. more B. many C. most D. a few
4. We didn't think you were _______ in ancient history.
A. interested B. not interesting C. interesting D. less interesting
5. My ________ brother studies at college.
A. old B. older C. elder D. the eldest
6. This is _______ film I have ever seen.
A. good B. worse C. the best D. better
7. I'll feel _______ when my exams are over.
A. happy B. more happily C. happily D. happiest
8. I felt _______ because I had fever.
A. badly B. worse bad C. bad D. the worst
9. The more you work, the _______ you'll pass your exams.
A. good B. best C. better D. the best
10. Prices go up and up. Everything gets ________ expensive.
A. most B. more C. least D. less

Exercise 7: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. That was great! It was ________ meal you have ever cooked.
A. good B. best C. better D. the best
2. This exhibition is _______ interesting than the previous one.
A. little B. least C. less D. the least
3. The last film I saw was ________ frightening than this one.
A. little B. least C. less D. the least
4. Today is ________ cold than yesterday. So I'm wearing my shorts.
A. little B. least C. less D. the least

5. Everyone in your team played _______ except the captain.
A. bad B. worst C. badly D. the worst
6. You know much, but you know ________ than your teacher.
A. little B. least C. less D. much
7. Small shops are not as ________ as supermarkets.
A. more convenient B. most convenient
C. convenient D. the most convenient
8. The child studied hard, and as a result he passed the exams _____ of all.
A. good B. best C. better D. the best
9. This is _______ film I've ever seen.
A. more interesting B. most interesting
C. the most interesting D. not interesting
10. We were disappointed as the film was _________ than we expected.
A. entertaining B. most entertaining
C. less entertaining D. entertaining

Exercise 8: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Though the dish smelt ______, he refused to eat saying he was not hungry.
A. good B. well C. bad D. worse
2. She looked at me ________ and told me to leave the room.
A. angry B. angrily C. angrier D. as angry
3. She spends a lot of money on her clothes but they always look _____.
A. cheap B. cheaply C. cheaper D. cheapest
4. "Have you seen him?" "Yes, he looks _____ but he says he feels ______."
A. good – bad B. well – badly C. well – bad D. good – badly
5. His cough sounds _______. He should see a doctor.
A. terrible B. terribly C. as terrible D. less terrible
6. Be ______! Stop talking, behave yourselves.
A. quiet B. quietly C. quieter D. quietest
7. The situation looks __________. We must do something.
A. bad B. badly C. more badly D. as bad
8. He seemed to me a bit _______ today.
A. strange B. strangely C. more strangely D. as strange
9. The fish tastes _______. I won't eat it.
A. awful B. awfully C. more awfully D. as awful
10. He looked ________ in his new suit.
A. good B. well C. gooder D. much good

IV. THỂ BỊ ĐỘNG

a) Hình thức

- ACTIVE : **Subject + Verb + Object**
- PASSIVE :**Subject + be + Past participle + By-phrase**

Những điều cần làm khi đổi câu chủ động sang câu bị động:

- Lấy tân ngữ (object) của câu chủ động làm chủ ngữ (subject) câu bị động.
- Không thay đổi thì của động từ, và động từ "be" phải có hình thức thích hợp tương ứng với chủ ngữ mới.
- Động từ chính luôn được dùng ở dạng quá khứ phân từ (past participle).
- Chủ ngữ của câu chủ động có thể dùng sau giới từ "by" với ý nghĩa là tác nhân gây ra hành động (*agent of the passive*).

Ví dụ: *My father bought the computer last week.*

→ *The computer was bought by my father last week.*

Chú ý: Nhiều câu bị động không cần thiết phải có tác nhân với giới từ "by" khi tác nhân đó không được xác định rõ hoặc không quan trọng.

Ví dụ: *People have built many new buildings in recent years.*

→ *Many new buildings have been built in recent years.*

b) Bảng đối chiếu câu chủ động và bị động qua các thì khác nhau:

Tenses	Active	Passive
Simple Present	**S + V / V+s/es** *Sue writes the book.*	**S +am/is/are + PP** *The book is written by Sue.*
Simple Past	**S +V-ed/V2** *Sue wrote the book.*	**S + was/were + PP** *The book was written by Sue.*
Present Continuous	**S+ am/is/are + V-ing** *Sue is writing the book.*	**S+ am/is/are +being + PP** *The book is being written by Sue.*
Past Continuous	**S+ was/were + V-ing** *Sue was writing the book.*	**S+ was/were + being + PP** *The book was being written by Sue.*
Present Perfect	**S+ have/has + PP** *Sue has written the articles.*	**S+ have/has + been + PP** *The articles have been written by Sue.*
Past Perfect	**S + had + PP** *Sue had written the articles.*	**S+ had + been + PP** *The articles had been written by Sue.*
Future Perfect	**S + will have + PP** *Sue will write the book.*	**S + will have been + PP** *The book will be written by Sue.*
Have to/ Be going to	**S+ have to/ be going to + bare infinitive** *Sue is going to write the book.*	**S + have to/ be going to + be + PP** *The book is going to be written by Sue.*

Ghi chú: PP = past participle

Ngoài các cấu trúc bị động cơ bản, thể bị động còn được thể hiện dưới các dạng sau:

1) Với động từ NEED

I need to borrow some money.	**need + to-infinitive → active**
John needs to be told the truth.	**need + to be + PP →passive**
The house needs painting. *The house needs to be painted.*	**the gerund carries a passive meaning** (danh động từ mang nghĩa bị động)

2) Với động từ theo sau là *to-infinitive* hoặc *gerund*

Active	Passive
Verb + to-infinitive	**→ Verb + to be + PP**
Verb + gerund	**→ Verb + being + PP**
Verb + to have + PP	**→ Verb + to have been + PP**
Verb + having + PP	**→ Verb + have been + PP**

Ví dụ: *I hope **to be invited** to the wedding.*

*They wanted the story **to be told** again.*

*She avoided **being disturbed**.*

*I want these dishes **to have been washed** when I come back.*

*She forgot **having been given** a big sum of money that day.*

3) Với động từ chỉ giác quan (*verbs of perception*)

Các động từ chỉ giác quan: ***see, watch, hear, smell, taste…***

Active	Passive
Verb + O + bare infinitive	**→ be + PP + to-infinitive**
Verb + O + gerund	**→ be + PP + gerund**

Ví dụ: *They saw the man **run** away. → The man was seen **to run** away.*

*They saw the man **running** away. → The man was seen **running** away.*

4) Với động từ MAKE và LET.

Active	Passive
make + O + bare infinitive	**→ be + made + to-infinitive**
let + O + bare infinitive	**→ be + allowed + to-infinitive**

Ví dụ: *The manager made all the employees work at the weekend.*

→ *All the employees **were made to work** at the weekend.*

(Tất cả nhân viên bị buộc phải làm việc vào cuối tuần.)

She lets her son play computer games on Sunday afternoon.

→ *Her son **is allowed to play** computer games on Sunday afternoon.*

(Con trai bà ấy được phép chơi trò chơi vi tính vào chiều chủ nhật.)

5) Với thể nhờ bảo (*Causative form*)

Ta dùng động từ ***have*** hoặc ***get***.

Active	Passive
have somebody do something	**→ have something done by sb**
get somebody to do something	**→ get something done by sb**

Ví dụ: *I had a technician **repair** my computer.*

→ *I had my computer **repaired** by a technician.*

(Tôi nhờ một kĩ thuật viên sửa máy tính cho tôi.)

*I got a technician **to repair** my computer.*

→ *I got my computer **repaired** by a technician.*

6) **Với động từ tường thuật hoặc bày tỏ ý kiến (*verbs of reporting or opinion*)**

Động từ tường thuật: **say, claim, report, show**…

Động từ chỉ ý kiến: **think, believe, consider, expect, feel, hope, know, prove, understand**…

Dạng 1:

Active: People/They + V_1 + (that) + S + V_2

Passive: It + be + PP (V_1) + (that) + S + V_2

Ví dụ: *People **believe** that the weather is changing dramatically.*

→ *It **is believed** that the weather is changing dramatically.*

(Người ta tin rằng thời tiết sẽ thay đổi đáng kể.)

*They **said** that he served in the army.*

→ *It **was said** that he served in the army.*

(Người ta nói rằng ông ấy đã phục vụ trong quân đội.)

Dạng 2:

Active: People/They + V_1 + (that) + S + V_2

Passive:

S + be + PP (V_1) +	**to- V_2**	(chủ động)
	to be + PP (V_2)	(bị động)
	to be + V_2-ing	(tiếp diễn)
	to have + PP (V_2)	(hoàn thành)
	to have been + PP (V_2)	(hoàn thành bị động)

Ví dụ: *They say that he is 100 years old.*

→ *He is said **to be** 100 years old.*

(Người ta nói rằng ông ấy 100 tuổi.)

People believe that rice is grown well in the Mekong Delta.

→ *Rice is believed **to be grown** well in the Mekong Delta.*

(Người ta tin rằng lúa mọc rất tốt ở đồng bằng sông Cửu Long.)

They thought that he was working in the office.

→ *He was thought **to be working** in the office.*

(Họ tin rằng ông ấy đang làm việc trong văn phòng.)

People say that he served in the army.

→ *He is said **to have served** in the army.*

(Người ta nói rằng trước đây ông ấy phục vụ trong quân đội.)

People say that the project has been completed.

→ *The project is said **to have been completed**.*

(Người ta nói rằng dự án đã được hoàn thành.)

Bài tập THỂ BỊ ĐỘNG

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. That book ______ by a famous author.
A. wrote B. was written C. is writing D. has written

2. The children's song ______ by one of the parents.
A. is taping B. are being taped C. are taping D. is being taped
3. The pollution in the city ______ our breathing.
A. was affecting B. will be affected
C. was being affected D. will be affecting
4. A special committee ______ the dispute.
A. is going to settle B. is going to be settled
C. going to settling D. will be settled
5. Mark ______ a lot by his friends, isn't he?
A. is influenced B. is influencing
C. isn't influenced D. isn't influencing
6. A few days ago, Tom's car ______ by one of the teenagers in his neighbourhood.
A. was stealing B. was stole C. has been stolen D. was stolen
7. Pencils ______ at the test, so please bring your own.
A. are provided B. will be provided
C. won't be provided D. shall not provide
8. Jack ______ the news immediately. If you don't do it, I will.
A. ought to be told B. ought be told
C. ought tell D. ought to have told
9. The prisoner is thought ______ by climbing over the wall.
A. to escape B. has been escaped C. to have escaped D. has escaped
10. Tom has just had a computer ______ in his room.
A. install B. installed C. to install D. installing

Exercise 2: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. They recommend that a hotel ______ on the edge of the lake.
A. should be built B. must be built
C. was built D. could build
2. He dislikes ______ what to do.
A. people tell him B. being told
C. to be told D. they telling him
3. The music at the party was very loud and ______ from far away.
A. can hear B. could hear C. can be heard D. could be heard
4. Both domestic and imported automobiles must ______ anti-pollution devices.
A. equipped with B. be equipped with
C. equipped by D. be equipped by
5. "Can't we do something about the situation?" "Something ______ right now."
A. is doing B. is done C. is being done D. has been doing

6. Despite all my anxiety, I ______ for the job I wanted.
A. was hiring B. hired C. got hiring D. got hired

7. "Has _____ about the eight o'clock flight to Chicago?" "Not yet."
A. been an announcement made B. an announcement been made
C. an announcement made D. been made an announcement

8. "Come back at 5 o'clock," he said, "the job ______ by then."
A. will be done B. has been done
C. is being done D. was being done

9. Renoir's paintings ______ masterpieces all over the world.
A. had considered B. are considered
C. are considering D. consider

10. Are you quite sure you know why _______?
A. was he dismissed B. did he dismiss
C. he was dismissing D. he was dismissed

Exercise 3: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. The ozone layer _________ harmful radiation from the sun.
A. prevents B. is prevented
C. is preventing D. is being prevented

2. Are you interested in the job _____________?
A. they are offered you B. they have offered you
C. you being offered D. you be offering

3. Vietnamese goods ________ to many European countries.
A. have exported B. have been exported
C. have been exporting D. have being exported

4. We expect students _______ during the examinations.
A. not to talk B. not to be talked
C. not talking D. not being talked

5. This kind of cloth _______ in warm water only.
A. must wash B. must be washing
C. must be washed D. must washed

6. Have you got the advisor ______ the issue?
A. to examine B. examining C. to be examined D. examined

7. When we talked about the accident, no names ________.
A. were mentioning B. to be mentioning
C. were mentioned D. to be mentioned

8. Harvard University _______ as one of the best universities in the world for hundreds of years.
A. has regarded B. is regarded C. has been regarded D. regards

9. The Norman is said _______ England in 1066.
A. to have invaded B. to have been invaded
C. to invade D. to be invaded

10. Jack accepted ______ for his brother's fault.
A. to punish B. to be punished C. punish D. being punished

Exercise 4: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I don't want any conclusion ______ before we have all the evidence.
A. be made B. to be made C. being made D. to have been made

2. More than five thousand people ______ in the earthquake in Indonesia last year.
A. was said to be died B. were said to be died
C. was said to die D. were said to die

3. Gunpowder was said ______ by the Chinese several centuries ago.
A. to have invented B. to be invented
C. to have been inventing D. to be inventing

4. I heard him ____ to himself after coming back from the party last night.
A. singing B. sung C. to be singing D. to be sung

5. He was seen _______ a stone and _______ it at the police.
A. pick up – throw B. picking up – throw
C. picked up – thrown D. to pick up – throw

6. "Those eggs of different colors are very artistic." "Yes, they ________ in Russia."
A. were painted B. were paint C. were painting D. painted

7. "David is in prison for smoking drugs." "He _____ that it was against the law."
A. is telling B. was told C. told D. tells

8. "The maintenance people didn't remove the chairs from the ballroom." "Don't worry. They ______ them before the dance begins."
A. will have been moved B. will have moved
C. were moved D. moved

9. Gold ______ in California in the 19th century.
A. was discovered B. has been discovered
C. was discover D. they discovered

10. _________ that military spending is extremely high.
A. We are felt B. It feels C. It is felt D. We feel that it is

Exercise 5: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. All planes _______ before departure.
A. will checked B. will have checked
C. will be checked D. will been checked

2. I wanted _______ by the head of the company, but it was impossible.
A. to see B. to be seen C. seeing D. being to see

3. Nancy ________ at Bob's house every night this week.

www.dethikemquynhon.ucoz.com

A. has been eaten
B. has eating
C. is being eaten
D. has been eating

4. "Where did you get these old dresses?" "We ______ them in the old trunk."
A. were found B. finding C. found D. have been found

5. "What happened to the old mail carrier?" "He ______ to a new neighborhood to work."
A. has sent B. was send C. was sent D. sent

6. "The longest fish in the contest was eighteen inches long." "It _______ by Peter."
A. was catching B. caught C. was caught D. catch

7. "I heard you decided to take up tennis." "Yes, I have ______ every day."
A. been played B. been playing C. playing D. play

8. "Are we about to have dinner?" "Yes, it _______ in the dining room."
A. is serving B. serves C. is being served D. served

9. "Why is Tony in prison?" "He _______ of robbery."
A. has been convicted
B. has been convicting
C. has convicted
D. convicted

10. "Where are Jack and Joseph?" "They ________ the boxes you asked for into the house."
A. have been bringing
B. bringing
C. have been brought
D. to bring

V. CÂU GIÁN TIẾP

A. Các thay đổi trong câu gián tiếp

❶ Thay đổi các đại từ, tính từ/đại từ sở hữu.

Các đại từ chỉ ngôi (*personal pronouns*), đại từ phản thân (*reflexive pronouns*), và tính từ/đại từ sở hữu (*possessive adjectives/pronouns*) trong câu gián tiếp sẽ được thay đổi so với câu trực tiếp.

Ví dụ: *Mr. Nam said to Hoa, "**You** take **your** book out and show it to **me**."*

Thầy Nam nói với Hoa: "Em hãy lấy vở ra và đưa cho thầy xem."

Tình huống 1: Một người bạn của Hoa tường thuật với một người bạn khác.

*Mr. Nam told Hoa that **she** took **her** book out and showed it to **him**.*

Tình huống 2: Hoa tường thuật với một người bạn khác.

*Mr. Nam told me that **I** took **my** book out and showed it to **him**.*

Tình huống 3: Thầy Nam tường thuật với ba mẹ của Hoa hoặc một người khác.

*I told Hoa that **she** took **her** book out and showed it to **me**.*

❷ Thay đổi thời gian, địa điểm và các từ chỉ định.

Câu trực tiếp	Câu gián tiếp
now	*then/at that time*
an hour ago	*an hour before/ an hour earlier*
today	*that day*
yesterday	*the day before/ the previous day*
tomorrow	*the next day/ the following day*
this (week)	*that (week)*
these (days)	*those (days)*
last year	*the year before/ the previous year*
next month	*the month after/ the following month*
here, there	*there*

❸ Thay đổi thì của động từ.

Các trường hợp thay đổi thì.

Khi động từ tường thuật (*say, tell, ask...*) ở thì quá khứ, động từ trong câu gián tiếp phải lùi về quá khứ một thì so với câu trực tiếp.

Câu trực tiếp	Câu gián tiếp
Simple Present *"I don't know this man."*	***Simple Past*** *He said he didn't know that man.*
Present Continuous *"I'm working for a foreign company."*	***Past Continuous*** *He said he was working for a foreign company.*
Present Perfect *"I've read a good book."*	***Past Perfect*** *He said he had read a good book.*
Present Perfect Continuous *"I have been writing my report."*	***Past Perfect Continuous*** *He said he had been writing his report.*
Simple Past *"I finished my assignment."*	***Past Perfect*** *He said he had finished his assignment.*
Simple Future *"I will do it later"*	***Future in the past*** *He said he would do it later.*
Modal verbs *"I can work late today."* *"I may see her tonight."* *"I must/have to go now."*	***Past forms of modals*** *He said he could work late that day.* *He said he might see her that night.* *He said he had to go then.*

Các trường hợp KHÔNG thay đổi thì.

*) Khi động từ tường thuật (*say, tell, ask...*) ở thì hiện tại, động từ trong câu gián tiếp không đổi thì.

Ví dụ:

He says, "I don't know the answer to your question."

→ *He says to me that he doesn't know the answer to my question.*

*) Khi động từ tường thuật (*say, tell, ask...*) ở thì quá khứ, động từ trong câu gián tiếp không đổi thì trong các trường hợp sau:

– Tường thuật một sự thật phổ quát hoặc một điều luôn luôn đúng.

Ví dụ:

My teacher said, "Russia is the biggest country in the world."

→ My teacher said that Russia is the biggest country in the world.

(Thầy tôi nói nước Nga là quốc gia lớn nhất trên thế giới.)

*) Khi động từ trong câu trực tiếp là các động từ khiếm khuyết: ***could, should, would, might, ought to, had to, used to.***

Ví dụ:

He said, "They might win the game."

→ He said to me that they might win the game.

(Anh ấy nói với tôi là họ có thể thắng trận đấu.)

He said, "I used to work all night."

→ He told me he used to work all night.

(Anh ấy bảo tôi rằng trước đây anh ấy thường làm việc suốt cả đêm.)

*) Khi động từ trong câu trực tiếp ở các thì: ***Past Continuous, Past Perfect, Past Perfect Continuous***, nếu thì ***Simple Past*** đi kèm một thời gian cụ thể thì có thể không thay đổi.

Ví dụ:

He said, "The Asian tsunami happened in 2004."

→ He said to me the Asian tsunami had happened/happened in 2004.

(Anh ấy bảo tôi rằng trận sóng thần ở châu Á xảy ra năm 2004.)

He said, "I was eating when she called me."

→ He told me he was eating when she called him.

(Anh ấy bảo tôi rằng anh ấy đang ăn thì cô ấy gọi điện thoại.)

*) Khi tường thuật mệnh đề ước muốn (***wish***), các câu điều kiện loại II, loại III, và cấu trúc ***"It's (high) time..."***

Ví dụ:

He said, "If I had time, I would help you."

→ He said to me if he had time he would help me.

(Anh ấy bảo tôi rằng anh ấy sẽ giúp tôi nếu có thời gian.)

He said, "I wish I were richer."

→ He told me he wished he were richer.

(Anh ấy bảo tôi rằng anh ấy muốn giàu có hơn.)

He said, "It's time we went."

→ He said it was time they went.

(Anh ấy nói đã đến lúc họ phải đi.)

B. Các loại câu gián tiếp

❶ Tường thuật câu mệnh lệnh, yêu cầu (*commands, orders, requests*)

Ta dùng các động từ *ask*, hoặc *tell* để tường thuật.

ask/tell + object + (not) + to-infinitive

Ví dụ:

They said, "Could you help us?"

→ They asked me to help them.

(Họ yêu cầu tôi giúp đỡ họ.)

She said, "Don't set fire in the room."

→ She told him not to set fire in the room.

(Bà ấy bảo cậu ta không được đốt trong phòng.)

❷ Tường thuật câu trần thuật (*statements*)

Ta dùng các động từ *say* hoặc *tell*.

say + (to object) + (that) + S + V

tell + object + (that) + S + V

Ví dụ:

She said, "I'm happy to see you again."

→ She said that she was happy to see me again.

→ She said to me that she was happy to see me again.

→ She told me that she was happy to see me again.

(Cô ấy nói rằng cô ấy rất vui khi gặp lại tôi.)

❸ Tường thuật câu hỏi (*questions*)

Đối với câu hỏi trực tiếp (*Wh- questions*)

ask + object + wh-word + S + V

Ví dụ:

She asked, "What is his job?"

→ She asked what his job was.

(Cô ấy hỏi anh ta làm nghề gì?)

They asked me, "Where did you have lunch?"

→ They asked me where I had lunch.

(Họ hỏi tôi rằng tôi ăn trưa ở đâu.)

Đối với câu hỏi Có/Không (*Yes-No questions*) hoặc câu hỏi lựa chọn (*OR questions*)

Khi tường thuật các loại câu hỏi này, cần phải thêm từ ***if*** hoặc ***whether*** trước chủ từ của câu hỏi được tường thuật.

ask + (object) + if/whether + S + V

Ví dụ:

She asked, "Are you a teacher?"

→ She asked him if/whether he was a teacher.

(Cô ấy hỏi anh ấy rằng có phải anh ấy là giáo viên không.)

They asked me, "Do you want to go or stay at home?"

→ They asked me if/whether I wanted to go or stay at home.

(Họ hỏi tôi rằng tôi muốn đi hay muốn ở nhà.)

✪ Chú ý: Câu hỏi đuôi được tường thuật giống như câu hỏi *Yes/No* nhưng phải bỏ phần đuôi phía sau.

Ví dụ:

She asked, "You will stay here, won't you?"

→ She asked me if/whether I would stay there.

(Cô ấy hỏi tôi rằng tôi có ở lại đó không.)

Bài tập CÂU GIÁN TIẾP

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I wondered _______ the right thing.
   A. whether I was doing   B. if I am doing
   C. was I doing   D. am I doing
2. He _______ that he was leaving way that afternoon.
   A. told me   B. told to me   C. said me   D. says to me
3. Bill asked Tom ______ in London.
   A. does the train arrive   B. did the train arrive
   C. whether the train arrives   D. if the train arrived
4. I asked them when _______ changed.
   A. was the timetable   B. the timetable is
   C. the timetable has been   D. the timetable had been
5. She warned me _______ late-night horror film.
   A. don't watch   B. shouldn't watch   C. not to watch   D. not watching
6. They asked me how many children ______ in the school.
   A. there are   B. are there   C. there were   D. were there
7. The scientist said the earth ______ the sun.
   A. goes around   B. is going around
   C. had gone around   D. was going around
8. My parents reminded me ______ the flowers.
   A. remember to plant   B. not to forget to plant
   C. to plant   D. of planting
9. They said they had come back _______.
   A. yesterday afternoon   B. the day before
   C. last week   D. the day before yesterday
10. He asked me ______ a seat.
    A. have I reserved   B. if I have reserved
    C. whether had I reserved   D. if I had reserved

Exercise 2: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. He asked me why _______ to the meeting.
   A. didn't I come   B. don't I come   C. you didn't come   D. I hadn't come
2. She reminded me to come on time for the party ______.
   A. tomorrow evening   B. the day after tomorrow
   C. in two days' time   D. next weekend
3. Tom said that he _____ with a friend at 9 o'clock the night before.
   A. is staying   B. was staying
   C. has been staying   D. had been staying
4. Peter said that if he _____ rich he _____ a lot.
   A. is – will travel   B. were – would travel
   C. had been – would have travelled   D. was – will travel

5. I asked him whose car ______ the previous night.
   A. he had borrowed   B. had he borrowed
   C. he borrowed   D. did he borrow
6. They asked me ______ in London then.
   A. is my brother working   B. if my brother is working
   C. was my brother working   D. if my brother was working
7. He asked the children _____ too much noise.
   A. not to make   B. not making
   C. don't make   D. if they don't make
8. The woman asked ______ get lunch at school.
   A. can the children   B. whether the children could
   C. if the children can   D. could the children
9. Laura said that when she ______ to school she saw an accident.
   A. was walking   B. has walked
   C. had ben walking   D. has been walking
10. Julia said that she _____ there at noon.
    A. is going to be   B. was going to be   C. will be   D. can be

Exercise 3: Choose the best answer that best rewrite the original one.

1. "You have not done your work well," said the teacher to me.
   A. The teacher told me I hadn't done my work well.
   B. The teacher told me I haven't done my work well.
   C. The teacher told me I hadn't done your work well.
   D. The teacher told me I hadn't done his work well.
2. "This man spoke to me on the road," said the woman.
   A. The woman said that man had spoken to me on the road.
   B. The woman said that man has spoken to her on the road.
   C. The woman said that man spoke to her on the road.
   D. The woman said that man had spoken to her on the road.
3. "I can't explain this rule to you," said my classmate to me.
   A. My classmate told me he/she can't explain that rule to me.
   B. My classmate told me he/she couldn't explain that rule to me.
   C. My classmate told me he/she couldn't explain that rule to you.
   D. My classmate said me he/she couldn't explain that rule to me.
4. The teacher said to class, "We shall discuss this subject tomorrow."
   A. The teacher told the class they would discuss that subject the next day.
   B. The teacher told the class they will discuss that subject the next day.
   C. The teacher said the class they would discuss that subject the next day.
   D. The teacher told the class they discussed that subject the next day.
5. The woman said to her son, "I am glad I am here."
   A. The woman told her son I was glad she was there.
   B. The woman told her son she was glad I was there.

C. The woman told her son she was glad she was there.
D. The woman told to her son she was glad she was there.

6. Mike said, "We have bought these books today."
   A. Mike said they bought those books that day.
   B. Mike said they had bought those books that day.
   C. Mike said they have bought those books that day.
   D. Mike said they had bought those books today.
7. Sarah said, "I read *Jane Eyre* last year."
   A. Sarah said she had read *Jane Eyre* the previous year.
   B. Sarah said she read *Jane Eyre* the previous year.
   C. Sarah said she has read *Jane Eyre* the previous year.
   D. Sarah said she would read *Jane Eyre* the previous year.
8. Tony said, "I have never been to London. I think I shall go there next year.
   A. Tony said he has never been to London and he thinks he would go there the following year.
   B. Tony said he had never been to London and he thought he would go there the following year.
   C. Tony said he had never been to London and he thinks he will go there the following year.
   D. Tony said he would have never been to London and he thought he would go there the following year.
9. Barbara said, "I saw them at my parents' house last year."
   A. Barbara said I had seen them at my parents' house the previous year.
   B. Barbara said she saw them at her parents' house the previous year.
   C. Barbara said she had seen them at her parents' house the previous year.
   D. Barbara said they had seen her at her parents' house the previous year.
10. He said, "I haven't seen my cousin today."
   A. He said he hasn't seen his cousin that day.
   B. He said he hadn't seen my cousin that day.
   C. He said he hadn't seen his cousin that day.
   D. He said I hadn't seen his cousin that day.

Exercise 4: Choose the best answer that best rewrite the original one.

1. Father said to me, "Don't stay there long."
   A. Father told me not stay there long.
   B. Father told to me not to stay there long.
   C. Father told me not to stay there long.
   D. Father said to me not to stay there long.
2. Peter said to them, "Don't leave the room until I come back."
   A. Peter told them not to leave the room until he came back.
   B. Peter told them not to leave the room until he comes back.
   C. Peter told them not to leave the room until they came back.
   D. Peter told them not to leave the room until they come back.
3. "Take my luggage to Room 145," he said to the porter.
   A. He told the porter take his luggage to Room 145.
   B. He said the porter to take his luggage to Room 145.
   C. He told the porter to take his luggage to Room 145.
   D. He said to the porter to take his luggage to Room 145.
4. He said to me, "Ring me up tomorrow."
   A. He told me to ring him up the following day.
   B. He told me ring him up the following day.
   C. He said me to ring him up the following day.
   D. He told me to ring me up the following day.
5. "Bring me a cup of black coffee," she said to the waiter.
   A. She told the waiter to bring me a cup of black coffee.
   B. She told the waiter to bring her a cup of black coffee.
   C. She told the waiter bring her a cup of black coffee.
   D. She told the waiter bring me a cup of black coffee.
6. The teacher said to me, "Hand this note to your parents, please."
   A. The teacher asked me to hand that note to my parents.
   B. The teacher asked me hand that note to my parents.
   C. The teacher asked me to hand that note to his parents.
   D. The teacher asked me hand that note to his parents.
7. "Please help me with this work, Henry," said Robert.
   A. Robert asked Henry help him with that work.
   B. Robert asked Henry to help me with that work.
   C. Robert asked to help Henry with that work.
   D. Robert asked Henry to help him with that work.
8. "Please bring me some fish soup," he said to the waitress.
   A. He asked the waitress to bring him some fish soup.
   B. He asked the waitress bring him some fish soup.
   C. He asked the waitress to bring her some fish soup.
   D. He asked the waitress bring her some fish soup.
9. "Don't worry over such a small thing," she said to me.
   A. She told me not worry over such a small thing.
   B. She told me to not worry over such a small thing.
   C. She told me not to worry over such a small thing.
   D. She told not to worry over such a small thing.
10. "Please don't mention it to anybody," Mary said to her friend.
   A. Mary asked her friend not to mention it to anybody.
   B. Mary asked her friend not mention it to anybody.
   C. Mary asked her friend to not mention it to anybody.
   D. Mary asked her friend did not mention it to anybody.

Exercise 5: Choose the best answer that best rewrite the original one.

1. "Don't forget to clean your teeth," said Granny to Helen.
   A. Granny told Helen not to forget to clean her teeth.
   B. Granny told Helen to not forget to clean her teeth.
   C. Granny said to Helen not to forget to clean her teeth.
   D. Granny told Helen not forget to clean her teeth.
2. "Don't sit up late," said the doctor to Mary.
   A. The doctor told Mary not sit up late.
   B. The doctor told Mary not to sit up late.
   C. The doctor said to Mary not to sit up late.
   D. The doctor told Mary to not sit up late.
3. The doctor said to Pete, "Don't go for a walk today."
   A. The doctor told Pete not to go for a walk today.
   B. The doctor told Pete not go for a walk today.
   C. The doctor said to Pete not to go for a walk that day.
   D. The doctor told Pete not to go for a walk that day.
4. "Don't eat too much ice-cream," said Nick's mother to him.
   A. Nick's mother said him not to eat too much ice-cream.
   B. Nick's mother told him not to eat too much ice-cream.
   C. Nick's mother told him not eat too much ice-cream.
   D. Nick's mother told him to eat not much ice-cream.
5. "Explain to me how to solve this problem," said my friend to me.
   A. My friend told me to explain to him how to solve that problem.
   B. My friend told me to explain to me how to solve that problem.
   C. My friend told me explain to him how to solve that problem.
   D. My friend told me to explain to him how to solve this problem.
6. The woman doctor said to Peter, "Open your mouth and show me your tongue."
   A. The woman doctor told Peter open his mouth and show her his tongue.
   B. The woman doctor said Peter to open his mouth and show her his tongue.
   C. The woman doctor told Peter to open his mouth and show her his tongue.
   D. The woman doctor told Peter to open her mouth and show him his tongue.
7. "Don't be afraid of my dog," said the man to Kate.
   A. The man said to Kate not to be afraid of his dog.
   B. The man told Kate not be afraid of his dog.
   C. The man told Kate not to be afraid of her dog.
   D. The man told Kate not to be afraid of his dog.
8. "Take this book and read it," said the librarian to the boy.
   A. The librarian told the boy to take that book and read it.
   B. The librarian told the boy to take this book and read that.
   C. The librarian said to the boy to take that book and read it.
   D. The librarian told the boy take that book and read it.
9. He said to us, "Come here tomorrow,"
   A. He told us go there the next day.
   B. He told us to go here the next day.
   C. He told us to go there the next day.
   D. He said to us to go there the next day.
10. I said to Mike, "Send me a telegram as soon as you arrive."
    A. I told Mike to send me a telegram as soon as he arrived.
    B. I told Mike to send me a telegram as soon as he arrives.
    C. I told Mike to send me a telegram as soon as I arrived.
    D. I told Mike to send me a telegram as soon as I arrive.

VI. CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN

1. Câu điều kiện loại 1

Cấu trúc:

If clause	Main clause
Simple Present **S + Verb/Verb-s/es**	Simple Future **S + will/shall + bare infinitive**

Cách dùng:

Câu điều kiện loại 1 dùng để diễn tả một sự kiện có thể xảy ra hoặc có thể thực hiện được ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

Ví dụ: *If the rain stops, I will go for a walk.*

✪ Chú ý:

Ta có thể dùng thì hiện tại đơn (*Simple Present*) ở mệnh đề chính để diễn tả một điều luôn luôn đúng hoặc một sự thật hiển nhiên.

Ví dụ: *If you heat water to 100^0C, it boils.*

(Nếu bạn đun nước đến 100^0C thì nó sôi.)

Thay vì dùng thì tương lai đơn (*Simple Future*) ở mệnh đề chính, ta có thể dùng ***can/may + bare infinitive*** hoặc có thể dùng mệnh lệnh cách (*imperative form*).

Ví dụ: *If you try hard, you can pass the exam.*

If you see Peter, give him this book.

2. Câu điều kiện loại 2

Cấu trúc:

If clause	Main clause
Past Subjunctive/ Simple Past **S + past form of the verb**	Present Conditional **S + would/could + bare infinitive**

Thì quá khứ giả định (*Past subjunctive*) giống như thì quá khứ đơn, riêng động từ "be" được chia là "were" cho tất cả các ngôi.

Cách dùng:

Câu điều kiện loại 2 dùng để diễn tả một sự kiện không thể xảy ra hoặc không thể thực hiện được ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

Ví dụ: *If Nam were/was here, he would know the answer. (But he isn't here now.)*

Nếu Nam có mặt ở đây thì cậu ấy sẽ biết câu trả lời. (Nhưng thật ra cậu ấy không có mặt ở đây.)

If he knew my phone number, he would call me. (But he doesn't have my phone number.)

Nếu anh ấy có số điện thoại của tôi thì anh ấy đã gọi tôi rồi. (Nhưng thật ra anh ấy không có số điện thoại của tôi.)

3. Câu điều kiện loại 3

Cấu trúc:

If clause	Main clause
Past Perfect **S + had + past participle (PP)**	Perfect Conditional **S + would/could have + PP**

Cách dùng:

Câu điều kiện loại 3 dùng để diễn tả một sự kiện không thể xảy ra hoặc không thể thực hiện được ở quá khứ.

Ví dụ: *If I had invited her to my party, it would have been more fun. (But I didn't.).*

Nếu tôi mời cô ấy đến buổi tiệc thì có lẽ đã vui hơn. (Nhưng tôi đã không mời cô ấy.)

4. Mixed conditionals

Cách dùng:

Câu điều kiện này diễn tả điều kiện giả định ở quá khứ và kết quả không thực hiện được ở hiện tại.

Cấu trúc:

If clause	Main clause
Past Perfect **S + had + past participle (PP)**	Present Conditional **S + would/could + bare infinitive**

Ví dụ: *If I had gone to bed early last night, I wouldn't feel sleepy now.*

(Nếu tối qua tôi đi ngủ sớm thì bây giờ tôi không buồn ngủ.)

✪ Chú ý:

Đảo ngữ trong câu điều kiện: khi được dùng một cách trang trọng, câu điều kiện sẽ có cấu trúc đảo ngữ. Khi đó, ta bỏ *if* và đảo trợ động từ trong mệnh đề *if* ra trước chủ ngữ, mệnh đề chính không thay đổi.

Ví dụ: *If he appears, please tell him to wait for me.*

→ ***Should he appear****, please tell him to wait for me.*

If I were in your position, I wouldn't do that.

→ ***Were I*** *in your position, I wouldn't do that.*

If I had more time, my report would be better.

→ ***Were I to have*** *more time, my report would be better.*

If I had invited her to my party, it would have been more fun.

→ ***Had I invited*** *her to my party, it would have been more fun.*

If he hadn't missed the train, he would be here now.

→ ***Had he not missed*** *the train, he would be here now.*

5. Các từ khác có thể thay cho *if*

- ***unless = if…not*** (trừ phi, trừ khi)

Ví dụ: *If he doesn't come, I'll bring this package to him.*

→ *Unless he comes, I'll bring this package to him.*

- ***in case*** (phòng khi điều gì có thể xảy ra)

Trong mệnh đề theo sau *in case*, ta thường dùng thì Hiện tại đơn hoặc Quá khứ đơn, không dùng *will* hoặc *would*.

Ví dụ: *I always take an umbrella in case it rains.*

(= I always take an umbrella because it may rain.)

- ***with, without,*** và ***but for***.

with/without (nếu có/nếu không), ***but for*** (nếu không có) được dùng như một dạng rút gọn của mệnh đề ***if*** (*reduced form of the* ***if*** *clause*).

with/without/but for **+ a noun/a noun phrase**

Ví dụ: *If you help me, I can finish this assignment.*

→ ***With your help****, I can finish this assignment.*

If you hadn't helped me, I couldn't have finished this assignment.

→ ***Without your help****, I couldn't have finished this assignment.*

(Nếu không có sự giúp đỡ của anh, tôi không thể hoàn thành công việc này – nhưng thực tế anh đã giúp tôi.)

If it hadn't rained, we would have had a nice holiday.

→ ***But for the rain****, we would have had a nice holiday.*

(Nếu trời không mưa thì chúng tôi đã có một kì nghỉ vui vẻ.)

Như vậy, trong trường hợp này, ***without*** cũng tương đương với cấu trúc ***"If it were not for…"*** (loại 2) hoặc ***"If it hadn't been for…"*** (loại 3).

Ví dụ: Without your help*, I couldn't finish this assignment.*

= ***If it were not for your help****, I couldn't finish this assignment.*

But for/Without your map*, we would have lost our way.*

= ***If it had not been for your map****, we would have lost our way.*

Providing (that)/ provided (that) (= miễn là): được dùng để thay thế cho ***if*** khi người nói có ý nhấn mạnh sự hạn chế.

Ví dụ: You can borrow my bike provided/ providing (that) you bring it back tomorrow morning.

As long as/ so long as (= miễn là): có cách dùng tương tự như providing (that)/ provided (that).

Ví dụ: *You can stay with us as/ so long as you share the expenses.*

Otherwise (= nếu không thì) được dùng để thay thế cho *if* và liên quan đến một ý tưởng đã nói trong câu trước.

Ví dụ: *You must read the instructions; otherwise, you don't know how to use it.*

Bài tập CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Do you think there would be less conflict in the world if all people ____ the same language?
   [✓ A.] spoke B. speak C. had spoken D. will speak
2. If you can give me one good reason for your acting like this, ____ this incident again.
   [✓ A.] I will never mention B. I never mention
   C. will I never mention D. I don't mention
3. Unless you _______ all of my questions, I can't do anything to help you.
   A. answered [✓ B.] answer C. would answer D. are answering
4. Had you told me that this was going to happen, I _____ it.
   A. would never have believed B. don't believe
   C. hadn't believed D. can't believe
5. If John ______ to go on the trip, would you have gone?
   A. doesn't agree B. didn't agree C. hadn't agreed D. wouldn't agree
6. I didn't know you were asleep. Otherwise, I _____ so much noise when I came in.
   A. didn't make B. wouldn't have made
   C. won't make D. don't make
7. If I _____ the same problem you had as a child, I might not have succeeded in life as well as you have.
   A. have B. would have C. had had D. should have
8. I _______ you sooner had someone told me you were in hospital.
   A. would have visited B. visited
   C. had visited D. visit
9. ______ then what I know today, I would have saved myself a lot of time and trouble over the years.
   A. Had I known B. Did I know C. If I know D. If I would know
10. The lecturer last night didn't know what he was talking about, but if professor Mason _____, I would have listened carefully.
   A. had been lecturing B. was lecturing
   C. would lecture D. lectured

Exercise 2: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I wouldn't go there at night if I _____ you.
   A. am B. was C. were D. B and C are correct
2. If I ______ get a pole, I'll go fishing.
   A. can B. could C. may D. might
3. If they had enough time, they ______ head south.
   A. will B. can C. must D. might
4. If you had the chance, _______ you go fishing?
   A. did B. may C. would D. do
5. If you _____ a choice, which country would you visit?
   A. have B. had C. have had D. will have
6. Trees won't grow _______ there is enough water.
   A. if B. when C. unless D. as
7. ______ she agreed, you would have done it.
   A. If B. Had C. Should D. Would
8. If you ______ to be chosen for the job, you'll have to be experienced in the field.
   A. want B. wanted C. had wanted D. wants
9. If the doctor had arrived sooner, the boy ______.
   A. might be saved B. have been saved
   C. was saved D. might have been saved
10. If you just approach the job with the right attitude, things _____ well.
   A. would have turned out B. will turn out
   C. would turn out D. turns out

Exercise 3: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. "Can I borrow your car for this evening?" "Sure if Jane _____ it back in time, you're welcome to borrow it."
   A. brought B. brings C. will bring D. would bring
2. I would go swimming if the weather ______ better.
   A. is B. will be C. would be D. were
3. I _____ Tom with me if I had known you didn't get along with him.
   A. hadn't brought B. didn't bring
   C. wouldn't have brought D. won't bring
4. I _____ you if I need your help.
   A. would call B. will call C. called D. call
5. If energy _____ inexpensive and unlimited, many things in the world would be different.
   A. is B. were C. will be D. would be
6. A huge tree crashed through the roof and broke my bed. _____ in the room, I would have been killed.
   A. Should I be B. Had I been C. Would I be D. Would I have been
7. A nation's balance of trade is considered unfavourable if it ______ more money on imports than it gains from exports.
   A. will spend B. would spend C. can spend D. spends

8. ______ any problem with the product, contact our local dealer.
A. Do you have B. Should you haveC. Had you D. You have

9. Many people who live near nuclear plants are concerned. _____ go wrong, the impact on the surrounding area could be disastrous.
A. Something would B. Something will
C. Should something D. Does something

10. Had I known the carpenter was going to take three days to show up, I _______ the materials and done the work myself. It would be finished by now.
A. will get B. would have got C. might get D. will have got

Exercise 4: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. The death rate would decrease if hygienic conditions _____ improved.
A. were B. was C. is D. A and B are correct

2. The education in Japan _____ if the basic principles of education had not been taken into consideration.
A. would go down B. would have gone down
C. went down D. had gone down

3. If there _______, the rice fields could have been more productive.
A. had been enough water B. were enough water
C. would be enough water D. are enough water

4. The patient could not recover unless he _______ an operation.
A. had undergone B. would undergo
C. underwent D. was undergoing

5. If she ________ him, she would be very happy.
A. would meet B. will meet C. is meeting D. should meet

6. If he _______ a thorough knowledge of English, he could have applied for this post.
A. had had B. had C. has D. has had

7. If I had enough money, I _______ abroad to improve my English.
A. will go B. would go
C. should go D. should have to go

8. The bench would collapse if they ______ on it.
A. stood B. stand C. standing D. stands

9. If it ________ convenient, let's go out for a drink tonight.
A. be B. is C. was D. were

10. If you ______ time, please write to me.
A. have B. had C. have had D. has

Exercise 5: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. If the car ________ larger, we would have bought it.
A. had been B. has been C. have been D. been

2. If I were to leave my country, I _________ disappointed.
A. probably be B. would have been C. will be D. would be

3. If he hadn't wasted too much time, he _______ in his examination.
A. would fail B. wouldn't fail C. wouldn't have failed D. won't fail

4. If I had taken that English course, I _______ much progress.
A. had made B. would have made C. made D. would make

5. If I were in your place, I _______ a trip to England.
A. will make B. had made C. would make D. made

6. If you inherited a million pounds, what _________ with the money?
A. do you do B. will you do
C. would you do D. are you going to do

7. If you ______ as I told you, you ______ in such predicament now.
A. did – wouldn't be B. had done – had not been
C. do – would not be D. had done – would not be

8. Come and work for my company if you ______ better to do.
A. have nothing B. will have nothing
C. had something D. had nothing

9. If you had done as I told you, I think you ________.
A. would succeed B. would have succeeded
C. could succeed D. had succeeded

10. If he had got half a mark more, he ______ in the exam.
A. wouldn't fail B. wouldn't have failed
C. won't fail D. won't be failing

VII. MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ

A. Đại từ quan hệ và trạng từ quan hệ

1. Đại từ quan hệ (Relative pronouns).

Các đại từ quan hệ được dùng để thay thế các danh từ chỉ người hoặc chỉ vật, sự vật, và có thể đóng vai trò là chủ ngữ, tân ngữ hoặc mang nghĩa sở hữu trong mệnh đề quan hệ.

	Chỉ người	**Chỉ vật**
Chủ ngữ	**who/that** *He's the man who/that talked to me last night.*	**which/that** *I bought a book which/that is on music.*
Tân ngữ	**who/whom/that** *The man who/whom/that I saw last night was a doctor.*	**which/that** *This is the CD which/that I bought yesterday.*
Sở hữu	**whose** *She's the girl whose car is over there.*	**whose/of which** *That's the car whose door/the door of which is broken.*

✪ **Chú ý**:

a) Đại từ quan hệ khi đóng vai trò tân ngữ trong mệnh đề quan hệ có thể được bỏ đi.

Ví dụ: *The man who/whom/that I saw last night was a doctor.*

→ *The man I saw last night was a doctor.*

b) Các đại từ quan hệ **whom, which** (tân ngữ), và **whose** có thể theo sau một giới từ. Cách dùng này mang tính trang trọng và lịch sự.

Ví dụ: *The man whom you talked to this morning was a friend of mine.*

→ *The man* ***to whom*** *you talked this morning was a friend of mine.*

Tom is the boy whose house we lived in.

→ *Tom is the boy* ***in*** *whose house we lived.*

c) Các từ chỉ số lượng như: ***all of*** (tất cả), ***some of*** (một số), ***many of*** (nhiều), ***most of*** (hầu hết), ***none of*** (không ai/không vật gì), ***half of*** (phân nửa), ***each of*** (mỗi một)… và các tính từ so sánh hơn và so sánh nhất có thể được đặt trước các đại từ quan hệ ***whom*** và ***which***.

Ví dụ: *I bought a lot of books. All of them are on wildlife.*

→ *I bought a lot of books, all of which are on wildlife.*

Some of my friends are very rich. The richest of them owns two supermarkets.

→ *Some of my friends are very rich,* ***the richest of whom*** *owns two supermarkets.*

d) Đại từ quan hệ ***that*** được sử dụng tương đương với ***who, whom*** hoặc ***which***, và thường được sử dụng nhiều hơn sau cấu trúc so sánh nhất, hoặc sau các đại từ bất định: ***all, none, few, something, nothing, anything, someone, anyone, everyone, no one***…, hoặc tiền ngữ hỗn hợp vừa chỉ người vừa chỉ vật (*mixed antecedent*).

Ví dụ: *New Zealand is the most peaceful country* ***that*** *I've ever visited.*

Anyone ***that*** *knows about the fact must be proud.*

Look at the farmers and cattle ***that*** *are going to the field.*

2. Trạng từ quan hệ (Relative adverbs).

Các trạng từ quan hệ được dùng để chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn hoặc lí do.

	Trạng từ quan hệ	Ví dụ
Thời gian	***when*** = ***on/at/…which***	*I'll never forget the day* ***when I first met her****.*
Nơi chốn	***where*** = ***at/in/on…which***	*The building* ***where*** *he works is the tallest one in town.*
Lí do	***why = for which***	*That's the reason* ***why*** *he left her.*

✪ **Chú ý**: Các trạng từ quan hệ có thể được thay thế bằng: ***preposition*** + ***which***.

Ví dụ: *I'll never forget the day* ***on which (= when)*** *I first met her.*

The building ***in which (= where)*** *he works is the tallest one in town.*

B. Các loại mệnh đề quan hệ

1. Mệnh đề quan hệ xác định (Defining relative clauses).

Ví dụ: *The man who is standing at the door is my teacher.*

Mệnh đề "who is standing at the door" là mệnh đề quan hệ xác định, có chức năng xác định danh từ tiền ngữ "the man". Nếu bỏ mệnh đề này, người đọc không biết đề cập đến ai.

2. Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định (Non-defining relative clauses).

Ví dụ: *Mr. Richards, who is standing at the door, is my teacher.*

Mệnh đề "who is standing at the door" là mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định vì người đọc đã biết *Mr. Richards* là ai, nó chỉ thêm thông tin cho danh từ tiền ngữ.

✪ **Chú ý**:

- Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định luôn ngăn cách với mệnh đề chính bằng **dấu phẩy**.
- KHÔNG dùng **that** trong mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định.

Ví dụ: *Tom, whom (~~that~~) I introduced you to, is a doctor.*

Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định được dùng trong các trường hợp sau.

a) Dùng với **danh từ riêng** (proper nouns).

Ví dụ: *We have visited Sue, who had an accident two days ago.*

b) Dùng với danh từ chỉ những **đối tượng duy nhất** như *the sun, the earth, the moon, my father/mother*….

Ví dụ: *My father, who is 60 years old, has just retired.*

c) Dùng với danh từ đã được xác định, thường dùng với các từ chỉ định như ***this, that, these, those***….

Ví dụ: *This house, which is very expensive, was bought by a very rich man.*

d) Khi đại từ quan hệ đi kèm với các từ chỉ số lượng như: ***all of, some of, many of, most of, none of, half of, each of***…

Ví dụ: *I bought a lot of books,* ***all of which*** *are about wildlife.*

3. Mệnh đề quan hệ bổ nghĩa cả câu (Sentence relative clauses).

Ví dụ:

Tom passed the driving test. This surprised everyone.

→ *Tom passed the driving test,* ***which*** *surprised everyone.*

(Tom thi đậu kì thi lấy bằng lái xe và điều này làm mọi người ngạc nhiên.)

Paul is always throwing his dirty clothes on the floor. That makes his mother annoyed.

→ *Paul is always throwing his dirty clothes on the floor,* ***which*** *makes his mother annoyed.*

(Paul luôn vứt quần áo bẩn xuống sàn nhà và điều này làm bà mẹ cậu ta bực mình.)

Mệnh đề quan hệ loại này không bổ nghĩa cho danh từ tiền ngữ mà bổ sung thông tin cho toàn bộ mệnh đề chính hoặc nêu ý kiến, thái độ của người nói.

✪ **Chú ý**:

– Mệnh đề quan hệ bổ nghĩa cả câu phải được đặt sau mệnh đề chính, và ngăn cách với mệnh đề chính bằng dấu phẩy.

– Chỉ được dùng đại từ quan hệ ***which***, không dùng đại từ quan hệ ***that***.

C. Sự lược bỏ đại từ quan hệ (Omission of relative pronouns)

Trong mệnh đề quan hệ xác định, khi đại từ quan hệ làm tân ngữ (*object*) thì đại từ quan hệ đó có thể được lược bỏ, nhất là trong tiếng Anh đàm thoại (*spoken English*) hoặc trong văn phong không trang trọng (*informal style*).

Ví dụ: *The man who/whom I wanted to see was away on holiday.*

→ The man I wanted to see was away on holiday.

The dress which/that Mary bought doesn't fit her well.

→ The dress Mary bought doesn't fit her well.

Have you found the keys which/that you lost?

→ Have you found the keys you lost?

✪ Chú ý:

- Ta không thể lược bỏ đại từ quan hệ khi nó làm chủ từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ.

  Ví dụ: *The man who spoke to Sue is her boss.*

- Trong trường hợp đại từ quan hệ làm tân ngữ cho giới từ thì ta phải đem giới từ ra sau động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ rồi mới bỏ đại từ quan hệ được.

  Ví dụ: *The teacher to whom you talked is my uncle.*

  → The teacher you talked to is my uncle.

D. Mệnh đề quan hệ thay thế bằng phân từ (*Relative clauses replaced by participles*)

1. Mệnh đề quan hệ được thay thế bằng hiện tại phân từ (*Relative clauses replaced by present participles*)

Hình thức: **Verb-ing**

Ta dùng cụm hiện tại phân từ để thay thế mệnh đề quan hệ có động từ chính ở dạng chủ động.

Ví dụ: *The woman who spoke to Mai is my sister.*

→ The woman speaking to Mai is my sister.

2. Mệnh đề quan hệ được thay thế bằng quá khứ phân từ (*Relative clauses replaced by past participles*)

Hình thức: **past participle** (Verb-ed/V_3)

Ta dùng cụm quá khứ phân từ để thay thế mệnh đề quan hệ có động từ chính ở dạng bị động.

Ví dụ: *The students who were punished by the teacher are lazy.*

→ The students punished by the teacher are lazy.

Bài tập MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ

Exercise 1: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. The Taj Mahal, ______ is recognized one of the wonders of the world, was built by an Indian King in memory of his beloved wife.
A. which B. that C. where D. what

2. She is going to sell the business, ______ is a great shame.
A. that B. which C. it is D. what

3. I have two sisters, ______ are very good at computer science.
A. who B. whom C. both of them D. both of whom

4. He told her not to eat it, ______ that there was a risk of food poisoning.
A. explaining B. explained C. to explain D. he explained

5. I enjoyed talking to the people ______ I had dinner last night.
A. with whom B. whom with C. with who D. who with

6. The artist, ______ painting you bought, is a classmate of mine.
A. whom B. whose C. from whose D. from whom

7. Those ______ to join our club must fill in this form first.
A. when tried B. if wanting C. who want D. if they want

8. Mrs. Hoa, ______ son is studying at the University of Law, is a farmer.
A. who B. whose C. whom D. her

9. Louis Pasteur, ______ discovered a cure for rabies, was a French scientist.
A. he B. that C. who D. whom

10. Some of the boys ______ didn't come.
A. whom I invited them B. I invited them
C. I invited D. when I invited

Exercise 2: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. The preservation of ancient sites and historical buildings is a job ______ requires a person ready to fight a long battle.
A. whose B. which C. of which D. what

2. The restaurant ______ Bob recommended was too expensive.
A. which it B. that C. where D. at which

3. Mexico City, ______ is the capital of Mexico, is a cosmopolitan city.
A. which B. that C. where D. what

4. We went to different places ______ you find people ______ language was hard to understand.
A. where – which B. where – whose
C. that – whose D. which – whose

5. We came within sight of Everest, ______ has attracted so many climbers.
A. the summit of which B. which the summit
C. whose summit of D. of which the summit

www.daykemquynhon.com

6. The manager called in my new colleagues, ______ I had already met.
A. one of who
B. one or two of whom
C. both of them
D. all of them

7. The record ______, ______ has been produced by a completely new method, will be released next week.
A. which I told you about – Ø
B. that I told you – which
C. I told you about – which
D. about which I told you – Ø

8. A skilled workforce is essential, _____ why our training course program is so important.
A. that is
B. which
C. which is
D. this is

9. They are the people ________ houses were destroyed by the flood.
A. their
B. whose
C. what
D. which

10. I read about the child ________ life was saved by her pet dog.
A. whom
B. who
C. her
D. whose

Exercise 3: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. My computer, _________ mouse doesn't work, cannot be used now.
A. whose
B. which
C. while
D. because

2. Some of the guests ________ I invited didn't come.
A. whose
B. whom
C. them
D. which

3. The police have to try to catch the men _______ drive dangerously.
A. who
B. whom
C. they
D. which

4. Jane did not fill her car up with petrol before she left, ____ was careless of her.
A. which
B. it
C. that
D. what

5. They always give the available seats to ______ comes first.
A. whoever
B. whom
C. which
D. whomever

6. A home computer _______ an opportunity for convenient and efficient work at home.
A. provides
B. is provided
C. which provides
D. providing

7. Near the White House is another famous landmark ________ the Washington Monument.
A. is which
B. which call
C. called
D. it is called

8. There was a small room into ________ we all crowded.
A. which
B. where
C. that
D. it

9. I received two job offers, _______ I accepted.
A. which neither
B. of which neither
C. neither of which
D. neither of that

10. I have three brothers, ________ are professional athletes.
A. two of whom
B. two of them
C. two of who
D. two of that

VIII. TỪ NỐI MỆNH ĐỀ, TỪ NỐI CÂU

Có ba loại từ nối chính:

– Từ nối phụ thuộc (subordinators) như *while*, *because*… được dùng trong câu phức (complex sentences);

– Từ nối mệnh đề (coordinators) như *and*, *but*, *or*, *so*…;

– Từ nối câu (connectors) như *however*, *therefore*, *besides*…được dùng để nối ý hai câu với nhau.

1. Từ nối phụ thuộc

Từ nối phụ thuộc trong mệnh đề quan hệ:

- Đại từ quan hệ (relative pronouns):
  who: chỉ người (làm chủ ngữ)
  whom: chỉ người (làm tân ngữ)
  whose + danh từ: chỉ sở hữu của người và vật
  that: chỉ người, vật (dùng trong mệnh đề quan hệ giới hạn)
  which: chỉ vật
- Trạng từ quan hệ:
  when (= on/at… which): chỉ thời gian
  where (= at/ in… which): chỉ nơi chốn
  why (= for which):chỉ lí do

Từ nối phụ thuộc trong câu điều kiện:

if: nếu
even if: thậm chí
only if: chỉ khi
unless (= if…not): trừ khi, trừ phi
as long as; so long as: miễn là
provided/ providing (that): miễn là
on condition (that): với điều kiện là
suppose/ supposing (that):giả sử như
imagine (if): tưởng tượng (nếu như)

Từ nối phụ thuộc trong mệnh đề danh ngữ:

that: rằng
who: người nào/ ai
whoever: bất cứ người nào
what: những gì
whatever: bất cứ cái gì
where: ở đâu/ nơi đâu
wherever: bất cứ nơi đâu
when: khi nào
whenever: bất cứ khi nào
how much/ many/ often..: bao nhiêu/ thường xuyên thế nào…
whether (or not)/ if: liệu… (có không)

Từ nối phụ thuộc trong mệnh đề trang ngữ:

- Thời gian

when: khi
while: trong khi
after: sau khi
until/ till: mãi đến khi

as soon as: ngay sau khi
before: trước khi
since: kể từ khi
as: khi, trong khi

- Nơi chốn
  where: nơi
  wherever: bất cứ nơi nào
  everywhere: tất cả mọi nơi
- Cách thức
  as: giống như
- Lí do
  because/ as/ since/ for: bởi vì
- Kết quả
  so + tính từ/ trạng từ + *that*: đến nỗi mà
  such + a(n) + ngữ danh từ + *that*: đến nỗi mà
- Mục đích
  so that/ in order that: vì thế
- Đối lập/ sự nhượng bộ
  although/ even though/ though: mặc dù

2. Từ nối mệnh đề, từ nối câu

Nghĩa	Từ nối mệnh đề	Từ nối câu
cung cấp thêm thông tin	*and* (và)	*furthermore* *besides* *in addition* *moreover* *also* (hơn nữa, thêm vào)
cho ý kiến trái ngược	*but, yet* (nhưng)	*however* *nevertheless* *in contrast* *on the contrary* *on the other hand* (tuy nhiên, dù sao, ngược lại)
lí do, sự lựa chọn giữa hai khả năng	*for* (vì, do đó) *or (else)* (nếu không)	*otherwise* (nếu không, hoặc là)
kết quả	*so* (vì vậy)	*consequence* *therefore* *thus* *accordingly* *as a result* (do đó, kết quả là)
sự lựa chọn phủ định	*nor* (cũng không)	

Bài tập TỪ NỐI MỆNH ĐỀ, TỪ NỐI CÂU

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. ______ we got lost driving into the city, we were late for the meeting.
A. Since B. Because of C. Consequently D. For
2. During extremely hot weather, elephants require both mud and water to keep their skin cool _____ they have no sweat glands.
A. and B. so C. because of D. due to the fact that
3. I couldn't repair my bike, _____ I didn't have the right tools.
A. so B. for C. because of D. therefore
4. Two of the factories in our small town have closed. ______, unemployment is high.
A. Consequently B. Because C. So that D. Furthermore
5. ______ I had nothing for lunch but an apple, I ate dinner early.
A. For B. Since C. Due to D. Therefore
6. Mr. Watson retired from his job early ______ his ill health.
A. because B. due to C. since D. for
7. John's favourite show was on. He reached to turned on the TV _____ he could watch it.
A. because of B. therefore C. so that D. for
8. She bought the book _____ she had heard it was good.
A. due to B. due to the fact that C. so D. because of
9. ______ I get angry and upset, I try to take ten deep breaths.
A. Until B. Whenever C. Therefore D. For
10. ______ I heard the telephone ring, I didn't answer it.
A. Because B. Only if C. Even though D. Provided that

Exercise 2: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. ______ the post office was closed, I couldn't mail my package.
A. Therefore B. Because C. However D. Since
2. _______ the secret of how to make silk remained inside Asia, Europeans were forced to pay incredibly high sums of money for this mysterious material to be brought overland to Europe.
A. Although B. Only if C. Due to D. As long as
3. My sister hates animals. She likes _____ cats ____ dogs.
A. both – and B. neither – nor
C. either – or D. not only – but also
4. ______ the parents ______ the son have gone on holiday.
A. Both – and B. Neither – nor
C. Either – or D. Not only – but also
5. ______ I was dead tired, I walked all the way home.
A. Despite B. Although C. In spite of D. Even

6. Mr. Wilson hopes to avoid surgery. He will not agree to the operation ______ he is convinced that it is absolutely necessary.
A. in the event that B. only if C. if D. unless
7. Some English words have the same pronunciation _____ they are spelled differently, for example, *dear* and *deer*.
A. unless B. even though C. since D. only if
8. Olives are a principal source of cooking oil, but by no means the only source. _______ olives, cooking oil can be extracted from coconuts, corn, and sunflower seeds.
A. Because of B. In spite of C. In case of D. In addition to
9. I couldn't use the pay phone, ______ I didn't have any coins with me.
A. yet B. despite C. for D. even though
10. I have to eat breakfast in the morning. ______, I get hungry before my lunch break.
A. Consequently B. Furthermore C. Otherwise D. However

Exercise 3: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I need to find an apartment before I can move. ______ I can find one in the next week or so, I will move to London the first of next month.
A. Even if B. Due to C. Only if D. Provided that
2. Tom is trying to reduce the amount of fat he eats. Red meat is high in fat. Tom eats a lot of fish but avoids red meat ______ its high fat content.
A. in the event of B. besides C. in spite of D. because of
3. _____ I want to take a train trip across western Canada, but my travelling companion wants to fly to Mexico City for our vacation.
A. Although B. Even if C. ∅ D. Nevertheless
4. Ms Moore, the school counselor, had years of experience dealing with student problems. _____, she is sometimes confronted by a problem that she cannot handle by herself.
A. Therefore B. Nevertheless
C. Otherwise D. On the other hand
5. Right now all the seats on that flight are taken, sir. ______ there is a cancellation, I will call you.
A. In the event that B. Nevertheless
C. But D. Even if
6. A newborn baby can neither walk nor crawl. A newborn antelope, _____, can run within minutes of birth.
A. however B. nevertheless C. otherwise D. even though
7. You must obey the speed limits on public roads. They are designed to keep you safe. You shouldn't exceed the speed limit _____ you are an experienced race car driver.
A. only if B. even if C. if D. provided that

8. My nose got sunburnt _____ I wore a hat with a wide brim to shade my face.
A. if B. since C. because D. even though
9. Do you like jazz? You should go to the jazz festival ______ you like that kind of music.
A. if B. unless C. although D. while
10. Peter works hard at everything he does. His brother, _____, seldom puts out much effort.
A. on the other hand B. otherwise
C. furthermore D. consequently

Exercise 4: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. The festival has many attractions. It will include contemporary orchestral music and an opera. _______, there will be poetry readings and theatrical presentations.
A. Otherwise B. Furthermore
C. Nevertheless D. On the other hand
2. The bread was old and stale, ______ Mary ate it anyway.
A. and B. so C. besides D. but
3. Minerals ______ nickel, copper, and zinc can be found in sea water.
A. as samples B. such as C. in an example D. as
4. _____ the salary meets my expectations, I will accept the job offer.
A. Due to B. Even if C. Provided that D. Unless
5. ______ excellent art museums, Moscow has a world-famous ballet company.
A. Because of B. In spite of C. In case of D. In addition to
6. It is still a good idea to know how to type. _____ the many technological advances in typewriters and word processors, a skilled operator remains indispensable.
A. Because of B. In spite of C. In case of D. In addition to
7. Even though a duck may live on water, it stays dry ______ the oil on its feathers. The oil prevents the water from soaking through the feathers and reaching its skin.
A. due to B. besides C. in spite of D. in the event of
8. Chris cannot express himself clearly and correctly in writing. He will never advance in his job _____ he improves his language skills.
A. otherwise B. if C. only if D. unless
9. _____ there was no electricity, I was able to read because I had a candle.
A. Unless B. Even though C. Even D. Only if
10. A fire must have a readily available supply of oxygen. _____, it will stop burning.
A. Consequently B. Furthermore C. Otherwise D. However

Exercise 5: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Jane is a very good student of languages. Her brother Michael, _______, has never been able to master another language.
   A. therefore B. even though C. whereas D. on the other hand
2. The ancient Aztec of Mexico had no technology for making tools from metal. _______, they had sharp knives and spears made from a stone called obsidian.
   A. Whereas B. Although C. Nevertheless D. Despite
3. Kimberly missed the meeting without a good reason ______ she had been told that it was critical that she be there.
   A. despite B. despite the fact that
   C. even D. however
4. I usually enjoy attending productions in small community theaters. The play we attended last night, _______, was so bad that I wanted to leave after the first act.
   A. therefore B. however C. whereas D. even though
5. Some snakes are poisonous, _______ others are harmless.
   A. but B. so C. for D. despite
6. Most 15th century Europeans believed that the world was flat and that a ship could conceivably sail off the end of the earth. _______, many sailors of the time refused to venture forth with explorers into unknown waters.
   A. Due to the fact that B. Nevertheless
   C. Therefore D. Whereas
7. I studied English for seven years in high school. ______, I had trouble talking with people when I was travelling to England.
   A. Therefore B. On the other hand
   C. Moreover D. Nevertheless
8. Ancient Egyptians mummified their dead through the use of chemicals, _______ ancient Peruvians mummified their dead through natural processes by putting dead bodies in extremely dry desert caves.
   A. whereas B. because
   C. even though D. whether or not
9. Some people really enjoy swimming, _____ others are afraid of water.
   A. while B. or C. despite D. in spite of
10. I was cold and wet. _______, Bob put on his swimming suit and went to the beach.
    A. Therefore B. Despite C. Although D. Nevertheless

Exercise 6: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Some people are tall, whereas others are _________.
   A. intelligent B. thin C. short D. large
2. A box is square, whereas __________.
   A. a rectangle has four sides
   B. my village has a town square in the center
   C. we use envelopes for letters
   D. a circle is round
3. While some parts of the world get an abundance of rain, others _______.
   A. are warm and humid B. are cold and wet
   C. get little or none D. get a lot
4. In some nations coffee is the favourite beverage while _______.
   A. I like tea B. tea has caffeine
   C. in others it is tea D. tea has caffeine, too
5. Some people like cream and sugar in their coffee, while _______.
   A. others drink hot coffee B. others like it black
   C. milk is good in coffee, too D. sugar can cause cavities
6. Jack is an interesting storyteller and conversationalist. His brother, on the other hand, ________.
   A. is a newspaper reporter
   B. bores other people by talking about himself
   C. has four children
   D. knows a lot of stories, too
7. I can't ride my bicycle ______ there isn't any air in one of the tires.
   A. despite B. because C. although D. but
8. I got to class on time _______ I had missed my bus.
   A. even though B. nevertheless C. because D. despite
9. Mike used to be an active person, but now he has to limit his activities _______ problems with his health.
   A. nevertheless B. because of C. although D. in spite of
10. It should be easy for Peter to find more time to spend with his children _______ he no longer has to work in the evenings and on weekends.
    A. even though B. now that C. due to D. but

Exercise 7: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. ________ Nancy is an honest person, I still wonder whether she's telling the truth about the incident.
   A. In spite of B. Since C. Though D. In the event that
2. The professor told me that I was doing well, ______ my final grade was awful!
   A. so B. therefore C. in spite of D. yet
3. _______ Daisy has a new car, she no longer takes the commuter train to work. She drives to work every day.
   A. Now that B. While C. Although D. In case

4. You'd better give me your answer quickly, _______ I'll withdraw the invitation.
A. although B. nevertheless C. even though D. or else

5. I have to go to the meeting ______ I want to or not.
A. provided that B. whether C. even if D. only if

6. What time do you expect Tom to be home? I must talk to him. I usually go to bed around ten, but tell him to call me tonight ______ it's past midnight.
A. however B. in case C. even if D. as long as

7. _______ you're going to the fruit market, would you please pick up a few apples for me?
A. Even if B. Although C. So D. As long as

8. I guess I'm a soft touch. I just lent Jane some money for lunch ________ she never paid me back my last loan.
A. even though B. unless C. or else D. only if

9. I think I did OK in my speech last night _______ I'd had almost no sleep for 24 hours.
A. even B. in spite of C. unless D. despite the fact that

10. I ask Mary to run the office while I'm away ______ I know I can depend on her.
A. unless B. since C. although D. therefore

Exercise 8: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. The sky was grey and cloudy. _______, we went to the beach.
A. Consequently B. Nevertheless C. Even though D. In spite of

2. I turned on the fan _______ the room was hot.
A. due to B. despite C. even though D. because

3. Sam and I will meet you at the restaurant tonight ______ we can find a babysitter.
A. although B. unless C. otherwise D. only if

4. Carol showed up for the meeting ______ I asked her not to be there.
A. even though B. despite
C. provided that D. because

5. You must lend me the money for the trip. ______, I won't be able to go.
A. Consequently B. Nevertheless C. Otherwise D. Although

6. The road will remain safe _______ the flood washes out the bridge.
A. as long as B. unless C. providing that D. since

7. The roles of men and women were not the same in ancient Greece. For example, men were both participants and spectators in the ancient Olympics. Women, ________, were forbidden to attend or participate.
A. nevertheless B. on the other hand
C. therefore D. otherwise

8. The windows were all left open. ______, the room was a real mess after the windstorm.
A. Nevertheless B. However C. Consequently D. Otherwise

9. _______ I can't make the presentation myself, I've asked my assistant to be prepared to do it for me.
A. For B. In the event that
C. Only if D. On the other hand

10. It looks like they're going to succeed ________ their present difficulties.
A. despite B. because of C. even though D. yet

Exercise 9: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I like to keep the windows open at night no matter how cold it gets. My wife, ________, prefers a warm bedroom with all windows tightly shut.
A. nevertheless B. consequently
C. on the other hand D. moreover

2. Some fish can survive only in salt water, _______ other species can live only in fresh water.
A. whereas B. unless C. if D. since

3. _______ Michael became famous, he has ignored his old friends. He shouldn't do like that.
A. If B. Ever since C. Even though D. Due to

4. We're going to lose this game ________ the team doesn't start playing better soon.
A. if B. unless C. although D. whereas

5. My two children are cooking dinner for the family for the first time tonight. ________ the food is terrible, I'm going to enjoy this meal very much. It will be fun to have them cook for me for a change.
A. Only if B. If C. Even if D. Provided that

6. Jack insisted that he didn't need any help, _____ I helped him anyway.
A. and B. so C. besides D. but

7. Florida is famous for its tourist attractions. Its coastline offers excellent white sand beaches. ________, it has warm, sunny weather.
A. Otherwise B. Furthermore
C. Nevertheless D. On the other hand

8. The flowers will soon start to bloom ______ winter is gone and the weather is beginning to get warmer.
A. even if B. now that C. so D. even though

9. Only if you promise to study hard _______ to tutor you.
A. will I agree B. agree I C. I agree D. I will agree

10. Camels have either one hump or two humps. The Arabian camel has one hump. The Bactrian camel, _______, has two humps.
A. nevertheless B. however C. furthermore D. otherwise

Exercise 10: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Steel ______ with chromium to produce a noncorrosive substance known as stainless steel.
   A. is combined B. that is combined C. combining D.when combined
2. ____ the 1930s and 1940s, F.D. Roosevelt was elected to the presidency four times.
   A. Since during B. During C. Although during D. While during
3. ______ in 1636, Harvard is one of the most famous universities in the United States.
   A. Founding B. Founded C. It was founded D. Being founded
4. Johnny Carson, ________ late night TV programme is watched by millions of insomniacs in the United States, has been on the air for over twenty years.
   A. whose B. who has a C. which is a D. however his
5. ________, Jenny Churchill, was born in the United States and married an Englishman.
   A. She was the mother of Winston Churchill
   B. The mother of Winston Churchill
   C. Her son was Winston Churchill
   D. Winston Churchill was her son
6. A tornado touched down today in Kansas, _____ destruction to cornfield and telephone lines.
   A. caused B. causing C. that caused D. it caused
7. Until the 1950s, ________ were still used in some cities to deliver milk and vegetables.
   A. horses and carts B. there were horses and carts
   C. when horses and carts D. that horses and carts
8. _______ percentage of working women in the United States has doubled since 1940 has been the result of both economic and social factors.
   A. The B. That the C. There is the D. It is the
9. Laura is motivated to study _____ she knows that a good education can improve her life.
   A. therefore B. because of C. because D. so
10. Peter broke his leg in two places, ______, he had to wear a cast and use crutches for three months.
    A. However B. Consequently C. For that D. Because

IX. MẠO TỪ & GIỚI TỪ

MẠO TỪ (Articles)

A) Khái quát

A/an là mạo từ bất định (*indefinite articles*), và *the* là mạo từ xác định (*definite article*). Ta dùng *the* khi điều ta muốn nói đã rõ.

B) Mạo từ *a/an*

Mạo từ ***a*** được dùng trước một từ bắt đầu bằng phụ âm hoặc một nguyên âm nhưng đọc bằng âm tiết là phụ âm.

a man/ a hat/ a university/ a European

Mạo từ ***an*** được dùng trước một từ bắt đầu bằng nguyên âm *(a, e, i, o, u)* hoặc các từ bắt đầu bằng phụ âm ***h*** câm.

an apple/ an island/ an uncle/ an egg/ an onion/ an hour

Cách dùng:

1. Dùng **"a/an"** khi người nghe/người đọc không biết đích xác ta đang nói về người nào hoặc cái gì.
   Ví dụ: *There was a car outside the gate.*
   I saw a man in the park.
2. Dùng **"a/an"** khi nói về nghề nghiệp của một người nào đó.
   Ví dụ: *My father is an engineer.*
3. Không dùng **"a/an"** trước danh từ không đếm được (uncountable noun) hoặc một danh từ số nhiều.
   Ví dụ: **a/an** KHÔNG dùng với *information/furniture*... hoặc *houses*...

C) Mạo từ *the*

Mạo từ ***the*** có dạng như nhau đối với danh từ đếm được hoặc không đếm được, danh từ số ít và số nhiều: *the boy, the boys, the milk, the money.*

✪ **Chú ý**: **"the"** được phát âm là /ði:/ khi dùng trước từ bắt đầu bằng nguyên âm hoặc "h" câm.

the apple, the Internet, the honor, the hour

Cách dùng: Mạo từ **"the"** được dùng trong các trường hợp sau:

1. Danh từ được xác định bởi một CỤM TỪ hoặc một MỆNH ĐỀ.
   Ví dụ: *The girl in blue...; ...the place where I met him.*
2. Danh từ được xác định khi được đề cập đến LẦN THỨ HAI.
   Ví dụ: *Yesterday I met a nice girl. I had an interesting talk with the girl.*
3. Khi tân ngữ là duy nhất hoặc được xem là DUY NHẤT (*unique*).
   Ví dụ: *the earth/ the sun/ the moon/ the sea/ the sky*
4. Dùng **"*the* + tính từ + (động từ số nhiều)"** để chỉ một nhóm người có cùng một tính chất nào đó.
   the rich/ the poor/ the young/ the old
   the sick/ the dead/ the injured/ the homeless/ the unemployed
   Ví dụ: *The sick need better medical care.*
5. Dùng **"*the* + quốc tịch + (động từ số nhiều)"** để chỉ một dân tộc.
   Ví dụ: *The English are thought to be reserved.*
   The Vietnamese are hospitable to foreign tourists.
6. Dùng **"the"** trước một số địa danh sau:

đại dương, biển, sông, kênh đào	the Pacific (Ocean), the South China Sea, the Nile, the Suez Canal, the English Channel.
quần đảo	the Hawaii Islands
dãy núi	the Alps, the Himalayas
sa mạc	the Sahara, the Gobi
một vài khu vực	the Middle East (Trung Đông), the Far East (vùng Viễn Đông)

7. KHÔNG dùng **"the"** trước một số địa danh sau:

châu lục	Asia, Europe, America
quốc gia, bang	England, Vietnam, California, Texas
đảo	Cat Ba Island, Bermuda
thành phố, thị trấn	Hanoi, London, New York
ngọn núi	Mount Everest, Mount Fuji
hồ	Lake Michigan, Hoan Kiem Lake
con đường	Oxford Street, North Road

✪ **Chú ý**:

Ta dùng "the" với một số tên quốc gia như:

The United States = Hoa kì

The United Kingdom = Vương quốc Anh

Bài tập MẠO TỪ

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. We are late because we got stuck in ______ traffic jam.
A. an B. the C. a D. ∅

2. Milan is in ______ of Italy.
A. a north B. the north C. northern D. north

3. If you open the door, ________ air will circulate better.
A. an B. a C. few D. ∅

4. ________ war is as old as mankind.
A. These B. A C. ∅ D. An

5. ______ have the future in their hands.
A. Young B. A young C. An young D. The young

6. What time ______ on television?
A. is the news B. are the news C. is news D. are news

7. __________ man is __________ reasoning animal.
A. The – a B. ∅ – a C. Some – any D. Any – the

8. Unemployment compensation is money to support an unemployed person while he is looking for _______.
A. job B. a job C. a work D. works

9. Carol isn't very well. She's gone to ______.
A. doctor B. a doctor C. the doctor D. doctors

10. We visited __________.
A. Canada and United States B. the Canada and the United States
C. Canada and the United States D. the Canada and United States

Exercise 2: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I'm on ____ night duty. When you go to ____ bed, I go to ____ work.
A. a – ∅ – ∅ B. ∅ – ∅ – ∅
C. ∅ – the – the D. the – ∅ – a

2. The shape of ________ snowflake is unique.
A. ∅ B. a C. an D. the

3. ________ laughter is the best medicine.
A. A B. An C. Some D. ∅

4. One of the best things we can do to help the environment is to encourage ______ recycling.
A. ∅ B. the C. a D. some

5. ______ happiness means ______ different things to different people.
A. Some – these B. The – ∅
C. ∅ – ∅ D. The – the

6. ______ rain is in the forecast for this afternoon and early evening.
A. ∅ B. Any C. An D. This

7. On the economy, we've made ________ of progress, but we still have more to do.
A. a great deal B. a great many C. a number D. a

8. I want to ask if I could have _____ more time on this month's payment.
A. little B. a little C. a few D. few

9. The Titanic, a British steamer, sank in _____ North Atlantic after hitting _____ iceberg.
A. ∅ – an B. ∅ – ∅ C. a – an D. the – an

10. We're still spending _______ money on things we don't really need.
A. a few B. a lot of C. many D. lot

Exercise 3: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. There isn't ______ airport near where I live. ______ nearest airport is 70 miles away.
A. an – A B. an – The C. the – A D. the – The

2. Tom sat down on ______ chair nearest ______ door.
A. a – a B. a – the C. the – a D. the – the

3. Would you rather live in _____ town or in ______ country?
A. a – a B. a – the C. the – a D. the – the

4. I tried to park my car but _____ was too small.
A. space B. spaces C. a space D. the space

5. "Did you have ______ nice holiday?" "Yes, it was _____ best holiday I've ever had."
A. a – a B. a – the C. the – a D. the – the

6. I lay down on _____ ground and looked up at _____ sky.
A. a – a B. a – the C. the – a D. the – the

7. We must do more to protect ______.
A. environment B. an environment
C. the environment D. environments

8. Don't drive into that street. It is _____ one-way street.
A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

9. Sir Humphrey has been ______ MP for five years.
A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

10. I think everyone wants to make friends with John. He is ____ honest person.
A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Exercise 4: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Mary spends most of her free time watching ______.
A. television B. a television C. the television D. televisions

2. I didn't have time for _____ breakfast this morning because I was in _____ hurry.
A. Ø – a B. a – the C. the – a D. Ø – Ø

3. Tom is ______ seaman. He spends most of his life at _____ sea.
A. Ø – a B. a – Ø C. a – a D. a – the

4. ______ changed a lot in the last 30 years.
A. Life has B. A life has C. The life has D. Lives have

5. ______ we were given wasn't correct.
A. Information B. An information
C. The information D. One information

6. _____ giraffe is the tallest of all ______ animals.
A. Ø – the B. A – Ø C. A – the D. The – Ø

7. _______ bicycle is _______ excellent means of transport.
A. Ø – the B. A – an C. The – an D. The – Ø

8. Do you think ______ should pay more taxes to help ______?
A. rich – poor B. a rich – a poor
C. the rich – the poor D. riches – the poor

9. Call _____ ambulance. There's been ______ accident.
A. the – the B. an – the C. the – an D. an – an

10. "Where are you going?" "I'm going to buy ______."
A. a bread B. the breads C. a loaf of bread D. many breads

Exercise 5: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Nicola works at a big hospital. She's ______.
A. nurse B. a nurse C. the nurse D. nurses

2. She works six days ______ week.
A. in B. for C. a D. the

3. There are millions of stars in ______.
A. space B. spaces C. a space D. the space

4. Every day ______ begins at 9 a.m. and finishes at 3 p.m.
A. school B. a school C. the school D. schools

5. ______ a problem in most big cities.
A. Crime is B. The crime is
C. The crimes are D. A crime is

6. When ______ invented?
A. was telephone B. were telephones
C. was the telephone D. were the telephones

7. "Where did you have _____ lunch?" "We went to _____ restaurant."
A. Ø – a B. Ø – Ø C. a – a D. a – Ø

8. Have you ever been to ______?
A. British Museum B. a British Museum
C. the British Museum D. British Museums

9. We had a very nice meal. _______ especially good.
A. Vegetables were B. The vegetables were
C. Vegetable was D. A vegetable was

10. Why aren't your children at _____ today? Are they ill?
A. school B. a school C. the school D. the schools

GIỚI TỪ

A. Prepositions of time (Giới từ chỉ thời gian)

***) at + giờ/dịp lễ**

at seven o'clock/half past six
at Christmas/Easter
at the weekend (hoặc *on the weekend*)
at noon (lúc 12 giờ trưa)
at night (ban đêm)
at the age of ten
at the same time (cùng một lúc, đồng thời)
at present/ at the moment (lúc này)
at bedtime (vào giờ đi ngủ)
at sunrise (lúc mặt trời mọc)
at sunset (lúc mặt trời lặn)

***) on + ngày**

on Monday/ September 5th/Tuesday October 2nd 2010
on Christmas Day/New Year's Day
on Saturday morning/Thursday evening
on my birthday
on New Year's Eve (lúc giao thừa)
on a cold night/a beautiful morning…

***) in +**	**tháng/năm/thập niên**	*in January/2012/ the 1990s*
	thế kỉ	*in the 21st century*
	mùa	*in spring/summer*
	khoảng thời gian trong ngày	*in the morning/the afternoon/the evening*

Một số giới từ chỉ thời gian hay nhầm lẫn:

- ***By*** và ***until/ till***:

- *By* (vào lúc) chỉ việc gì đó xảy ra không trễ hơn, và có lẽ trước thời gian được nhắc đến.

Can we finish the work by four o'clock?

(Chúng ta có thể hoàn thành công việc chậm nhất là vào 4 giờ không?)

- *Until/ till* chỉ điều gì đó kéo dài cho đến nhưng không trễ hơn thời gian được nêu.

The manager won't return until next Monday.

(Cho đến thứ hai tuần tới ông giám đốc mới trở về.)

A part of the motorway will remain closed until this afternoon.

(Một đoạn xa lộ sẽ còn đóng cho đến chiều nay – nó sẽ mở chiều nay.)

- *Until/ till* thường được dùng với câu phủ định, với nghĩa "không diễn ra trước", thường nhấn mạnh sự trễ nãi.

We can't eat until all the guests arrive.

(Chúng ta đợi đến khi khách đến đầy đủ mới ăn – Chúng ta chỉ ăn khi nào tất cả khách đều có mặt.)

- ***In, during*** và ***for***:

- *In* và *during* thường có nghĩa giống nhau.

In/ During the summer, we often go for long walks.

(Vào mùa hè, chúng tôi thường hay đi dạo những quãng đường dài.)

- Tuy nhiên, *during* chỉ một sự việc cụ thể trên nền bối cảnh một khoảng thời gian nào đó, hoặc có sự gián đoạn.

He has a heart attack and was taken to hospital during the night.

(Ông ấy lên cơn đau tim và được đưa đến bệnh viện trong đêm.)

They walked out of the hall during the speech.

(Họ bỏ ra khỏi hội trường trong lúc người ta đang phát biểu.)

- *For* dùng để chỉ việc gì đó kéo dài trong bao lâu.

He will be on holiday for two days.

(Anh ấy đi nghỉ mát trong hai ngày.)

- *In* được dùng để chỉ việc gì đó sẽ diễn ra nhanh cỡ nào.

I'll meet you in ten minutes.

(Mười phút nữa tôi sẽ gặp anh.)

In less than an hour we had heard all about his adventures.

(Chỉ trong vòng không quá một giờ đồng hồ, chúng tôi đã nghe hết chuyện phiêu lưu của anh ta.)

Giới từ chỉ sự chuyển động:

- ***Across*** và ***over***:

Across = từ bên này di chuyển sang kên kia của một bề mặt
Over = lên trên và vượt qua

Chúng có thể dùng như nhau hoặc khác biệt:

a footbridge across/ over the motorway (cầu đi bộ bắc ngang qua xa lộ)

She made attempt to sail alone across the Pacific.

(Cô ấy nỗ lực một mình dong thuyền vượt Thái Bình Dương.)

The children climbed over the wall. (Bọn trẻ leo qua bức tường.)

- ***Along*** (dọc theo), ***past*** (ngang qua), và ***through*** (xuyên qua):

- *Along* dùng để chỉ vật gì đó di chuyển dọc theo một đường thẳng, hoặc một nơi nào đó dài và hẹp.

- *I followed the manager along the corridor.*

(Tôi bước theo ông giám đốc dọc theo hành lang.)

Along đôi khi được dùng để chỉ một vị trí cụ thể so với một đường thẳng:

Somewhere along the path there is a signpost.

(Ở nơi nào đấy dọc đường đi có một biển chỉ đường.)

- *Past* chỉ sự chuyển động ở trước mặt và đi qua một nơi nào đó:

We drove past your house on our way to the party.

(Chúng tôi lái xe ngang qua nhà anh trên đường đến dự tiệc.)

- *Through* chỉ sự chuyển động bên trong một không gian nào đó:

They couldn't get the new sofa through the door.

(Họ không thể đưa chiếc ghế sofa mới qua cửa đi.)

- ***In*** (vào trong) và ***on*** (lên trên):

- *In* dùng để chỉ sự di chuyển vào phần bên trong của một vật chứa, nơi chốn, hoặc khu vực nào đó.

Can you put the milk in the fridge?

(Anh làm ơn cất sữa vào trong tủ lạnh?)

- *On* chỉ sự chuyển động lên trên một bề mặt:

We could hear the rain falling on the roof.

(Chúng tôi nghe thấy tiếng mưa rơi lên mái nhà.)

✪ **Chú ý:**

a) So sánh cách dùng của "in the end" và "at the end":

in the end = at last, finally… (cuối cùng)

at the end of sth (vào cuối…)

Ví dụ: *In the end, they sold their house and left the town.*
They intended to leave the town at the end of this month.

Tương tự với "in the beginning" (ban đầu) và "at the beginning of sth" (vào đầu…):

Ví dụ: *In the beginning, the work looked very difficult.*
At the beginning of work, we met a lot of difficulties.

b) So sánh cách dùng của "in time" và "on time":

in time + to-infinitive = kịp thời, kịp lúc để làm cái gì

on time = punctual = đúng giờ

Ta thường dùng "**just**" trước "**in time**" để nói 'vừa kịp lúc để làm gì'.

Ví dụ: *I got to the station just in time to catch the train.*
John is always on time. He never comes to work late.

B. Prepositions of place (Giới từ chỉ nơi chốn)

***) in = ở trong**

Ví dụ: *They live in a nice house.*

Người ta thường dùng giới từ "**in**" trong các cụm từ sau:

- in a line/in a row = trong một hàng/một dãy
- in a picture/in a photograph = trong tranh/ảnh
- in a book/a newspaper/a magazine/a letter = trong sách/báo/tạp chí/thư
- in bed = đang nằm trên giường
- in hospital/in prison = đang nằm bệnh viện/đang ở tù
- in the rain/in the sun = trong mưa/ngoài nắng
- in the sky = trên trời
- in a boat = trên thuyền
- in a lift (elevator) = trong thang máy
- in a helicopter = trong máy bay lên thẳng
- in the dark/in the shade = trong bóng tối/trong bóng râm
- in good/bad weather = khi thời tiết tốt/xấu
- in ink/in pen/in pencil = (viết) bằng mực/bút máy/bút chì
- in cash = (trả/mua) bằng tiền mặt

***) at = ở tại.**

Ví dụ: *There were a lot of people waiting at the bus stop.*
Who will meet you at the airport?

Người ta thường dùng giới từ "**at**" trong các cụm từ sau:

- at the top/at the bottom (of a page/ a list...) = ở trên cùng/ở dưới cùng
- at the end (of a street/a road...) = ở cuối (con đường...)
- at home/at work = ở nhà/(đang làm việc) ở cơ quan
- at school/at college/at university = (đang học) ở trường

✪ **Chú ý**: – at/on the corner of a street = ở góc đường
– in the corner of the room/house = ở góc phòng/nhà

***) on = ở trên.**

Ví dụ: *She put her handbag on a chair.*
There was some litter on the floor.

Người ta thường dùng giới từ "**on**" trong các cụm từ sau:

- on the floor/on the ground = trên sàn nhà/trên mặt đất
- on the first/second/third.. floor (of a building) = trên tầng một/hai/ba (của một tòa nhà)
- on the grass/on the beach/on the sand = trên bãi cỏ/ bãi biển/bãi cát
- on the board/on the map = trên bảng/trên bản đồ
- on page 10 = ở trang 10
- on the left/on the right = phía bên trái/bên phải
- on a farm = ở trang trại
- on the street/on a river/on the coast = trên đường/trên sông /trên bờ biển
- on a bus/a train/a plane/a ship = trên xe buýt/trên tàu/máy bay/tàu thuỷ (BUT: in a car/in a taxi = trong xe hơi/xe taxi)
- on a bicycle/a motorbike/a horse = trên xe đạp/xe gắn máy/trên ngựa

***) above** và **over:**

- ***Above*** hoặc ***over*** được dùng để chỉ một vật này cao hơn một vật khác.

Ví dụ: *The workshop is over/ above the garage.*
(Phân xưởng nằm trên chỗ sửa xe.)

- ***Over*** được dùng khi một này này phủ lên vật khác.

Ví dụ: *Put this rug over that old chair.*
(Hãy phủ tấm thảm này lên trên chiếc ghế cũ kia.)

- ***Above*** được dùng khi hai vật không trục tiếp chồng lên nhau.

Ví dụ: *The hotel is above the beach.*
(Khách sạn nằm trên cao nhìn ra biển.)

- ***Above*** được dùng trong các hồ sơ.

Ví dụ: *Please don't write above the line.*
(Xin đừng viết trên dòng.)

***) under** và **below**:

- Dùng ***under*** hoặc ***below*** nếu vật này thấp hơn vật kia.

Ví dụ: *The garage is under/ below the workshop.*
(Xưởng sửa xe nằm dưới phân xưởng.)

- ***Under*** trái nghĩa với ***over***.

Ví dụ: *The old chair is under the rug.*

- ***Below*** trái nghĩa với ***above***.

Ví dụ: *The beach is below the hotel.*

- ***Below*** được dùng trong các hồ sơ.

Ví dụ: *Please don't write below the line.*
(Xin đừng viết dưới dòng.)

***) between** (ở giữa) và **among** (trong số):

- ***Between*** được dùng khi chúng ta nói về hai nơi chốn, hai người hoặc hai vật.

Ví dụ: *The dictionary is between the grammar book and the atlas.*
(Cuốn từ điển nằm giữa cuốn ngữ pháp và tập bản đồ.)

- ***Among*** được dùng để nhận dạng vật gì hoặc người nào như là một phần của nhóm.

Ví dụ: *Is there a dictionary somewhere among these books?*

(Có cuốn từ điển nào nằm đâu đó trong những cuốn sách này không?)

*) **beyond** (bên kia, phía bên kia) và **behind** (đằng sau):

- ***Beyond*** dùng để chỉ nơi nào đấy cách chúng ta xa hơn vật khác.

Ví dụ: *You can't see the lake, it's beyond the forest.*

(Anh không nhìn thấy hồ được, nó nằm khuất ở phía bên kia khu rừng.)

If you are travelling west, New Mexico is beyond Texas.

(Nếu bạn đi về phía tây thì bang New Mexico nằm phía bên kia của bang Texas.)

- ***Behind*** được dùng để chỉ nơi nào đó bị che khuất một phần hoặc hoàn toàn bởi một vật thể đằng trước nó.

Ví dụ: *The robber stood behind the door, hoping he wouldn't be seen.*

(Tên cướp nấp sau cửa, mong sao không ai phát hiện ra hắn.)

C. Prepositions following adjectives (Giới từ theo sau tính từ)

1. Adjectives + *of*

afraid of: sợ
ashamed of: hổ thẹn
aware of: có ý thức
capable of: có khả năng
certain of/ about: chắc về
confident of: tự tin
envious of: ghen tị
fond of: thích
full of: đầy
guilty of: có tội
independent of: độc lập
jealous of: ghen tị
proud of: hãnh diện
scared of: sợ
short of: cạn kiệt
typical of: tiêu biểu

2. Adjectives + *for*

available for: có sẵn
eager for: nóng lòng chờ
eligible for: xứng đáng cho
famous for: nổi tiếng về
necessary for: cần thiết cho
useful for sth: có ích cái gì

3. Adjectives + *in*

disappointed in/ with: thất vọng
interested in: thích thú, quan tâm
rich in: giàu về
successful in: thành công về

4. Adjectives + *to*

accustomed to: quen với
contrary to: trái với
equal to: ngang bằng với
essential to/ for: cần thiết cho
grateful to sb for sth: biết ơn
harmful to: có hại
important to: quan trọng với
married to sb: kết hôn với ai
open to: mở ra cho
similar to: tương tự với

5. Adjectives + *at*

amazed at: kinh ngạc về
good at: dở về

bad at: dở về
clever at: khéo léo về
quick at: nhanh nhẹn về
surprised at: kinh ngạc về

6. Adjectives + *with*

acquaintned with: quen với
angry with/at sb: giận
bored with/ fed up with: chán
busy with: bận rộn với
crowded with: đông đúc
disappointed with: thất vọng
familiar with sth: quen thuộc với
friendly with: thân thiện với
happy with/ about: hạnh phúc
honest with sb: thành thật
indentical with: giống hệt với
impatient with: mất kiên nhẫn
pleased/ satisfied with: hài lòng
popular with: phổ biến với

7. Adjectives + *about*

annoyed with sb: bực tức
anxious about: lo lắng
careful about: cẩn thận
careless about: bất cẩn
confused about: nhầm lẫn về
excited about: phấn khích
serious about: nghiêm túc
sorry about/for: hối tiếc

8. Adjectives + *from*

absent from: vắng mặt ở
different from: khác với
free from: thoát khỏi
safe from: an toàn

D. Prepositions following verbs (Giới từ theo sau động từ)

1. Verbs + *about*

care about sb: quan tâm đến
dream about/of sb/sth: mơ về
hear about sth: nghe nói đến
remind sb about sth: nhắc ai nhớ
talk about sb/sth: nói về
tell sb about sb/sth: nói với ai về
think about sb/sth: nghĩ về
warn sb about/ of sth: cảnh báo về

2. Verbs + *at*

arrive at/in: đến nơi
glance at sb/sth: liếc nhìn
laugh at sb: cười nhạo ai
look at sb/sth: nhìn vào
point (sth) at sb/sth: chĩa vào
shout at sb: la mắng ai
(*shout to sb*: hét to gọi ai)
smile at sb: mỉm cười với ai
stare at sb/sth: nhìn chằm chằm
throw sth at sb: ném vào ai

3. Verbs + *for*

apply for sth: nộp đơn xin
ask (sb) for sth: xin, yêu cầu
blame sb for sth: đổ lỗi cho ai về
forgive sb for sth: tha thứ
hope for sth: hi vọng
look for sb/sth: tìm kiếm
pay for sth: trả tiền
search for sb/sth: tìm kiếm
thank sb for sth: cám ơn
wait for sb/sth: chờ đợi

4. Verbs + *from*

escape from: trốn thoát khỏi
differ from: khác biệt
prevent sb from sth: ngăn chặn
protect sb from sth: bảo vệ
suffer from sth: chịu đựng

5. **Verbs + *in***

believe in: tin tưởng vào
specialize in sth: chuyên về
succeed in sth: thành công
fail in: thất bại

6. **Verbs + *into***

crash into: đụng vào
cut into: cắt ra
divide into: chia ra
translate ... into: dịch ra

7. **Verbs + *of***

accuse sb of sth: buộc tội
approve of sth: đồng ý, chấp thuận
consist of: bao gồm
die of/from: chết vì
disapprove of sth: không đồng ý
suspect sb of sth: nghi ngờ

8. **Verbs + *on***

concentrate on sth: tập trung vào
congratulate sb on sth: chúc mừng
depend on: lệ thuộc, tùy thuộc
insist on sth: cứ khăng khăng
live on sb/sth: sống dựa vào
rely on: tin cậy vào
spend (money) on sth: tiêu tiền

9. **Verbs + *to***

apologize to sb for sth: xin lỗi về
complain to sb about sth: than phiền
describe sth to sb: mô tả cho ai
explain sth to sb: giải thích
happen to sb/sth: xảy ra với
listen to: lắng nghe
prefer...to...: thích... hơn...
talk/ speak to sb: nói với ai

10. **Verbs + *with***

collide with: đụng vào
compare with/to: so sánh với
fill with: làm đầy
equip with: trang bị
provide sb with sth: cung cấp
(*provide sth for sb*: cung cấp)
supply sb with sth: cung cấp
(*supply sth to sb*: cung cấp)

E. Prepositions following nouns (Giới từ theo sau danh từ)

– **a check for** (a sum of money): ngân phiếu có giá trị...
They send me a check for $100.

– **a demand/ a need for** sth: yêu cầu/ nhu cầu về cái gì
The company closed down because there wasn't enough demand for its products.

– **a reason for** sth: lí do của cái gì
The train was late but no one knew the reason for the delay.

– **a rise/ a fall/ a decrease in** sth: sự tăng/ giảm
There has been an increase in car accidents lately.

– **an advantage/a disadvantage of** (doing) sth: lợi thế/ sự bất lợi về cái gì
The advantage of living alone is that you can do what you like.
Nhưng ta có thể nói:
There is an advantage in/to doing something.

– **a cause of** sth: nguyên nhân của cái gì
Nobody knows what cause of the explosion was.

– **a photograph of** sb/sth: hình của ai/ cái gì
He always keeps a photograph of his wife in his wallet.

– **damage to** sth: sự thiệt hại
The accident was my fault, so I paid for the damage to the other car.

– **an invitation to a party...**: lời mời đến buổi tiệc....
Did you get an invitation to the party?

– **a reaction to** sth: phản ứng lại cái gì
I was surprised at her reaction to what I said.

– **a solution to a problem/ an answer to a question/ a reply to a letter/ a key to a door**: giải pháp cho vấn đề/ câu trả lời cho một câu hỏi/ sự phúc đáp thư/ chìa khoá mở cửa
Do you think we'll find a solution to this problem?
The answer to your question is "No".

– **an attitude to/toward** sb/sth: thái độ đối với ai/ cái gì
His attitude to/toward his job is very negative.

– **a relationship/ a connection/ contact with** sb/sth: mối quan hệ/ sự liên quan/ sự giao tiếp với
Do you have a good relationship with your parents?
The police want to question a man in connection with the robbery.

– **a relationship/ a connection/ a difference between** two things: mối quan hệ/ sự liên quan/ sự khác biệt giữa hai vật
The police have said there is no connection between the two murders.
There is some difference between British English and American English.

F. Prepositions followed by nouns (Giới từ theo sau bởi danh từ)

– (pay) **by check** (*but* **pay in cash** *or pay cash*): (trả) bằng ngân phiếu
Did you pay by check or in cash?

– (to do sth) **by accident/ by mistake/ by chance:** tình cờ làm cái gì
We hadn't arranged to meet. We met by chance.

– a play **by** Shakespeare/ a painting **by** Rembrand/ a novel **by** Tolstoy: vở kịch của Shakespeare/ bức tranh của Rembrand/ tiểu thuyết của Tolstoy
Have you read any books (written) by Tolstoy?

– (to be/ to fall) **in love with sb**: phải lòng ai
Have you ever been in love with anyone?

– **in one's opinion**: theo ý kiến/ quan điểm của ai
In my opinion the film wasn't good.

– (to be) **on fire:** đang cháy
Look! That car is on fire.

– (to be) **on the phone**: nói chuyện qua điện thoại
I've never met her but I've spoken to her on the phone.

- **on television/ on the radio**: trên truyền hình/ trên đài
  I din't watch the game on television. I listened to it on the radio.
- (to be/ to go) **on a diet**: ăn kiêng
  I've put on a lot of weight. I'll have to go on a diet.
- (to be/ to go) **on strike**: đình công
  There are no trains today. The railroad workers are on strike.
- (to be/to go) **on vacation/ on business/ on a trip/ on a tour/ on a cruise/ on an expedition**: đi nghỉ mát/ đi công tác/ tham gia một chuyến đi/ đi chơi bằng thuyền/ đi thám hiểm
  Did you go to Paris on business or on vacation?
- (go to a place) **for a vacation**: (đi đến đâu) để nghỉ mát
  Tom has gone to France for a vacation.
- (to go/ to come) **for a walk/ for a swim/ for a meal**...: đi dạo/ đi bơi/ đi ăn
  She always goes for a walk with her dog in the afternoon.
  After work we went to the restaurant for a meal.
- (to have sth) **for breakfast/ for lunch/ for dinner**: (dùng món gì) cho bữa ăn sáng/ bữa trưa/ bữa tối
  What did you have for lunch?

Bài tập GIỚI TỪ

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. We met a lot of people ______ our holiday.
   A. for B. during C. with D. of
2. We watched television ______ two hours last night.
   A. for B. during C. on D. in
3. I posted the letter today, so they should receive it ______ Monday.
   A. in B. at C. by D. for
4. Hurry up! We've got to go _____ five minutes.
   A. in B. at C. on D. to
5. The price of electricity is going up ______ October.
   A. in B. at C. on D. of
6. We traveled overnight to London and arrived _____ 4 o'clock _____ the morning.
   A. at – on B. in – on C. at – in D. in – on
7. I must hurry. I want to get home _____ to see the football match on TV.
   A. on time B. in time C. by time D. at time
8. The bus was late this morning but it's usually ______.
   A. for times B. at times C. on time D. in time
9. ______ of the concert, there was great applause.
   A. In the end B. At the end C. At finish D. In the stop
10. We had a lot of problem with our car. _____, we sold it and bought another one.
    A. At finish B. By the end C. At the end D. In the end

Exercise 2: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. ______ we didn't like each other very much, but ______ we became good friends.
   A. At first – at the end B. By first – in the end
   C. At first – in the end D. By first – at the end
2. Are you going away _____ the beginning of August or _____ the end?
   A. in – in B. in – at C. at – in D. at – at
3. What have you got ______ your mouth?
   A. at B. in C. on D. of
4. Write your name ______ the top of the page.
   A. in B. on C. at D. with
5. You will find details of TV programmes _____ page seven.
   A. on B. at C. in D. of
6. Here's a shopping list. Don't buy anything that's not _____ the list.
   A. on B. at C. in D. of
7. I was standing _____ the back, so I couldn't see very well.
   A. on B. at C. in D. of
8. She got _____ the car and drove away.
   A. on B. at C. into D. of
9. Look! That car is _____! Someone calls the fire brigade.
   A. in fire B. into flame C. on flame D. on fire
10. We hadn't arranged to meet. We met _________.
    A. on change B. by change
    C. by opportunity D. for opportunity

Exercise 3: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. John has gone away. He'll be back _____ a week.
   A. on B. at C. in D. for
2. We're having a party _____ Sunday. Can you come?
   A. on B. at C. in D. of
3. "Is there a bank near here?" "Yes, there's one ____ the end of the road."
   A. on B. at C. in D. by
4. You've got a dirty mark _____ your cheek. Have a look ____ the mirror.
   A. at – on B. on – in C. on – on D. at – at
5. Bombay is _____ the west coast of India.
   A. on B. at C. in D. of
6. Don't ask me to decide, I'm not very good ______ making decisions.
   A. on B. at C. in D. about

7. He lives a rather lonely life. He doesn't have much contact _____ other people.
A. for B. about C. among D. with

8. Linda is a keen photographer. She likes taking pictures _____ people.
A. at B. with C. of D. for

9. She looks quite hard. You can't accuse her _____ being lazy.
A. of B. for C. with D. on

10. I've got an interview next week. It's ____ 9.30 _____ Wednesday morning.
A. at – on B. at – in C. on - at D. on – on

Exercise 4: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. The problem is becoming serious. We have to discuss ______ it.
A. about B. with C. on D. ∅

2. Sue isn't usually here _____ weekends. She goes away.
A. in B. at C. for D. within

3. The train service is very good. The trains are nearly always ____ time.
A. for B. at C. on D. in

4. Look at the leaves _____ that tree. They're _____ a beautiful colour.
A. in – in B. of – at C. at – at D. on – in

5. "Have you ever been ________ Hanoi?" "No, I've never been ________ Vietnam."
A. in – in B. for – for C. to – to D. at – at

6. "Are you _____ this photograph?" "Yes, that's me, _____ the left."
A. in – on B. on – at C. at – of D. of – in

7. He's very brave. He's not afraid _____ anything.
A. at B. for C. of D. with

8. I'm surprised _____ the amount of traffic today. I didn't think it would be so busy.
A. about B. at C. with D. for

9. I prefer this chair ______ the other one. It's more comfortable.
A. with B. for C. to D. from

10. The river divides the city _____ two parts.
A. with B. into C. between D. among

Exercise 5: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. The accident was my fault, so I had to pay for the damage _____ the other car.
A. of B. for C. to D. on

2. I'll be at home ______ Friday morning. You can phone me then.
A. on B. at C. in D. of

3. I'm going away ______ the end of February.
A. on B. at C. in D. of

4. When we were in France, we spent a few days _____ Paris.
A. on B. at C. in D. to

5. Our flat is _____ the second floor of the building.
A. on B. at C. in D. of

6. What time did they arrive ______ the hotel?
A. to B. at C. in D. on

7. I saw Tom ______ a concert last Saturday.
A. on B. at C. in D. for

8. John's away at the moment. He's ______ holiday in France.
A. on B. at C. in D. for

9. We travelled ______ 7.30 train, which arrived at 10.00.
A. in the B. on the C. by the D. by

10. Have you read any books ______ Agatha Christie?
A. of B. from C. by D. with

Exercise 6: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. "What time will you arrive?" "I don't know. It depends _____ the traffic."
A. of B. from C. for D. on

2. Thank you. It was very nice ______ help me.
A. of you to B. for you to C. for you for D. of you for

3. Why were you so unfriendly ______ Linda? Have you had an argument with her?
A. of B. to C. for D. with

4. I'm not very good _____ repairing things.
A. at B. for C. in D. about

5. "Who is Tom Wilson?" "I've no idea. I've never heard ______ him."
A. about B. from C. after D. of

6. It was a confusing situation. Many things were happening _____ the same time.
A. at B. on C. in D. of

7. I couldn't decide whether to buy the sweater or not. ______, I decided not to.
A. At the end B. In the end C. By the end D. For the end

8. The road is busy all the time, even _______.
A. on night
B. at the evening
C. at night
D. on the evening

9. We went _____ the theatre last night. We had seats _____ the front row.
A. to – in B. for – on C. at – of D. in – at

10. "Where's the light switch?" "It's ______ the wall ______ the door."
A. in – on B. on – in C. on – by D. by – in

Exercise 7: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. He was bitterly ashamed _____ her for doing such things.
A. for B. by C. in D. of
2. Admission to this club is open _____ people under 30 only.
A. with B. for C. to D. by
3. Contrary _____ what most people used to believed, these minerals are not renewable.
A. with B. for C. against D. to
4. Don't you get tired _____ watching that TV programme every night?
A. with B. by C. of D. at
5. Don't be afraid _____ the dog. He is quite harmless.
A. in B. of C. at D. for
6. My little son was interested _____ fixing broken objects and making new things.
A. on B. at C. with D. in
7. His solution to the math problem is similar _____ many of his colleagues.
A. with B. as C. for D. to
8. Is the government capable _____ finding a solution to the unemployment among school-leavers?
A. of B. to C. for D. at
9. It was very good _____ you to help Susan with her homework.
A. for B. to C. with D. of
10. Many young people want to be independent _____ their parents.
A. of B. from C. with D. agaisnt

Exercise 8: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Now the manager is no longer as indifferent _____ criticism as he used to be.
A. against B. to C. towards D. with
2. Since all vehicles were banned from the city centre, the air has been safe _____ pollution.
A. about B. apart from C. from D. against
3. Seven o'clock will be convenient _____ me to come to your birthday party.
A. for B. to C. with D. of
4. The chemical that his company is producing is dangerous _____ humans.
A. to B. for C. with D. against
5. The public are very concerned ___ the increasing crime rates in the city.
A. with B. at C. about D. for
6. The students are bored _____ learning the same subjects this semester.
A. of B. at C. in D. with

7. The scientists are well aware _____ the seriousness of environmental pollution.
A. about B. of C. with D. for
8. We must hurry, otherwise we should be late _____ school.
A. for B. to C. from D. on
9. We were lucky to be able to finish the project ahead _____ schedule.
A. for B. of C. before D. by
10. The buildings in this city are typical _____ Western architectural styles.
A. of B. for C. with D. about

Exercise 9: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. You'd better not approach him, he is concerned _____ a difficult problem that needs all his attention.
A. about B. on C. for D. with
2. Contrary _____ my expectation, they didn't feel uneasy _____ the result of the match.
A. to – with B. for – at C. on – for D. to – about
3. Wearing long hair and colourful clothes was very popular _____ young people of the 1970s.
A. for B. to C. by D. with
4. Michael is absorbed _____ his work and didn't notice me coming.
A. with B. in C. at D. by
5. Suring Christmas season, many streets are crowded _____ season-goers.
A. with B. by C. about D. of
6. I felt sorry _____ those people whose flights were delayed for so long.
A. at B. with C. for D. to
7. The investors in the company were angry _____ losing their money.
A. for B. about C. with D. of
8. The children who came from the nearby school were very friendly _____ the villagers.
A. with B. to C. about D. toward
9. The island we visited this morning is famous _____ its standing stories.
A. about B. with C. of D. for
10. The children are fed up _____ doing the same things day after day.
A. for B. of C. with D. about

Exercise 10: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Mr. Smith lives _____ 667A 10th Street _____ New York.
A. in – in B. at – in
C. on – in D. in – on
2. We reached _____ her house safe and sound.
A. at B. to C. with D. Ø

3. Our car traveled ________ an average speed of 60 mph.
A. with B. on C. in D. at
4. She likes to listen ________ Radio Australia.
A. from B. Ø C. at D. to
5. He stopped ________ Park Avenue.
A. by B. at C. in D. on
6. He hasn't been cheerful _______ the death of his close friend.
A. for B. during C. since D. from
7. He has just left ________ the airport to meet his friend.
A. for B. at C. to D. from
8. That part of the country is famous _______ its pineapples.
A. from B. against C. for D. at
9. John's business developed _______ an idea he had years ago.
A. by B. into C. from D. off
10. I forgot _________ that appointment.
A. Ø B. on C. over D. about

Exercise 11: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. We went there ______ car and stayed there for the whole day.
A. in B. on C. with D. by
2. We started our journey _______ foot.
A. with B. by C. on D. in
3. He always prevents me _______ doing my duty.
A. of B. from C. with D. against
4. I write letters ________ my left hand.
A. in B. by C. with D. at
5. The war victims suffered terribly _______ cold and hunger.
A. with B. from C. through D. of
6. She is absent _________ class.
A. at B. from C. to D. away
7. It is very nice ________ you to take so much trouble.
A. of B. to C. for D. from
8. You may write ________ pencil.
A. with B. by C. in D. of
9. He congratulated me ________ winning the competition.
A. of B. on C. at D. about
10. Remember me _________ your parents.
A. to B. for C. with D. about

Exercise 12: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. "Where did you get the name Harrison?" "I was named _______ my grandfather."
A. after B. of C. with D. from

2. "Where does Anthony work?" "I think he's associated ________ the Forman Company."
A. with B. by C. of D. to
3. "What's in the jar?" "It's filled ________ candy."
A. by B. of C. in D. with
4. "Did you go to college?" "Yes, I graduated _______ the University of London."
A. for B. by C. from D. in
5. "Ruth is a surgeon, isn't she?" "Yes, but her family doesn't approve _______ her career."
A. from B. of C. about D. with
6. "Where have you been?" "I apologize _______ being late but I missed the bus."
A. to B. by C. for D. of
7. "What's the meat loaf?" "It's a dish composed ______ hamburger, eggs, tomato sauce, and bread crumbs."
A. of B. by C. to D. for
8. "Can I help you?" "Yes, I'm interested ______ buying a pair of boots."
A. in B. on C. for D. by
9. "Why is the landlord upset?" "Because so many people are complaining _______ the rent increase."
A. by B. for C. to D. about
10. "What a nice town!" "It's famous _______ its historical places."
A. for B. about C. with D. by

Exercise 13: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. "Can I borrow some money from you?" "You're already in debt ______ me for sixty dollars."
A. for B. to C. from D. by
2. "I thought we were buying hamburgers for the barbecue." "Some insisted ________ getting chickens too."
A. on B. to C. with D. about
3. "What do you think of the idea Albert had?" "I'm opposed _______ it."
A. to B. with C. of D. about
4. "I'll buy the cake for John's birthday party." "And I'll be responsible ______ the ice-cream."
A. of B. for C. to D. with
5. "What was your impression ________ the art exhibit?" "I thought some of the works were uninteresting."
A. of B. with C. to D. at
6. "It's been raining for a day and a half." "If this situation continues, people will be faced _____ serious flooding."
A. to B. about C. with D. by

7. "Can you tell me where a hardware store is?" "I'm sorry. I'm not familiar ________ this city."
A. with B. to C. about D. for

8. "How's your homework coming?" "I haven't gotten very far _____ it."
A. about B. on C. for D. of

9. "Tony and Toby look so much alike." "Yes. It's difficult to distinguish one twin ________ another."
A. to B. by C. for D. from

10. "How did you change the class schedule?" "We combined the reading class _______ the writing class."
A. to B. with C. from D. into

Exercise 14: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. When ________ Rome do as the Romans do.
A. with B. for C. in D. like

2. This must be done ________ any price.
A. for B. at C. in D. with

3. Your request ________ a scholarship has been taken into account.
A. for B. in C. under D. into

4. He succeeded _________ getting a scholarship.
A. in B. about C. for D. on

5. Mark Twain based the story _________ his experiences in the west.
A. on B. from C. in D. on

6. We just rested ________ a short time.
A. at B. since C. for D. in

7. Don't put _______ until tomorrow what you can do today.
A. away B. off C. aside D. up

8. Robert Nixon was ashamed ________ his father.
A. at B. with C. of D. about

9. I prefer tea __________ coffee.
A. than B. to C. from D. for

10. If you don't know the meaning of the word, look it ______ in the dictionary.
A. up B. of C. after D. for

Exercise 15: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. He insisted ________ taking us to dinner.
A. on B. in C. over D. of

2. Do you believe _________ ghosts?
A. Ø B. in C. on D. at

3. Edward depends ________ his family for financial support.
A. on B. in C. of D. at

4. Ann looked _______ the mirror and admired her new blouse.
A. in B. at C. on D. into

5. The new manager's name is familiar _________ most of us.
A. as B. from C. to D. with

6. Those books deal mainly _________ tropical plants.
A. with B. in C. for D. up

7. ________ the game last evening, my cousin hurt his ankle.
A. For B. During C. Since D. From

8. Water consists ________ oxygen and hydrogen.
A. about B. with C. for D. of

9. There is an increasing demand _______ taller building in big cities.
A. with B. on C. for D. of

10. Is the United States the wealthiest country ________ the world?
A. of B. in C. over D. on

Exercise 16: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. The vicar passed _______ yesterday. No flowers by request.
A. over B. off C. through D. away

2. Good citizens always abide ________ the law.
A. to B. by C. with D. for

3. Did you go anywhere ________ your summer holidays?
A. at B. during C. in D. on

4. I'll call you _________ about five o'clock. I need your help.
A. out B. off C. up D. on

5. We like to read that novel __________ Jack London.
A. of B. from C. in D. by

6. He put the ladder ________ the wall.
A. on B. upon C. against D. over

7. Our country is rich ________ natural resources.
A. in B. of C. with D. about

8. This American-Asian child is greatly indebted _______ this association ______ their help.
A. to – about B. in – with C. to – for D. of – for

9. They prefer driving __________ walking.
A. than B. with C. to D. from

10. A great number of people still believe ________ ghosts nowadays.
A. in B. at C. on D. Ø

Exercise 17: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. We run out _________ petrol now.
A. off B. up C. of D. in

2. Women who are pregnant should not jump ________ the ditch.
A. over B. past C. in D. into

3. The attendance ________ this meeting is very large.
A. for B. in C. at D. to

4. I am thankful ________ him ________ his advice.
A. of – for B. to – about C. to – on D. to – for

5. The little boy is always negligent ________ his duty.
A. at B. in C. on D. of

6. She gets accustomed ________ working late at night.
A. to B. with C. in D. for

7. The customer insisted ________ being paid at once.
A. at B. for C. on D. in

8. The manager traveled sometimes ______ pleasure and sometimes _____ business.
A. for – for B. with – on C. for – on D. in – in

9. Their parents are concerned ________ their bad behaviours.
A. to B. for C. about D. of

10. The newcomers are familiar _____ these sub-standard living conditions.
A. in B. about C. on D. with

Exercise 18: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I'd like to stay ________ Sunday, if that's OK.
A. to B. by C. until D. at

2. He died _______ heart failure ______ Thursday night. His wife is still suffering ______ shock.
A. for – at – for B. of – on – from
C. from – on – from D. at – on – from

3. I arrived _______ May last year, and ______ the end of the year I spoke quite good English.
A. in – by B. on – until C. in – since D. on – for

4. We are going to stay in a little cottage, and that will be very nice because I haven't been to the seaside _______ two years at least.
A. in B. for C. at D. within

5. It's ages _______ we said goodbye.
A. for B. since C. during D. until

6. He insisted ________ seeing the document.
A. in B. on C. at D. for

7. It never occurred _____ me to ask him _____ proof _____ his identity.
A. for – for – of B. to – for – of
C. to – for – for D. for – for – for

8. The house is ______ fire. Send ______ the Fire Brigade!
A. at – on B. on – off C. on – for D. at – off

9. They succeeded _______ escaping ______ the burning house.
A. on – off B. in – from C. in – during D. on – from

10. I'm not interested ______ anything that happened ______ the very remote past.
A. on – in B. in – on C. on – on D. in – in

Exercise 19: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. We are appreciated ________ their efforts.
A. for B. of C. in D. over

2. _______ waiting for half an hour, he went home in disgust. ______ he was sorry he hadn't waited longer.
A. After – After B. Then – After
C. Then – Afterwards D. After – Afterwards

3. He was acquitted ________ the crime.
A. into B. of C. upon D. over

4. Go back _______ the hotel and wait there _______ I call for you.
A. until – until B. to – since
C. to – until D. to – afterwards

5. The simplification guide was adapted ________ our use.
A. to B. from C. over D. for

6. I don't object _______ lending you my pen, but wouldn't it be better if you had a pen _______ your own?
A. for – of B. to – on C. to – with D. of – of

7. All members must conform ________ the regulations.
A. about B. from C. with D. to

8. I was ______ the impression that I had paid you _____ the work you did ______ me.
A. on – for – for B. under – for – for
C. under – on – for D. under – for – with

9. One member did not concur __________ others.
A. about B. with C. on D. over

10. The professor interceded __________ the authorities on my behalf.
A. at B. on C. with D. for

Exercise 20: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. It's typical ________ him to forget my birthday.
A. for B. of C. with D. to

2. A decrease ______ the supply _____ goods usually results in an increase ______ the price ______ the goods.
A. on – of – in – of B. in – of – in – of
C. in – of – on – of D. on – of – in – for

3. People's reliance _______ automobiles as their chief form _______ transformation has increased over the years.
A. on – of B. for – of
C. upon – of D. A and C are correct

4. The professor gave us several examples _____ that phenomenon.
A. for B. of C. about D. to

5. The demand _______ personal computers continues to grow.
A. for B. of C. in D. with

6. Once scientists fully understand the cause _____ the disease, it becomes easier for them to find a cure _____ it.
A. for – for B. of – of C. of – to D. of – for

7. Have you had much experience ______ computers?
A. with B. in C. for D. about

8. This is an exception ______ the general rule.
A. with B. on C. over D. to

9. How do you account ______ this discrepancy?
A. on B. for C. of D. in

10. We could sell the balloon high ______ the town.
A. onto B. on C. up D. above

Exercise 21: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. He threw stones _______ his attackers, trying to drive them _______.
A. to – away B. at – away
C. at – off D. B and C are correct

2. What _____ taking the day _____ and spending it _____ the seaside?
A. about – off – at B. about – off – by
C. for – off – at D. A and B are correct

3. This regulation doesn't apply ______ you. You're ______ 18.
A. to – under B. for – below
C. to – beneath D. for – under

4. What's the difference ______ these two cars?
A. among B. between C. from D. with

5. It's usually Sarah who deals ______ all the little problems.
A. on B. about C. into D. with

6. John is very brilliant _______ crosswords.
A. with B. for C. at D. about

7. He opened the door _____ a rusty key and went down the steps ____ the cellar, followed _____ Bill _____ a torch.
A. with – into – by – with B. with – to – by – with
C. with – into – by – of D. A and B are correct

8. He said he was ______ debt and asked me _____ a loan _____ $50.
A. on – for – of B. in – for – with
C. on – by – of D. in – for – of

9. The company wants us to pay for the goods _______ advance.
A. with B. in C. at D. on

10. We started off ______ midnight and reached the place of destination _____ twelve hours _____ noon.
A. at – at – at B. at – in – on
C. at – on – at D. at – in – at

X. ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MẪU & DANH ĐỘNG TỪ

1. Một số động từ thông dụng theo sau là "to-infinitive":

afford *(có đủ khả năng)*	I can't afford to buy the car.
agree *(đồng ý)*	He agreed to pay the cost.
aim *(nhằm mục đích)*	They aim to increase income tax by 20%.
appear *(dường như)*	The police appeared not to know the accident.
arrange *(sắp xếp)*	We arranged to meet him tomorrow morning.
ask *(yêu cầu)*	The customer asked to see the manager.
attempt *(cố gắng)*	We will attempt to send it to you at once.
beg *(van xin)*	He begged to be told the truth.
choose *(lựa chọn)*	We choose to stay at a cheap hotel.
claim *(tuyên bố)*	I don't claim to be an expert in Internet.
decide *(quyết định)*	He decided to see her this afternoon.
demand *(đòi hỏi)*	I demanded to read the document first.
fail *(thất bại)*	Mary failed to pass her final examination.
hesitate *(do dự)*	Don't hesitate to ask me if you have trouble.
hope *(hi vọng)*	We hope to finish the project this month.
intend *(dự định)*	They intend to take immediate action.
manage *(xoay xở)*	We managed to cross the river before dark.
offer *(đề nghị)*	John offered to do the washing-up.
plan *(có kế hoạch)*	They planned to build a new airport.
prepare *(chuẩn bị)*	We are preparing to make a plan for the trip.
pretend *(giả vờ)*	The soldiers pretended to withdraw.
promise *(hứa)*	My parents promised to send me some money.
refuse *(từ chối)*	The director refused to offer him the job.
seek *(cố tìm cách)*	They sought to bring the conflict to an end.
seem *(dường như)*	The ship seemed to be sinking.
struggle *(tranh đấu)*	She struggled to achieve success as an actress.
tend *(có xu hướng)*	Many people tend to spend less nowadays.
threaten *(đe doạ)*	The terrorists threatened to kill the hostage.
volunteer *(tình nguyện)*	The young man volunteered to help us.
want *(muốn)*	Does anyone want to say something?
wait *(chờ đợi)*	We are waiting to go.
wish *(mong ước)*	We all wish to live a longer life.

2. Một số động từ thông dụng theo sau là "gerund":

admit *(thừa nhận)*	The man admitted having stolen the car.

advise *(khuyên)*	I'd advise buying your tickets well in advance.
allow *(cho phép)*	We never allow smoking in this office.
appreciate *(trân trọng)*	I don't appreciate being treated like that.
avoid *(tránh)*	She avoided meeting him again.
can't help *(không tránh khỏi)*	When I see him, I can't help laughing
can't stand *(không chịu đựng được)*	I can't stand working with him.
consider *(xem xét)*	John has considered going to America.
delay *(hoãn)*	We delay paying the rent until next week.
deny *(từ chối)*	The boy denied having stolen the bag.
discuss *(thảo luận)*	We'll discuss building a new school.
enjoy *(thích)*	We enjoy walking together on the beach.
fancy *(mong ước)*	Do you fancy going out somewhere?
finish *(hoàn thành)*	Linda finished writing the annual report.
give up *(từ bỏ)*	Pete gained weight when he gave up smoking.
imagine *(tưởng tượng)*	She imagined living in a beautiful villa.
involve *(bao gồm)*	The test involves answering questions.
keep (on) *(tiếp tục)*	We kept (on) walking for hours on the beach.
mind *(để ý)*	I don't mind walking if it's fine.
miss *(bỏ lỡ)*	The goalkeeper missed stopping the ball.
postpone *(hoãn)*	The company postponed signing the contract.
practise *(luyện tập)*	She practiced playing the piano two hours a day.
prohibit *(cấm)*	The policy prohibits smoking in public places.
quit *(chấm dứt)*	The doctor advised him to quit smoking.
recall *(nhớ lại)*	I can't recall meeting her before.
recommend *(đề nghị)*	We recommend checking the report carefully.
report *(báo cáo)*	The neighbor reported seeing him doing that.
resist *(chống lại)*	The Parliament resisted increasing income tax.
resent *(bực tức)*	He resents being treated like a child.
resume *(tiếp tục)*	He resumed reading after a while.
suggest *(đề nghị)*	They suggested going by train.
tolerate *(chịu đựng)*	She refused to tolerate being called a liar.

3. Động từ được theo sau bởi *infinitive* hoặc *gerund*.

– Infinitive/Gerund không làm thay đổi nghĩa.

Các động từ như: ***begin*** (bắt đầu), ***start*** (bắt đầu), ***bother*** (bận tâm), ***continue*** (tiếp tục), ***propose*** (đề nghị) + infinitive/gerund mà ý nghĩa không thay đổi.

Ví dụ: *I started to work/ working there five years ago.*

✪ **Chú ý**: Khi các động từ này ở thì tiếp diễn thì bắt buộc dùng *infinitive*.

Ví dụ: *It was starting to rain.*

– Infinitive/Gerund làm thay đổi nghĩa.

REMEMBER/FORGET

remember/forget to do something: diễn tả một việc cần phải làm

remember/forget doing something: diễn tả một sự việc trong quá khứ

Ví dụ: *Remember to turn off the lights before going out.*

I always remember meeting you for the first time.

REGRET

regret to do something: dùng để thông báo một tin xấu

regret doing something: hối tiếc về một sự việc trong quá khứ

Ví dụ: *We regret to tell you that you have failed the test.*

I regret going to that party. It was so boring.

TRY/ATTEMPT

try/attempt to do something: cố gắng làm điều gì đó

try/attempt doing something: thử làm điều gì đó

Ví dụ: *I tried to open the door but I couldn't.*

Why don't you try using another key?

STOP

stop to do something: dừng để làm việc khác

stop doing something: dừng một việc đang làm

Ví dụ: *I stopped to do my homework.*

The doctor said I should stop smoking.

GO ON

go on to do something: tiếp tục làm một việc khác

go on doing something: tiếp tục việc đang làm

Ví dụ: *After receiving the test paper, they went on to do it.*

They went on knocking at the door after a short pause.

MEAN

mean to do something: có ý định

mean doing something: có nghĩa là, liên quan đến

Ví dụ: *She means to work for that company.*

I need the report tomorrow. It means staying up late tonight to finish it.

NEED/WANT

need/want to do something: diễn tả ý chủ động

need/want doing something: diễn tả ý bị động

Ví dụ: *I need to cut my hair.*

My hair needs cutting.

LIKE/LOVE/HATE

like/love/hate to do something: diễn tả một điều thích làm/ghét làm trong trường hợp cụ thể

like/love/hate doing something: diễn tả một sở thích chung

Ví dụ: *I like to go fishing in this weather.*

I like going/to go fishing.

– Động từ chỉ giác quan (verbs of perception).

Các động từ chỉ giác quan: **see, watch, hear, smell, taste, feel, notice…**

Động từ chỉ giác quan + Verb-ing: khi nhận biết thì hành động đang diễn tiến chưa hoàn tất.

Động từ chỉ giác quan + bare infinitive: khi nhận biết thì hành động đã hoàn tất.

Ví dụ:

*They saw the man **running** away.* (They still saw him.)

*They saw the man **run** away.* (They couldn't see him, but he had escaped.)

4. Một số động từ thông dụng theo sau bởi tân ngữ và "to-infinitive":

advise *(khuyên)*	They advised me to go to the doctor.
allow *(cho phép)*	John allowed me to use his motorbike.
ask *(yêu cầu)*	I asked him to post the letter this morning.
beg *(cầu xin)*	He begged her to come and stay with him.
cause *(gây ra)*	Inflation caused prices to rise sharply.
challenge *(thách thức)*	He challenged me to swim across the river.
convince *(thuyết phục)*	They convinced him to give up the project.
dare *(thách đố)*	He dared me to do better than he had done.
encourage *(khuyến khích)*	My father encouraged me to study better.
expect *(mong đợi)*	We expect you to come on time.
forbid *(cấm đoán)*	They forbid him to leave.
force *(ép buộc)*	The investigator forced him to speak the truth.
hire *(thuê mướn)*	The owner hired her to clean the toilets.
instruct *(chỉ dẫn)*	We instructed him to keep the door locked.
invite *(mời)*	We'd like to invite you to attend the meeting.
need *(cần)*	We need you to help us.
order *(ra lệnh)*	The judge ordered the man to pay a fine.
permit *(cho phép)*	They permitted the workers to leave early.
persuade *(thuyết phục)*	I persuade her to come and see me.
remind *(nhắc)*	Mother reminded me to turn off the lights.
require *(đòi hỏi)*	The director required her to submit her report.
teach *(dạy bảo)*	He taught me to dance.
tell *(bảo)*	We told him to sit down and wait.
urge *(thúc giục)*	I urged him to apply for a job.
want *(muốn)*	We all want you to be happy.
warn *(cảnh báo)*	I warned him not to drink so much.

5. Một số động từ theo sau bởi tân ngữ và "bare infinitive":

make *(bảo, buộc)*	The secretary made me fill in the form.
let *(để cho)*	The mother let her children play in the yard.
have *(nhờ, sai bảo)*	I had the maid clean up my room.

Bài tập ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MẪU & DANH ĐỘNG TỪ

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. The television programmes we allow ______ influence their learning.
A. a children to watch　　B. our children to watch
C. our children watch　　D. our children watching

2. They didn't stop ______ until 11.30 pm when there was a power cut.
A. singing and dancing　　B. to sing and dance
C. to sing and dancing　　D. singing and dance

3. When his wife arrived home after a hard day at work, he has sitting on the sofa ______ .
A. watched TV　　B. watch TV
C. was watching TV　　D. watching TV

4. "You are lucky. You haven't got a child ______," said the woman.
A. for looking after　　B. looking after
C. to look after　　D. look after

5. A cat suddenly ran across the street. Fortunately, he managed ______ just in time.
A. to stop　　B. stopping
C. to have stopped　　D. stopped

6. Phosphates ______ to most land in our country.
A. need added　　B. need to add
C. need to be added　　D. need to adding

7. Whenever those two ladies meet, they stop ______.
A. talking　　B. talk　　C. to talking　　D. to talk

8. It's still raining. I'd rather ______ home and watch football on TV.
A. to stay　　B. staying at　　C. stay　　D. stayed at

9. I think I hear someone ______ the back windows. Do you hear it, too?
A. trying open　　B. trying to open
C. tried opening　　D. try opened

10. John hoped to finish ______ two of his essays before the deadline.
A. written　　B. write　　C. to write　　D. writing

Exercise 2: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. One of the least effective ways of storing information is learning ____ it.
A. how repeat　　B. repeating　　C. to repeat　　D. repeat

2. Most of the participants can't help ______ why the president spoke so angrily.
A. wonder　　B. wondering　　C. to wonder　　D. wondered

3. The woman meant ______ a newspaper but she didn't see anyone ____ it.
A. to buy – to sell　　B. to buy – selling
C. buying – selling　　D. buying – to sell

4. The spokesman began by ______ them where the mountain was, and went on ______ about its history.
A. telling – talking　　B. tell – talk
C. told – talked　　D. to tell – to talk

5. I was very angry. My friend John refused ______ me a lift as he had promised.
A. give B. to give C. giving D. gave

6. The film wasn't very good. The audience started ________ before it was over.
A. leaving B. to leave
C. leave D. Both A and B are correct.

7. After walking for two hours the guide stopped to let the others _____ with them.
A. caught up B. to catch up C. catching up D. catch up

8. What do you remember ______ when you were a little boy?
A. do B. doing
C. to do D. Both B and C are correct

9. Linda regrets ______ to her mother's advice. She was right.
A. not listen B. not to listen C. not listening D. to not listen

10. I can never forget _____ our team score the winning goal in the final game against Thailand.
A. watching B. to watch
C. watch D. Both A and B are correct

Exercise 3: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. My friend forgot _____ a book back to the library, so she had to pay a fine.
A. take B. to take C. taking D. to be taken

2. Would you please remind her ______ me tomorrow morning?
A. calling B. to call C. call D. to calling

3. John volunteered _____ the food supply to the victims in the flood area.
A. take B. to take C. taking D. to be taken

4. My friend Mary is a blabbermouth! She can't resist _____ everyone what she heard from me.
A. tell B. to tell C. telling D. to telling

5. The man finally admitted ______ responsible for the accident last week.
A. to be B. for to be C. for being D. being

6. The union members discussed ______ the next meeting until next week.
A. postponing B. to postpone C. postpone D. to postponing

7. I have been having a lot of trouble with my old car the last couple of months. I am thinking about _____ a new one.
A. to buy B. buy C. buying D. being bought

8. Mary appeared ______ but she wasn't. she was only pretending.
A. to asleep B. to be asleep C. being asleep D. be asleep

9. Johnny is only nine, but he intends _____ a singer when he grows up.
A. be B. to be
C. being D. Both B and C are correct.

10. It was cold and snowy last Sunday, so we postponed _____ the botanical gardens until next Sunday.
A. visiting B. to visit C. visited D. being visited

Exercise 4: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I hope ______ all of my courses this term. So far my grades have been pretty good.
A. passing B. to pass C. pass D. being passed

2. My father continued _____ his book even though the children were making a lot of noise.
A. read B. and reading C. and read D. reading

3. Linda can't stand ______ in a room with all of the windows closed.
A. sleep B. sleeping C. slept D. being slept

4. It is raining hard this week but Tom expects _____ with his friends this weekend.
A. to go and fish B. to go fishing
C. going fishing D. to go to fish

5. When my teacher is listening to someone who is speaking English very fast, he nods his head and pretends _____.
A. understanding B. to understand
C. understanding it D. to be understood

6. After the operation, the doctors wouldn't let him _____ out of bed for three days.
A. get B. to get C. getting D. gets

7. She always puts off ______ the dinner dishes until the next morning.
A. to wash B. washing C. wash D. and washes

8. After Ann got a speeding ticket and had to pay a big fine, she decided _____ over the speed limit on interstate highways.
A. to stop driving B. to stop to drive
C. stopping to drive D. stopping driving

9. Graduate students often spend their weekends _____ data for their research.
A. gather B. to gather C. gathering D. to gathering

10. I can feel something _____ up my leg. It must be an insect.
A. crawling B. crawl C. to crawl D. crawled

Exercise 5: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I meant ______ the car with petrol before we left.
A. filling B. fill C. to be filled D. to fill

2. It's not worth ______ out now. It's much too late.
A. to go B. go C. going D. gone

3. Language permits us ______ our heritage through literature narratives.
A. preserve B. preserving C. to preserve D. to preserving

4. She dislikes ______ by crowds of people.
A. to surround B. surrounded
C. being surrounded D. be surrounded

5. Susan is in the kitchen looking for something ______.
A. for eating B. to eating C. to eat D. eating

6. The other motorist drove right in front of me. I couldn't avoid _______ his car.
A. to hit B. hitting C. hit D. from hitting

7. There are people who can't help _____ when they see someone ______ on a banana skin.
A. laugh – slip B. to laugh – slip
C. laughing – slipping D. laughing – slip

8. There is only one student in the classroom _____ his lesson.
A. prepare B. to prepare C. was preparing D. preparing

9. This examination will test your ability ______ written English.
A. to understand B. of understanding
C. understand D. understanding

10. Ann was very surprised to find the door unlocked. She remembered _____ it before she left.
A. to lock B. locking C. lock D. she locks

Exercise 6: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I regret _____ that the sight-seeing tour has been cancelled because of the bad weather.
A. to tell you B. telling you C. to say you D. saying you

2. I would advise you ______ that young man in spite of his charming manner.
A. to not trust B. to never trust C. never to trust D. never trust

3. He refused ______ us the reason why he didn't come to the class meeting last week.
A. telling B. to tell C. told D. having told

4. He won a lottery, and his girlfriend suggested _____ the world.
A. to travel around B. travelling in
C. travelling around D. that they travelling around

5. His parents insisted ______ a medical training course.
A. on him taking B. on taking him
C. him to take D. on him to take

6. Luckily, she remembered ______ up with petrol, so she didn't run out on the way there.
A. to fill B. filling C. filled D. having filled

7. The doctor advised him ______ and to take up some sport.
A. to stop smoke B. stop smoking
C. to stop smoking D. to stop to smoke

8. The children's mother warned them ______ near the river.
A. not to go B. to not go C. not going D. don't go

9. The teachers have had some problems ______ return the papers to the students.
A. to decide when to B. deciding when to
C. deciding D. deciding when

10. Who is the woman talking to Mr. Lee? I don't recall ______ her around the office.
A. to have seen B. seeing C. to see D. being seen

Exercise 7: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. She can't stand ________ under such terrible conditions.
A. working B. to work C. to be working D. work

2. It is no use _________ over spilt milk.
A. crying B. to cry C. to be crying D. cried

3. ESL students from Asia often have great difficulty _______ some English sounds.
A. to pronounce B. in pronouncing
C. pronouncing D. B and C are correct

4. She preferred _________ rather than give up.
A. die B. dying C. to die D. to be die

5. He prefers ________ a walk to ________ TV at home.
A. taking – watching B. take – watch
C. taking – to watch D. take – watching

6. The doctor persuaded the patient ________ in hospital for 3 more days.
A. staying B. to stay C. being stayed D. stay

7. Tell her ________ for school again.
A. not late B. not being late
C. not to be late D. not be late

8. It is a busy season. The farmers have the tractors ________ all day long.
A. to run B. running C. run D. ran

9. We watched the little girl ________ across the street.
A. to walk B. walk C. is walking D. walked

10. The book is worth ___________.
A. reading B. being read
C. to be read D. A and B are correct

Exercise 8: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Having finished ______ the reading report, I began to listen to music.
A. to write B. to have written C. writing D. written

2. Don't risk _______ alone in the river.
A. to swim B. to swimming C. swimming D. swim

3. I'm considering ________ your invitation.

A. accepting B. to accept C. accepted D. accept

4. The boy pretended _________ an essay, but in fact he wrote nothing.

A. to be writing B. writing C. to be written D. to writing

5. I have never expected __________ such a strange thing in my life.

A. seeing B. having seen C. to see D. to be seen

6. Please let it _____ clearly. I am not used ______ something twice.

A. understand – to saying B. to understand – to say

C. be understood – to saying D. be understood – to say

7. Suddenly she burst out _______ with the words, "I'm sick and tired ______ soups and porridges for him. I can't go on ______ my best years."

A. crying – of making – wasting

B. to cry – to make – to waste

C. to cry – of making – wasting

D. crying – to make – wasting

8. Do not delay ________ him.

A. to answer B. to answering C. answering D. to be answering

9. I remember _____ the post office, but I forgot ______ the letter, which is still in my briefcase.

A. to enter – to post B. entering – posting

C. entering – to post D. to enter – posting

10. I've seen him _______ the office early this afternoon. He seemed ______ unhappy about something.

A. leave – to have been B. leaving – to have been

C. left – to have been D. A and B are correct

Exercise 9: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. A plane with an engine on fire approached the runway. __________ was frightening. There could have been a terrible accident.

A. Watch it landing B. Watching it land

C. To watch it to land D. Watching to land it

2. The customs officer opened the suitcase _______ if anything illegal was being brought into the country.

A. seeing B. for seeing C. see D. to see

3. Sometimes very young children have trouble _______ facts from fiction and may believe that dragons actually exist.

A. to separate B. separating C. to be separated D. for separating

4. Do you have an excuse _______ late to class two days in a row?

A. for to be B. for being C. to be D. being

5. John made me __________ him next week.

A. to promise to call B. to promise calling

C. promise to call D. promise calling

6. I got Mary ____________ her car for the weekend.

A. to let me to borrow B. let me borrow

C. to let me borrow D. let me to borrow

7. I'll never forget ________ that race. What a thrill!

A. to win B. win C. being won D. winning

8. No one has better qualifications. Linda is certain _______ for the job.

A. to choose B. having chosen

C. to be chosen D. being chosen

9. I was enjoying my book, but I stopped ______ a program on TV.

A. reading to watch B. to read to watch

C. to read for watching D. reading for to watch

10. Who is the woman talking to Mr. Hammond? I don't recall ______ her around the office before.

A. to have seen B. seeing C. to see D. being seen

Exercise 10: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I don't blame you for not ________ outside in this awful weather.

A. wanting to go B. wanting go

C. want to go D. to want go

2. I think I hear someone ______ the back window. Do you hear it, too?

A. trying open B. trying to open

C. try opening D. try to open

3. When Paul was questioned by the police, he admitted knowing about the embezzlement of funds from his company, but denied ____ in any way.

A. to be involved B. involving

C. having involved D. being involved

4. Mr. Davis was upset by _________ him the truth.

A. our not having told B. us to tell

C. we didn't tell D. not to tell

5. We considered _____________ after work.

A. to go shop B. going shopping

C. going to shop D. to go to shop

6. Jack offered ______ care of my garden while I was out of town.

A. take B. taking C. to have taken D. to take

7. Could you please come over? I need you __________ the refrigerator.

A. help me moving B. helping me to move

C. to help me move D. help me to move

8. I just heard that there's been a major accident that has all of the traffic tied up. If we want to get to the play on time, we'd better avoid _______ the highway.

A. having taken B. take C. to take D. taking

9. The painting was beautiful. I stood there _______ it for a long time.
A. for admiring B. being admired
C. admire D. admiring

10. Jim should have asked for help instead _______ to do it himself.
A. of trying B. to try C. try D. from trying

XI. QUÁ KHỨ GIẢ ĐỊNH & THỨC GIẢ ĐỊNH

Thì **quá khứ giả định** (past subjunctive):

- Động từ thường (ordinary verbs): dùng dạng quá khứ (*go* → *went*)
- Động từ tình thái (modal verbs): dùng dạng quá khứ (*can* → *could*)
- Động từ be: dùng were cho tất cả các ngôi

Thì quá khứ giả định được dùng trong câu "I wish" cho điều mong muốn ở hiện tại. Ta hãy xem cách dùng thì trong câu "I wish".

Mệnh đề danh ngữ đi sau động từ **wish** thường diễn tả một điều ước không có thực trong thực tế.

Cách dùng	Động từ	Ví dụ
Điều ước ở hiện tại	**wish + subject** **+ Past Subjunctive** hoặc **Simple Past** hoặc **Past Continuous**	*I wish I **had** a car. (I don't have a car now.)* *We wish it **weren't/wasn't** raining now (It is raining now.)* *I wish I **were/was** a teacher. (I'm not a teacher now.)*
Điều ước ở tương lai	**wish + subject** **+ would/could** **+ bare infinitive**	*I wish I **could go** to the party tomorrow. (but I can't go)* *She wishes you **would be** there with her next week. (but you won't be there with her next week)*
Điều ước ở quá khứ	**wish + subject** **+ Past Perfect** hoặc **Perfect Conditional**	*I wish I **hadn't gone** to that party. (but I went there)* *I wish you **would have told** me the truth. (but you didn't)* *They wish he **could have joined** that trip with them. (but he didn't)*

✪ Chú ý: "**If only**" (= Giá mà, giá như) được dùng như "**I wish**" nhưng mang sắc thái biểu cảm hơn.

Ví dụ: *If only you were here with me.* (I really want you here with me but you aren't.)

*If only I **hadn't met** you before.* (I so regret that I met you before.)

Thì **giả định hiện tại** (present subjunctive) dùng động từ nguyên mẫu hoặc **should** + động từ nguyên mẫu (cho tất cả các ngôi).

Ví dụ thì giả định hiện tại của **to be** là **be** cho tất cả các ngôi.

Thì giả định hiện tại được dùng trong một số câu cảm thán để diễn tả mong ước hoặc hi vọng.

Một số động từ thông dụng theo sau là thì giả định hiện tại là:

demand (that) = đòi hỏi (rằng)
insist (that) = nhất quyết (rằng)
request/ ask (that) = yêu cầu (rằng)
suggest/ propose (that) = đề nghị (rằng)
recommend (that) = giới thiệu/tiến cử (rằng)
advise (that) = khuyên (rằng)

Một số thành ngữ thông dụng theo sau là thì giả định hiện tại là:

it is important (that) = điều quan trọng là
it is necessary (that) = điều cần thiết là
it is essential (that) = điều thiết yếu là
it is vital (that) = điều quan trọng là
it is imperative (that) = điều cấp bách là

Ví dụ:

- *The teacher demands that we be on time.*
- (Thầy giáo yêu cầu chúng em phải đúng giờ.)
- *I insisted that he pay me the money.*
- (Tôi nhất quyết yêu cầu anh ta trả tôi số tiền đó.)
- *It is important that they be told the truth.*
- (Điều quan trọng là họ phải được cho biết sự thật.)

Bài tập QUÁ KHỨ GIẢ ĐỊNH & THỨC GIẢ ĐỊNH

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Yesterday I met a very beautiful girl I really want to see her again but I don't know how to go about it. I wish ________.
A. I didn't meet her yesterday B. I had known her address
C. I knew her address D. I will meet her tomorrow

2. I wish you ______ to me before you went and bought that car.
A. spoke B. have spoken
C. had spoken D. would have spoken

3. I wish I ______ that Gary was ill. I would have gone to see him.
A. had known B. know C. knew D. have known

4. If only he ______ harder, he wouldn't have lost his job.
A. worked B. would work C. had worked D. has worked

5. He always talks as though he ______ a public meeting.
A. addressing B. addressed
C. were addressing D. is addressing

6. He talks as if he ______ all the work himself, but in fact Tom and I did most of it.

A. was doing B. had done C. did D. has done

7. If only we ______ a car. I'm tired of the bad service of public transport.

A. were B. had C. have D. are

8. If only we ______ more time, we could have seen more of the country.

A. would have had B. have had

C. had had D. had

9. She treats us as if we ______ all idiots.

A. are B. had been C. have been D. were

10. The cheese looks as if rats _______ it.

A. nibbled B. were being nibbled

C. had nibbled D. nibbling

Exercise 2: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. I wish I _____ so much money when I was in town yesterday.

A. wouldn't have spent B. hadn't spent

C. wouldn't spend D. didn't spend

2. You talk as though it _____ a small thing to leave your country forever.

A. is B. were C. will be D. would be

3. Everybody feels sorry for him and says that "If only he _____ more time revising."

A. should have spent B. would have spent

C. had spent D. spent

4. He looks as though he ______ a square meal in his life, but in fact his wife feeds him very well.

A. has never got B. never gets

C. never got D. had never got

5. If only he _____ accept some help with the work instead of trying research.

A. can B. may C. would D. were

6. If only he _____ told us the truth in the first place, things wouldn't have gone so wrong.

A. had B. has C. would have D. should have

7. I wish I ______ to rewrite my essay. I only made it worse.

A. wouldn't have tried B. wouldn't try

C. hadn't tried D. didn't try

8. I wish I _____ you some money for your rent, but I'm broke myself.

A. can lend B. would lend C. could lend D. will lend

9. Last year the potato harvest was very disappointing but this year it looks ______ we shall have a better crop.

A. as though B. like that C. like D. to be that

10. That man has brought us nothing but trouble. I wish I _____ eyes in him.

A. would never have set B. had never set

C. would have never set D. would have set

Exercise 3: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. When he is asked to say about it, it is clear that he knows nothing about their secret but they treat him as if he ______ all about it.

A. knew B. had known C. would know D. must know

2. I feel terrible. The heavy truck raced by me at full speed. I feel as if I ______ over.

A. was run B. have been run

C. had been run D. was being run

3. She speaks English as though it ______ her native language.

A. is B. being C. were D. be

4. My sister says she can't come to the party with us. We wish she ______ her mind and ______ to come with us.

A. changed – decided B. would change – decide

C. will change – decide D. had changed – decided

5. The cat turned her head toward John and looked at him quizzically, almost as if she ______ what he said.

A. understands B. understood

C. had understood D. would have understood

6. This evening the surface of the lake is completely still. It looks as if it ______ of glass.

A. is made B. was made

C. were made D. has been made

7. Why didn't you tell me about this before? I certainly wish I _____ earlier.

A. would be informed B. was informed

C. were informed D. had been informed

8. I know a farmer who talks to his animals as if they ______ people.

A. are B. would be C. were D. had been

9. Ann is grown up now. You shouldn't speak to her as if she ______ a child.

A. is B. were C. had been D. would be

10. We became good friends almost immediately. After talking to each other for only a short time, we felt as if we ______ each other all of our lives.

A. knew B. had known C. know D. have known

Exercise 4: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. It is important that he ______ well in his exam.

A. does B. did C. do D. will do

2. I requested that he ______ because he was making so much noise.

A. should have left B. must have left

C. should leave D. would leave

3. The local council recommended that John ______ to the head of the department.
A. is appointed
B. was appointed
C. be appointed
D. could be appointed

4. It's necessary that the train _____ on time.
A. is
B. will be
C. would be
D. be

5. Rose suggested ______ a suit and tie when he went for the interview.
A. him to wear
B. he wear
C. he must wear
D. that he wears

6. She urged that her husband ______ the letter.
A. write
B. wrote
C. had written
D. has written

7. The doctor recommended that John ______ for a couple of days.
A. could rest
B. might rest
C. must rest
D. rest

8. The officer demanded that the soldiers ______ the hill.
A. captured
B. would capture
C. had captured
D. capture

9. We suggested that she ______ the 10.30 train immediately.
A. take
B. may take
C. might take
D. has to take

10. Our teacher insists that we ______ more careful in our writings.
A. are
B. were
C. would be
D. be

Exercise 5: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. The movie director insisted that everything about his productions _____ authentic.
A. would be
B. is
C. can be
D. be

2. It is essential that pollution ______ and eventually ______.
A. must be controlled – must be eliminated
B. be controlled – be eliminated
C. is controlled – is eliminated
D. Both B and C are correct

3. The students requested that the test ______, but the professor decided against a postponement.
A. be postponed
B. must be postponed
C. postponed
D. could be postponed

4. The director recommended that all the staff ______ anyone outside the company during the training session.
A. do not contact
B. cannot contact
C. must not contact
D. not contact

5. The recommendation that all people affected by the storm ______ immediately was approved.
A. must be evacuated
B. be evacuated
C. ought to be evacuated
D. had to be evacuated

6. Linda insisted that the newly-born baby ______ after her husband's father.
A. could be named
B. be named
C. must be named
D. ought to be named

7. It was such a beautiful evening that one of us suggested we ______ the meeting outside.
A. could have
B. had
C. might have
D. have

8. I requested that first-year students ______ to change their courses in the first two weeks.
A. would be permitted
B. be permitted
C. were permitted
D. are permitted.

9. His advisor recommended that he _______ at least three courses each semester.
A. takes
B. can take
C. should take
D. would take

10. It is important that he _____ to the director of the programme.
A. must speak
B. speak
C. would speak
D. speaks

Exercise 6: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. The law requires that everyone ______ his car checked at least once a year.
A. has
B. have
C. must have
D. be having

2. It is not necessary that he ______ an entrance examination to be admitted to an American university.
A. take
B. takes
C. must take
D. be taking

3. It is imperative that everyone _____ home immediately.
A. must return
B. return
C. returns
D. to return

4. It is essential that vitamins ______ either by foods or by supplementary tablets.
A. are supplied
B. be supplied
C. can be supplied
D. supplied

5. The City Planning Department proposed that the new highway _____ in the fiscal year 2015.
A. be built
B. will be built
C. would be built
D. is to be built

6. It is important that you ______ late.
A. not be
B. will not be
C. are not
D. be not

7. It is essential that no one _____ to the meeting hall without proper identification.
A. is admitted
B. can be admitted
C. be admitted
D. admitted

8. The manager asked that we _______ sure to lock all the doors before we left.
A. were
B. would be
C. be
D. must be

9. It is vital that no one else _____ about the secret military operation near the border.
A. know
B. knows
C. can know
D. could know

10. It is the recommendation of the consultants that the patient ______ under medical supervision.

A. treating B. treated C. be treated D. is treated

XII. SỰ HÒA HỢP GIỮA CHỦ TỪ VÀ ĐỘNG TỪ

(Subject-Verb agreement)

A. Nguyên tắc thông thường về sự hòa hợp giữa chủ từ và động từ:

- Chủ từ số ít + động từ số ít (Singular subject + singular verb)
- Chủ từ số nhiều + động từ số nhiều (Plural subject + plural verb)

Ví dụ: *My father has retired from work.*

They are working in the garden.

B. Chú ý sự hòa hợp giữa chủ từ và động từ trong một số trường hợp sau:

1. **Danh từ không đếm được** (uncountable nouns), kết hợp với động từ số ít:

*The grass **is** growing all over the field.*

2. **Các danh từ nối với nhau bằng liên từ *and*** kết hợp với động từ số nhiều.

*Rice and rubber from Vietnam **are** exported to many countries.*

*Bread and butter **were** bought in large quantities.*

Nhưng khi các danh từ tạo thành một ý tưởng duy nhất, chúng kết hợp với động từ số ít:

*Bread and butter **was** all we had.* (= bread with butter on it)

3. **Với các danh từ nối với nhau bằng *or, either…or, not… but, not only… but also*,** động từ kết hợp với danh từ gần nhất:

*Either Mary or I **come** to the party.*

*Not only alcohol but also cigarettes **are** banned in the campus.*

*Neither my friends nor I **am** in the school team.*

4. **Với các danh từ nối với nhau bằng *with, like, as well as, together with, along with, in addition to, other than*,** động từ kết hợp với danh từ đầu tiên (chính là chủ từ của động từ):

*The manager, together with his assistants, **has** arrived.*

*The kitchen, as well as the toilets, **is** painted in blue.*

5. **Sự kết hợp giữa chủ từ và các từ như *every, each, one*:**

Each/ every + danh từ số ít + động từ số ít

Each of/ One of + danh từ số nhiều + động từ số ít

Each student/Each of the students has to do homework.

6. ***Some, part, all, most, almost, the rest, the remainder of…* và các phân** số kết hợp với động từ số nhiều hoặc số ít tùy thuộc vào danh từ theo sau of:

- Động từ ở hình thức số ít nếu danh từ ở hình thức số ít.
- Động từ ở hình thức số nhiều nếu danh từ ở hình thức số nhiều.

*Most of the house **was** destroyed.*

*Most of the tomatoes **are** too ripe.*

*Some of the fruits **were** not fresh.*

*Three quarters of the earth's surface **is** water.*

*Only a third of the students **are** qualified for the new course.*

7. **Đại từ bất định** (indefinite pronouns) kết hợp với động từ số ít.

Đại từ bất định thường có dạng:

every- (everything, everyone, everybody)

some- (something, someone, somebody)

any- (anything, anyone, anybody)

no- (nothing, no one, nobody)

*Someone **has eaten** all the food.*

*Nobody **wants** to attend the meeting.*

8. **Các danh từ chỉ sự đo lường, thời gian, khoảng cách, các tựa đề sách** thường kết hợp với động từ số ít:

*Twenty kilometers **is** too far to walk.*

*Five minutes **is** not enough for me to do it.*

*A hundred thousand dollars **is** a big sum of money.*

9. Trong mẫu câu "**There + be + danh từ**" (Có...), động từ kết hợp với danh từ, nếu có nhiều danh từ thì nó thường kết hợp với danh từ đầu tiên:

*There **are** many books on the table.*

*There **is** a table and four chairs in the room. There **are** four chairs and a table in the room.*

10. Khi **từ để hỏi** (who, what, which), **cụm từ** hoặc **mệnh đề làm chủ từ** thì ta dùng động từ với hình thức số ít:

Who wants tea? – We all do, please.

What has happened? – Several things have happened.

What the boy wants now is a glass of water.

Reading books is one of my favorite hobbies.

11. **Danh từ tập hợp** (collective nouns) thường đi với động từ số ít nếu ta xét nó một cách toàn thể hoặc với động từ số nhiều nếu ta xét từng bộ phận/ thành viên của nó:

*The whole team **is** playing very well.*

*My family **is** a happy one.*

*My family **are** early risers.*

Danh từ tập hợp thường gặp:

army (quân đội)	*association* (hiệp hội)	*audience* (khán giả)
board (ban, ủy ban)	*choir* (đội đồng ca)	*class* (lớp học)
club (câu lạc bộ)	*college* (cao đẳng)	*committee* (ủy ban)
community (cộng đồng)	*company* (nhóm người cùng với nhau)	*congress* (quốc hội)
council (hội đồng)	*crew* (nhóm, đội...)	*crowd* (đám đông)

family (gia đình)	*gang* (băng nhóm)	*government* (chính phủ)
group (nhóm)	*jury* (hội đồng xét xử)	*military* (quân đội)
navy (hải quân)	*orchestra* (ban nhạc)	*staff* (toàn bộ nhân viên)
team (đội, nhóm)	*university* (đại học)	

12. Một số danh từ có hình thức số nhiều hoặc danh từ chỉ vật gồm hai thành phần như nhau kết hợp với động từ số nhiều:

goods (hàng hóa)	*belongings* (vật mang theo)
clothes (quần áo)	*earnings* (tiền kiếm được)
outskirts (vùng ven)	*surroundings* (vùng xung quanh)

scissors (cái kéo), *pincers/ pliers* (cái kìm), *shorts* (quần soóc), *trousers/ pants* (quần tây), *jeans* (quần gin), *glasses/ spectacles* (kính đeo mắt), *binoculars* (ống nhòm), *shoes* (giày), *sneakers* (giày để chơi quần vợt), *boots* (giày ống)

✪ Chú ý: ***A pair of*** + danh từ gồm hai thành phần (dạng số nhiều) + động từ số ít

Ví dụ: *A pair of binoculars **is** necessary for your trip.*

*Your new pair of jeans **is** really fashionable.*

13. Tên các môn học, căn bệnh, môn thể thao và một vài từ khác có tận cùng -s kết hợp với động từ số ít:

Môn học: *mathematics* (toán), *physics* (vật lí), *politics* (chính trị học), *economics* (kinh tế học), *statistics* (môn thống kê)

Căn bệnh: *measles* (bệnh sởi), *mumps* (bệnh quai bị), *rickets* (bệnh còi xương), *AIDS* (bệnh AIDS)

Môn thể thao: *athletics* (điền kinh), *gymnastics* (thể dục dụng cụ), *billiards* (môn bi-da), *darts* (trò chơi ném phi tiêu), *dominoes* (cờ đôminô)

Từ khác: *news* (tin tức, thời sự)

*Mathematics **is** my favorite subject.*

*Measles **is** a dangerous disease.*

*Dominoes **is** a good game for relaxing.*

14. Một số danh từ số nhiều không có tận cùng -s/es kết hợp với động từ số nhiều:

people (dân chúng), *children* (trẻ em), *women* (phụ nữ), *police* (cảnh sát), *cattle* (gia súc lớn như trâu, bò), *fish* (cá), *sheep* (cừu), *deer* (nai, hươu), *reindeer* (tuần lộc)

*Many young people **are** out of work now.*

*Sheep **were** grazing in the fields.*

15. Danh từ chỉ ngôn ngữ kết hợp với động từ số ít, **danh từ chỉ dân tộc** (the + nationality) kết hợp với động từ số nhiều:

*English **is** spoken in many parts of the world.*

*The English really **like** to drink tea.*

16. The number of + danh từ (dạng số nhiều) + động từ (dạng số ít)

A number of + danh từ (dạng số nhiều) + động từ (dạng số

*The number of days in a week **is** 7.*

*A number of students **were** absent yesterday.*

Bài tập sự hòa hợp giữa chủ từ và động từ

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Many a candidate _______ unsuccessful in the oral test.
   A. was B. aren't C. weren't D. were
2. The number of learners ________ not large; therefore, a number of headphones _______ available to them in the lab.
   A. are – is B. is – are C. are – are D. is – is
3. His choice of words ________ very good.
   A. are B. be C. is D. being
4. Anybody who ________ my keys will be given a reward.
   A. find B. finds C. are finding D. found
5. The Browns __________ here since 1950.
   A. are living B. has lived C. have been living D. has been living
6. John, as well as I, __________ a student.
   A. are B. were C. is D. has been
7. Not only John but his brothers ________ also in debt.
   A. is B. have C. was D. were
8. The majority of the TOEFL tests ________ difficult.
   A. are B. is C. be D. being
9. Local news ________ on TV every afternoon at 5:50 pm.
   A. were B. was C. is D. are
10. A number of sheep _________ died from a strange disease.
   A. have B. has C. is D. are

Exercise 2: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. The number of students _________ increasing now.
   A. are B. was C. were D. is
2. A number of students _________ playing table-tennis now.
   A. are B. was C. were D. is
3. Physics ________ my favorite subject.
   A. are B. is C. was D. have been
4. The boy, with his two companions, _______ the cherry tree now.
   A. has split B. have split
   C. is splitting D. are splitting
5. The writer and poet ________ going to preside over this meeting.
   A. are B. is C. have been going D. is to
6. Neither the mother nor the children _______ aware of the danger.
   A. were B. was C. is D. has been

7. She told me that she ______ happy for what she ______.
A. is feeling – did		B. was feeling – had done
C. feels – did		D. had felt – has been doing

8. The teacher said that Vietnam _______ to South-East Asia.
A. has belonged		B. had belonged
C. have belonged		D. belongs

9. He ________ he had read that story-book before.
A. told		B. has told		C. had told		D. said

10. A number of people ________ disappointed with the result of the football match.
A. are		B. is		C. was		D. were

Exercise 3: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. ________ moved to that city recently.
A. A number of Vietnamese have
B. A number of Vietnamese has
C. The number of Vietnamese has been
D. The number of Vietnamese have

2. Each of the reference ________ available in the school library.
A. books on that list is		B. books on that list are
C. book on that list is		D. book on that list are

3. Several ________ sleeping under a tree.
A. of lions were		B. lion was
C. of the lions was		D. lions were

4. Many of the _______ not used today. They are remnants of the past.
A. railroad tracks around here are
B. railroad's tracks around here is
C. railroad tracks around here is
D. railroad's tracks around here are

5. As we walked through the jungle, the _______ unusually quiet.
A. monkeys were		B. monkeys was
C. monkies were		D. monkies was

6. At the news conference, several reporters didn't get clear answers to _______ questions.
A. theirs		B. their		C. his and hers		D. his and her

7. Everyone who ______ a ticket should be in this line.
A. don't purchase		B. doesn't purchase
C. hasn't purchased		D. haven't purchased

8. There ________ in the world today.
A. is many new computer company
B. is many new computer companies
C. are many new computers companies
D. are many new computer companies

9. The quality of these recordings _______ very good.
A. is not		B. are not		C. were not		D. have not been

10. What _______ you used in picking a winner in the art contest?
A. is the criteria		B. are the criteria
C. are the criterion		D. are the criterions

Exercise 4: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. The science classes at this ________ difficult.
A. schools are		B. school is		C. school are		D. school's is

2. One of the ____________ from Italy.
A. student is		B. students are		C. student are		D. students is

3. ___________ to support the case against James?
A. Is there any proof		B. Are there any proof
C. Is there any proofs		D. Are there any proofs

4. You have to pay extra if you take too __________ with you.
A. much luggages		B. many luggages
C. much luggage		D. many luggage

5. ________ in your class have tickets for the lecture series?
A. Do any of the student		B. Does any of the student
C. Do any of the students		D. Does any of the students

6. Bob got tired. It's going to be difficult for him to find ______ job.
A. other		B. another		C. the other		D. the another

7. There ________ available in this area of specialization.
A. isn't a lot of job		B. aren't a lot of jobs
C. isn't a lot of jobs		D. aren't a lot of job

8. He made the soup by mixing __________ meat with some rice.
A. little		B. few		C. a little		D. a few

9. Many of the ____________ not expect to win.
A. participants in the race do		B. participants in the races does
C. participants in the race does		D. participant in the race does

10. The English _______________ strong traditions.
A. has many		B. have much		C. have many		D. has much

Chuyên đề 4:

CHỨC NĂNG GIAO TIẾP

Bài tập về chức năng giao tiếp bao gồm những mẫu đối thoại ngắn, thường là dạng hỏi và trả lời giữa hai đối tượng A và B. Mục đích của dạng bài tập này là chọn đúng phần khuyết để hoàn thành đoạn hội thoại ngắn này.

I. Thu thập và xác nhận thông tin

1. Câu hỏi Có-Không (Yes-No questions)

Câu hỏi: bắt đầu bằng các trợ động từ: *am, is, are, was, were, do, does, did, will, would, have, may, might, can, could….*

Câu trả lời: bắt đầu bằng "Yes" hoặc "No" và đưa thêm thông tin.

Ta cũng có thể trả lời bằng:

–*I think/ believe/ hope/ expect/ guese so.* (Tôi nghĩ/ tin/ hi vọng/ mong/ đoán thế.)

–*Sure/ Actually/ Of course/ Right…* (Dĩ nhiên/ Chắc chắn rồi.)

–*I don't think/ believe/ expect/ suppose so.* (Tôi không nghĩ/ tin/ mong/ cho rằng thế.)

–*I hope/ believe/ guese/ suppose not.* (Tôi hi vọng/ tin/ đoán/ cho là không.)

–*I'm afraid not.* (Tôi e rằng không.)

2. Câu hỏi chọn lựa (Or questions)

Câu hỏi: thường chứa liên từ "or" và yêu cầu phải chọn một phương án.

Câu trả lời: là câu chọn một trong hai sự lựa chọn được đưa ra trong câu hỏi. Ta không dùng từ "Yes" hoặc "No" để trả lời câu hỏi này.

Ví dụ: *Are they Chinese or Japanese? – They're Japanese.*
Pork or beef? – Beef, please./ I'd prefer beef.

3. Câu hỏi có từ để hỏi (Wh-questions)

Câu hỏi: bắt đầu bằng các từ để hỏi như *what, which, who, whose, where when, why, how…* để thu thập thông tin.

Câu trả lời: cần cung cấp thông tin nêu trong câu hỏi.

Ví dụ: *What did he talk about? – His family.*
What was the party like? – Oh, we had a good time.
Which of these pens is yours? – The red one.
How often do you go to the cinema? – Every Sunday.
Why did he fail the exam? – Because he didn't prepare well for it.

4. Câu hỏi đuôi (Tag questions)

Câu hỏi đuôi: thường dùng để xác nhận thông tin với ngữ điệu xuống ở cuối câu hỏi.

Câu trả lời: cũng giống như câu hỏi Có-Không.

Ví dụ: *Jane left early for the first train, didn't she? – Yes, she did.*
Peter made a lot of mistakes again, didn't he? – Right, he did.

5. Hỏi đường hoặc lời chỉ dẫn (asking for directions or instructions).

Lời hỏi đường:

- *Could you show me the way to…?*
  (Anh làm ơn chỉ đường đến…)
- *Could you be so kind to show me how to get to…?*
  (Anh có thể vui lòng chỉ đường đến…)
- *Is there a bank near here?/ Where's the nearest bank?*
  (Ở đây có ngân hàng không? Ngân hàng gần nhất ở đâu vậy?)

Lời đáp:

–*Turn left/ right.* (Rẽ trái/ phải.)

–*Go straight ahead for two blocks and then turn left.* (Đi thẳng qua hai dãy nhà rồi rẽ trái.)

–*Keep walking until you reach/ see….* (Cứ đi thẳng đến khi anh đến/ thấy….)

–*It's just around the corner.* (Nó ở ngay góc đường.)

–*It's a long way. You should take a taxi.* (Một quãng đường dài đấy. Anh nên đón ta-xi.)

–*Sorry, I'm new here./ I'm a stranger here myself.* (Xin lỗi, tôi mới đến vùng này.)

–*Sorry, I don't know this area very well.* (Xin lỗi, tôi không rành khu vực này lắm.)

Lời xin được chỉ dẫn:

–*Could you show me how to operate this machine?* (Anh làm ơn chỉ cho tôi cách vận hành chiếc máy này.)

–*Could you tell me how to…?* (Anh hãy chỉ cho tôi làm thế nào để…)

–*How does this machine work? Do you know?* (Cái máy này hoạt động thế nào? Anh có biết không?)

Lời đáp:

–*First,… Second, … Then, …. Finally, …* (Trước hết… Kế đến… Tiếp theo… Cuối cùng…)

–*The first step is…, then…* (Bước đầu tiên là…, rồi….)

–*Remember to….* (Hãy nhớ là….)

–*Well, it's very simple.* (À, đơn giản lắm.)

II. Quan hệ xã giao

1. Chào hỏi và giới thiệu (greeting and introducing)

Chào hỏi:

–*Good morning/ afternoon/ evening.* (Chào.)

–*Hi/ Hello. Have a good day.* (Chào. Chúc anh một ngày tốt lành.)

–*How are you?/ How have you been?/ How are the things?…* (Anh dạo này thế nào?)

Lời đáp câu chào hỏi:

–*Good morning/ afternoon/ evening.* (Chào.)

–*Hi/ Hello.* (Chào.)

–*Nice/ Pleased/ Glad/ Great to meet you.* (Hân hạnh/ Rất vui được gặp anh.)

–*Hi. I am Peter. And you?* (Chào. Tôi tên Peter. Còn anh?)

–*Have we met before?* (Trước đây chúng ta đã gặp nhau chưa?)

–*It's a lovely day, isn't it?* (Hôm nay là một ngày đẹp trời, phải không anh?)

Giới thiệu:

–*I would like to introduce you to.../ ... to you.* (Tôi muốn giới thiệu anh với.../ ... với anh.)

–*I would like you to meet….* (Tôi muốn anh được gặp gỡ với…)

–*This is….* (Đây là…)

–*Have you two met before?* (Trước đây hai anh đã gặp nhau chưa?)

Lời đáp câu giới thiệu:

–*How do you do?* (Hân hạnh được gặp anh.)

–*Nice/ Pleased/ Glad/ Great to meet you.* (Hân hạnh/ Rất vui được gặp anh.)

2. Lời mời (invitation)

Lời mời:

–*Would you like to ....?* (Anh có muốn…?)

–*I would like to invite you to…* (Tôi muốn mời anh…)

–*Do you feel like/ fancy having...?* (Anh có muốn…?)

–*Let me…* (Để tôi…)

Đồng ý lời mời:

–*It is a great idea.* (Ý kiến quá tuyệt!)

–*That sounds great/ fantastic/ wonderful/ cool/ fun.* (Nghe có vẻ hay đấy.)

–*Yes, I'd love to.* (Vâng, tôi rất thích.)

–*Why not?* (Tại sao không nhỉ?)

–*OK, let's do that.* (Được, cứ như thế đi.)

Từ chối lời mời:

–*No, thanks.* (Không, cám ơn.)

–*I'm afraid I can't.* (Tôi e rằng tôi không thể.)

–*Sorry, but I have another plan.* (Xin lỗi, nhưng tôi có kế hoạch khác rồi.)

–*I'd love to but…* (Tôi muốn lắm nhưng…)

–*Some other time, perhaps.* (Lần khác vậy nhé.)

3. Ra về và chào tạm biệt (leaving and saying goodbye)

Báo hiệu sự ra hiệu và chào tạm biệt:

–*I'm afraid I have to be going now/ I have to leave now.* (E rằng bây giờ tôi phải đi.)

–*It's getting late so quickly.* (Trời mau tối quá.)

–*I had a great time/ evening.* (Tôi rất vui/ có một buổi tối tuyệt vời.)

–*I really enjoyed the party and the talk with you.* (Tôi thật sự thích buổi tiệc và trò chuyện với anh.)

–*Thank you very much for a lovely evening.* (Cám ơn về buổi tối tuyệt vời.)

–*Good bye/ Bye.* (Tạm biệt.)

–*Good night.* (Tạm biệt.)

Lời đáp:

–*I'm glad you had a good time.* (Tôi rất vui là anh thích nó.)

–*I'm glad you like it.* (Tôi rất vui là anh thích nó.)

–*Thanks for coming.* (Cám ơn anh đã đến.)

–*Let's meet again soon.* (Hẹn sớm gặp lại nhé.)

–*See you later.* (Hẹn gặp lại.)

–*Good bye/ Bye.* (Tạm biệt.)

–*Good night.* (Tạm biệt.)

–*Take care.* (Hãy bảo trọng.)

4. Khen ngợi và chúc mừng (complimenting and congratulating)

Lời khen ngợi:

–*You did a good job!/ Good job!* (Anh làm tốt lắm.)

–*What you did was wonderful/ desirable/ amazing.* (Những gì anh làm được thật tuyệt vời/ đáng ngưỡng mộ/ kinh ngạc.)

–*You played the game so well.* (Anh chơi trận đấu rất hay.)

–*Congratulations!* (Xin chúc mừng!)

–*You look great/ fantastic in your new suit.* (Anh trông thật tuyệt trong bộ đồ mới.)

–*Your dress is very lovely.* (Chiếc áo đầm của chị thật đáng yêu.)

–*You have a great hairstyle!* (Kiểu tóc của bạn thật tuyệt!)

–*I wish I had such a nice house.* (Ước gì tôi có ngôi nhà xinh xắn như thế này.)

Lời đáp:

–*Thank you. I'm glad you like it.* (Cám ơn. Rất vui là anh thích nó.)

–*You did so well, too.* (Anh cũng làm rất tốt.)

–*Your garden is fantastic, too.* (Ngôi vườn của anh cũng tuyệt vậy.)

–*Thank you. I like yours too.* (Cám ơn. Tôi cũng thích...)

5. Cám ơn (thanking)

Lời cám ơn:

–*Thank you very much for…*(Cám ơn rất nhiều về…)

–*Thank you/ Thanks/ Many thanks.* (Cám ơn rất nhiều.)

–*It was so kind/ nice/ good of you to invite us….* (Anh thật là tử tế/ tốt đã mời chúng tôi…)

–*I am thankful/ grateful to you for….* (Tôi rất biết ơn anh vì…)

Lời đáp:

–*You're welcome.* (Không có chi.)

–*Never mind/ Not at all.* (Không có chi.)

–*Don't mention it. / Forget it.* (Có gì đâu. Đừng nhắc nữa.)

–*It's my pleasure (to help you).* (Tôi rất vui được giúp anh.)

–*I'm glad I could help.* (Tôi rất vui là có thể giúp được anh.)

–*It was the least we could do for you.* (Chúng tôi đã có thể làm được hơn thế nữa.)

6. Xin lỗi (apologizing)

Lời xin lỗi:

–I'm terribly/ awfully sorry about that. (Tôi hết sức xin lỗi về điều đó.)

–I apologize to you for….. (Tôi xin lỗi anh về…)

–It's totally my fault. (Đó hoàn toàn là lỗi của tôi.)

–I didn't mean that. Please accept my apology. (Tôi không cố ý làm thế. Xin hãy chấp nhận lời xin lỗi của tôi.)

–It will not happen again. I promise. (Tôi hứa là điều đó sẽ không xảy ra nữa.)

–I shouldn't have done that. (Lẽ ra tôi đã không làm thế.)

–Please let me know if there is anything I can do to compensate for it. (Hãy nói cho tôi biết là tôi có thể làm gì để bù đắp lại điều đó.)

Lời đáp:

–It doesn't matter. (Không sao đâu.)

–Don't worry about that. (Đừng lo.)

–Forget it. / No problem./ Never mind./ That's all right./ OK. (Không sao.)

–You really don't have to apologize. (Thật ra anh không cần phải xin lỗi đâu.)

–OK. It's not your fault. (Được rồi. Đó không phải là lỗi anh.)

7. Sự thông cảm (sympathy)

Lời diễn đạt sự thông cảm:

–I'm sorry to hear that…(Tôi lấy làm tiếc khi biết rằng…)

–I feel sorry for you. (Tôi lấy làm tiếc cho anh.)

–I think I understand how you feel. (Tôi nghĩ tôi có thể hiểu được cảm giác của anh thế nào.)

–You have to learn to accept it. (Anh phải học cách chấp nhận điều đó thôi.)

Lời đáp:

–Thank you very much. (Cám ơn rất nhiều.)

–It was very kind/nice/thoughtful/caring/considerate of you. (Anh thật là tốt/ tử tế/ sâu sắc/ chu đáo.)

III. Yêu cầu và xin phép.

1. Yêu cầu (making requests)

Lời yêu cầu:

–Can/ Could/ Will/ Would you please…..? (Anh làm ơn…)

–Would you mind + V-ing…? (Anh có phiền không nếu…)

–Would it be possible…? (Liệu có thể…)

–I would be grateful if you could…. (Tôi rất biết ơn nếu anh có thể…)

–I wonder if….. (Tôi tự hỏi không biết … có được không.)

Lời đáp:

Đồng ý:

–Sure/ Certainly/ Of course. (Dĩ nhiên là được.)

–No problem. (Không vấn đề gì.)

–I'm happy to. (Tôi sẵn lòng.)

Từ chối:

–I'm afraid I can't. I'm busy now/ I'm using it. (Tôi e rằng không thể. Bây giờ tôi đang bận/ tôi đang dùng nó.)

–I don't think it's possible. (Tôi cho là không thể được.)

–Is it OK if I do it later? (Lát nữa có được không?)

2. Xin phép (asking for permission)

Lời xin phép:

–May/ Might/ Can/ Could I…..? (Xin phép cho tôi…)

–Do you mind if I…?/ Would you mind if I…? (Anh có phiền không nếu tôi…)

–Is it OK if…..? (Liệu có ổn không nếu…)

–Anyone mind if… (Có ai phiền không nếu…)

–Do you think I can/ could….? (Anh có nghĩ là tôi có thể…)

Lời đáp:

Đồng ý:

–Sure/ Certainly/ Of course/ OK. (Tất nhiên rồi.)

–Go ahead./ You can. (Cứ tự nhiên.)

–Do it! Don't ask. (Cứ làm đi! Đừng hỏi nữa.)

Từ chối:

–I'm afraid you can't. (Tôi e rằng không được.)

–I don't think you can. (Tôi cho rằng không được.)

–No, you can't./ No, not now. (Không. Bây giờ thì không.)

IV. Than phiền hoặc chỉ trích.

Lời than phiền hoặc chỉ trích:

–You should have asked for permission first. (Lẽ ra anh phải xin phép trước.)

–You shouldn't have do that. (Lẽ ra anh không nên làm điều đó.)

–Why on earth didn't you listen to me? (Sao anh lại không chịu nghe tôi nhỉ?)

–You're late again./ You are being late recently. (Anh lại đi trễ. Dạo này anh cứ đi trễ.)

–You damaged my mobile phone! (Anh làm hỏng chiếc điện thoại di động của tôi rồi!)

–No one but you did it! (Anh chứ không ai khác làm điều đó!)

Lời đáp:

–I'm terribly sorry. I didn't meant that. (Tôi thành thật xin lỗi. Tôi không cố ý làm vậy.)

–I'm sorry but I had no choice. (Xin lỗi nhưng tôi không còn sự lựa chọn nào khác.)

–I'm sorry but the thing is…. (Tôi xin lỗi nhưng chuyện là thế này…)

–Not me! (Không phải tôi!)

V. Bày tỏ quan điểm của người nói.

1. Đồng ý hoặc không đồng ý (agreeing or disagreeing).

Đồng ý:

–I (totally/ completely/ absolutely) agree with you. (Tôi hoàn toàn đồng ý với anh.)

–Absolutely/ definitely. (Dĩ nhiên rồi.)

–Exactly! (Chính xác.)

–That's true./ That's it. (Đúng vậy.)

–You are right. There is no doubt about it. (Anh nói đúng. Chẳng còn nghi ngờ gì về điều đó nữa.)

–I can't agree with you more. (Tôi hoàn toàn đồng ý với anh.)

–That's just what I think. (Tôi cũng nghĩ thế.)

–That's what I was going to say. (Tôi cũng định nói vậy.)

Không đồng ý hoặc đồng ý một phần:

–You could be right but I think… (Có thể anh đúng nhưng tôi nghĩ…)

–I may be wrong but… (Có thể tôi sai nhưng…)

–I see what you mean but I think… (Tôi hiểu ý anh nhưng tôi nghĩ…)

–I just don't think it's right that… (Tôi không cho là điều đó đúng…)

–I don't quite agree because… (Tôi không hẵn đồng ý bởi vì…)

–You're wrong there. (Anh sai rồi.)

–Personally, I think that…(Cá nhân tôi thì cho rằng…)

2. Hỏi và đưa ra ý kiến (asking for and expressing opinions).

Lời hỏi ý kiến:

–What do you think about…? (Anh nghĩ gì về…?)

–Tell me what you think about… (Hãy cho tôi biết anh nghĩ gì về…)

–What is your opinion about/ on…? (Ý kiến của anh về… là như thế nào?)

–How do you feel about…? (Anh thấy thế nào về…?)

Lời đưa ra ý kiến:

–In my opinion,/ Personally,…(Theo tôi thì…)

–In my view, … (Theo quan điểm của tôi,…)

–It seems to me that… (Đối với tôi có vẻ là…)

–As far as I can say…(Theo tôi được biết thì…)

–I strongly/ firmly think/ believe/ feel that… (Tôi hoàn toàn nghĩ/ tin/ cảm thấy là…)

–I must say that… (Tôi phải nói rằng…)

3. Lời khuyên hoặc đề nghị (advising or making suggestions).

Lời khuyên hoặc đề nghị:

–If I were you, I would… (Nếu tôi là anh thì tôi sẽ…)

–If I were in your situation/ shoes, I would… (Nếu tôi ở vào hoàn cảnh của anh thì tôi sẽ…)

–It's a good idea to… (… là một ý hay đấy.)

–You should/ had better… (Anh nên…)

–It is advisable/ recommendable to… (Anh nên…)

–I would recommend that… (Tôi khuyên là….)

–Why don't you…? (Sao anh không…?)

–What about/ How about…? (Còn về… thì sao?)

–Shall we…?/ Let's… (Chúng ta hãy…)

4. Lời cảnh báo (warning).

Lời cảnh báo:

–You should/ had better…. or/ if…not… (Anh nên… nếu không thì…)

–You should/ had better…. Otherwise,… (Anh nên… Nếu không thì…)

Ví dụ: *You should wear a safety helmet while riding, or you'll get a fine.*
You shouldn't smoke in here. Otherwise, you'll ruin the carpet.

Lời đáp:

–Thank you/ Thanks. (Cám ơn.)

–I will do it. (Tôi sẽ làm thế.)

5. Lời đề nghị giúp đỡ (offering).

Lời đề nghị giúp đỡ:

–Can/ May I help you? (Để tôi giúp anh.)

–Let me help you. (Để tôi giúp anh.)

–How can I help you? (Tôi có thể giúp gì cho anh?)

–Would you like some help?/ Do you need some help? (Anh có cần giúp không?)

Chấp nhận lời đề nghị giúp đỡ:

–Yes, please. (Vâng.)

–That is great. (Thật tuyệt.)

–That would be great/ fantastic. (Thật tuyệt.)

–It would be nice/ helpful/ fantastic/ wonderful if you could. (Rất tuyệt nếu anh có thể làm vậy.)

–Thanks. That would be a great help. (Cám ơn. Được anh giúp thì tốt quá.)

–As long as you don't mind. (Được chứ nếu anh không phiền.)

Từ chối lời đề nghị giúp đỡ:

–No, please. (Không, cám ơn.)

–No. That's OK. (Không sao đâu.)

–Thanks, but I can manage. (Cám ơn, nhưng tôi làm được mà.)

Ví dụ minh họa 1: *Chọn phương án thích hợp tương ứng với A, B, C hoặc D để hoàn thành câu sau:*

– Mike: "Our living standards have been improved greatly."
– Susan: "________"

A. Thank you for saying so. B. Sure. I couldn't agree more.
C. No, it's nice to say so. D. Yes, it's nice of you to say so.

Hướng dẫn:

B Đáp án đúng. Mike đưa ra ý kiến của mình (**expressing opinion**) về mức sống hiện tại (living standards) và Susan đưa ra lời tán thành với Mike (**expressing degrees of agreement**).
Sure. I couldn't agree more. (= I agree with you completely!) (Chắc chắn thế. Tôi hoàn toàn đồng ý với anh.)

A "Thank you for saying so" được dùng để cám ơn một lời khen.

C "No" có nghĩa phủ định không dùng với "it's nice to say so" (Bạn thật tốt khi nói như thế.)

D "Yes, it's nice of you to say so" được dùng để đáp lại một lời khen.

Ví dụ minh họa 2: *Chọn phương án thích hợp tương ứng với A, B, C hoặc D để hoàn thành câu sau:*

– "Do you feel like going to the stadium this afternoon?"
– "________"

A. I don't agree. I'm afraid. B. I feel very bored.
C. You're welcomed. D. That would be great.

Hướng dẫn: *"Do you feel like going to the stadium this afternoon?"* (Anh có muốn đi đến sân vận động vào chiều nay không?) (Đây là câu đề nghị.)

D Đáp án đúng. *"That would be great."* (Điều đó thật tuyệt). Đây là lời đáp trước câu đề nghị.

A Phương án sai. *"I don't agree. I'm afraid."* (Tôi e rằng tôi không đồng ý). Câu này nêu sự không đồng ý, nhưng nếu người thứ hai không đồng ý với lời đề nghị thì người đó từ chối và nêu lí do.

B Phương án sai. *"I feel very bored."* (Tôi cảm thấy chán nản). Câu này không liên hệ chặt chẽ với câu đề nghị.

C Phương án sai. *"You're welcomed."* (Rất vui được tiếp anh.)

Ví dụ minh họa 3: *Chọn phương án thích hợp tương ứng với A, B, C hoặc D để hoàn thành câu sau:*

– Cindy: "Your hairstyle is terrific, Mary!"
– Mary: "____."

A. Yes, all right. B. Thanks, Cindy. I had it done yesterday.
C. Never mention it. D. Thanks, but I'm afraid.

Hướng dẫn: *Cindy: "Your hairstyle is terrific, Mary!"* Cindy: "Mary, kiểu tóc của chị tuyệt quá!"

Đây là lời khen ngợi và Mary đáp lại lời khen ngợi bằng cách cám ơn.

B Đáp án đúng. *"Thanks, Cindy. I had it done yesterday."* (Cám ơn Cindy. Hôm qua tôi nhờ người làm đầu lại.)

A *"Yes, all right."* (Vâng, được rồi). Đây là lời cho phép ai làm cái gì.

C *"Never mention it."* (Không có chi). Câu này dùng để đáp lại lời cám ơn.

D *"Thanks, but I'm afraid."* (Cám ơn, nhưng tôi e rằng không thể được). Đây là lời từ chối một yêu cầu.

Exercise 1: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. "Thank you for taking the time to come here in person." "________"
   A. It's my pleasure.
   B. I don't know what time that person comes.
   C. I'd love to come. What time?
   D. Do you have time for some gossip?
2. "I have a terrible headache." "________"
   A. Maybe I'm not going to the doctor's.
   B. Not very well. Thanks.
   C. Maybe you should take a rest.
   D. Not bad. I'm not going to the doctor's.
3. "Do you want me to help you with those suitcases?" "________"
   A. Of course, not for me. B. No, I can't help you now.
   C. No, those aren't mine. D. No, I can manage them myself.
4. "What does it cost to get to Manchester?" "________"
   A. It's interesting to travel to Manchester.
   B. It depends on how you go.
   C. I always go by train.
   D. I don't like to go by train.
5. "________" "Yes. Do you have any shirts?"
   A. Could you do me a favour? B. Oh, dear. What a nice shirt!
   C. May I help you? D. White, please.
6. "What's the best place to eat lunch?" "________"
   A. I'll have soup, please.
   B. There's a great restaurant at the corner of the street.
   C. I usually eat lunch at twelve.
   D. Twelve would be convenient.
7. "Maybe you can take a vacation next month." "________"
   A. Nothing special. B. You're welcome.
   C. It's very expensive. D. I don't think so. I'm teaching all summer.
8. "What do you think of your new DVD player?" "________"
   A. I love it. B. My brother gave it to me.
   C. It was a gift from my brother. D. I always put it there.
9. "How have you been recently?" "________"
   A. It's too late now. B. Pretty busy, I think.
   C. By bus, I think. D. No, I'll not be busy.

10. "Do you need a knife and a fork?" "________"
A. No, I'll just use a frying pan. B. No, I'll just use chopsticks.
C. No, I'll just use a can opener. D. No, I'll use a cooker.

Exercise 2: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. "You're so patient with us." "________"
A. Thanks, that's nice of you to say so.
B. Thanks. Have a nice trip.
C. I'm fine, thanks.
D. I know. I have trouble controlling my temper.

2. "Can I try your new camera?" "________"
A. I'm sorry I can't. Let's go now.
B. Sure. I'd love to.
C. Sure. But please be careful with it.
D. I'm sorry. I'm home late.

3. "________" "Yes, about ten cigarettes a day."
A. Do you smoke? B. What's the matter?
C. Anything else? D. Well, you should stop smoking.

4. "How well do you play?" "________"
A. Yes, I used to play tennis. B. I don't play very often.
C. No, I don't play very well. D. Pretty well, I think.

5. "________" "No, nothing special."
A. Did you watch the live show last weekend?
B. Did you do anything special last weekend?
C. Did you have a great time last weekend?
D. Did you go anywhere last weekend?

6. "Didn't you go to the conference?" "________"
A. No, I went there with my friends.
B. That sounds nice, but I can't.
C. Don't worry. I'll go there.
D. I did, but I didn't stay long.

7. "________" "No, thank you. That'll be all."
A. What would you like?
B. It's very kind of you to help me.
C. Would you like anything else?
D. What kind of food do you like?

8. "What was the last present that you received?" "________"
A. A fashion hat. B. It depends on the situation.
C. Several times. D. I think it's OK.

9. "Let me drive you home." "________"
A. No problem. B. Don't worry. I'm all right.
C. I usually drive home at five. D. It's me.

10. "May I leave a message for Ms Davis?" "________"
A. I'm afraid she's not here at the moment.
B. No, she's not here now.
C. She's leaving a message to you now.
D. Yes, I'll make sure she gets it.

Exercise 3: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. "Your boss looks like the aggressive type." "________"
A. Yes, he really wants to get ahead.
B. Yes, he's quite gentle.
C. Really? I've never seen him lie.
D. Right. He's so quiet.

2. "How can this dress be so expensive?" "________"
A. Yes, it's the most expensive. B. What an expensive dress!
C. You're paying for the brand. D. That's a good idea.

3. "I get impatient when the teacher doesn't tell us the answers." "________"
A. Yes, it's hard to think of the answers.
B. Yes, I wish she'd hurry up.
C. Yes, she should know the answers.
D. Yes, she speaks too quickly.

4. "Did you play tennis last weekend?" "________"
A. It's my favourite sport. B. I worked.
C. Do you like it? D. Would you like to come with me?

5. "May I speak to the manager?" "________"
A. He always comes late. He is not very well.
B. Thank you. Good bye.
C. I'm afraid he's not in. Can I take a message?
D. I'm afraid not. He works very hard.

6. "Where's the view? The advertisement said that this place has a great view of the sea." "________"
A. It has good facilities. B. It's convenient to see it.
C. You can find it very convenient. D. You can see it from the back.

7. "Why did you turn the air conditioner on?" "________"
A. I think it's bad condition. B. I can't see anything.
C. It's a little hot in here. D. It's a good idea.

8. "There's a baseball game tonight." "________"
A. Great. Let's go. B. I'm not a real fan of hers.
C. Don't mention it. D. Thanks. I'd love to.

9. "________" "Yes, I do. I like them a lot."
A. What do you think of tennis?
B. Do you like sports?

C. Do you prefer tennis or badminton?
D. How often you play tennis?

10. "________" "No, I'm not. I feel awful."
A. How are you? B. Are you feeling OK?
C. Is there anything wrong? D. What's the matter?

Exercise 4: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. "Where will you go on vacation?" "________"
A. Probably to the beach. B. The beach is nice, isn't it?
C. Probably I won't think of. D. I have a four-day vacation.

2. "________" "I think the vase is broken."
A. Can I help you? B. Why is it so expensive?
C. What is it? D. What's wrong with it?

3. "What do you do for a living?" "________"
A. I get a high salary, you know. B. I want to be a doctor, I guess.
C. I work in a bank. D. It's hard work, you know.

4. "I wonder if you could do something for me." "________"
A. It depends on what it is. B. What's it like?
C. No, thanks. D. I'm afraid I won't come.

5. "Haven't you put an advertisement in the paper yet?" "________"
A. I'm not sure. Really? B. I will, the first thing in the afternoon.
C. I'm with you there. D. I can get a paper for you right now.

6. "Have you noticed that the manager wears something green every day?" "________"
A. I know. He's a good manager. B. Sure. He will do that.
C. I know. He must like green. D. He'd rather do that.

7. "________" "No, I don't play the piano."
A. What kind of music do you like?
B. Do you play the piano?
C. Do you earn a lot by playing the piano?
D. What kind of music do you like?

8. "Excuse me. I'm your new neighbor. I just moved in." "________"
A. Sorry, I don't know. B. Oh, I don't think so.
C. I'm afraid not. D. Where to, sir?

9. "How about an evening riverboat tour?" "________"
A. No, it's good to do so.
B. Actually I've never gone on an evening riverboat tour.
C. No, I've never gone on an evening riverboat tour.
D. Actually I've gone twice this week.

10. "Can you come over after the show?" "________"
A. That would be nice. B. No, I didn't.
C. Please, go ahead. D. Why don't we go to the show?

Exercise 5: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. "I think the pants are a little big." "________"
A. Are they big enough?
B. You should get a bigger pair.
C. Yes, maybe a little.
D. Yes, they are not big at all.

2. "________" "Yes, it's OK. But could you clean your room first?"
A. Would you like to go to Helen's party this weekend?
B. Can I go to Helen's party this weekend?
C. What time does Helen's party begin this weekend?
D. I don't like the noise at parties.

3. "How late will the bank be open?" "________"
A. Its services are very good indeed. B. It is two blocks away.
C. It is not very far. D. It will be open until 6 pm.

4. "Will the maths teacher give us a test this week?" "________"
A. I doubt whether it's easy. B. Yes, the test was difficult.
C. I don't think he will come. D. No, he probably won't.

5. "What does this thing do?" "________"
A. I think it's a waste of money. B. It sure does.
C. It peels potatoes. D. I can use it well.

6. "________" "Yes, I have a date."
A. Do you have any plans tonight?
B. Can I have an appointment with Dr. Adams?
C. What's the time, please?
D. Do you have any plans tonight?

7. "May I take my break now?" "________"
A. No, you didn't break it. B. I think I need five minutes.
C. I'll be back in five minutes. D. Yes, of course.

8. "Do you support the proposal to build a new airport?" "________"
A. No, not really. B. No, I like it.
C. No, I don't think you're right. D. Yes, I'm against it.

9. "Your job is pretty routine, then?" "________"
A. Yes, sometimes it's a little boring. B. Yes, it's really exciting.
C. Yes, I love exciting work. D. Yes, it's different every day.

10. "________" "Oh, but it's boring."
A. Don't you like the news?
B. Would you prefer news to films?
C. I think you should watch the news.
D. You often watch the news, don't you?

Exercise 6: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. "I think the new resort will ruin the environment." "__________"
   A. I'm afraid so. B. Don't you think so?
   C. I agree. It sounds nice. D. Let's go there.
2. "__________" "OK. Where shall we go?"
   A. Shall we go the jazz concert?
   B. Have you done the shopping?
   C. Oh, reading books and going shopping.
   D. I want to go shopping.
3. "Would you mind sending those flowers to Mr. Brown?" "__________"
   A. Sure, I'll do it now. B. I would if I were you.
   C. He wouldn't mind. D. No, I can handle it myself.
4. "I've got two tickets for the show." "__________"
   A. Oh, anything else? B. Thanks. I can afford the tickets.
   C. That's great. When is it? D. Oh, let's go and get the tickets.
5. "Go two blocks and then you're there." "__________"
   A. Excuse me. How can I get there?
   B. OK, thanks.
   C. No, thanks.
   D. I'm sorry I don't know.
6. "Would you like to order now?" "__________"
   A. Yes, I like beef steak. B. Yes, I'd like beef steak.
   C. It's excellent. D. Yes, a table for five.
7. "__________" "Oh, really? Why?"
   A. What do I do next?
   B. When do you have class again?
   C. You have a doctor's appointment at ten.
   D. Our tomorrow's class has been canceled.
8. "Hi, I'd like some information about driving lessons." "__________"
   A. I'm afraid I can't drive. B. Sure, could I have your name and address?
   C. From 9 am to 5 pm. D. Sure, please do.
9. "I think golf is really great." "__________"
   A. Do you? I think it's boring. B. Don't you believe so?
   C. Neither do I. D. Almost every day.
10. "That was a boring book." "__________"
   A. No, it's very boring. B. Yes, it was exciting.
   C. It certainly was. D. I think it will be good.

Exercise 7: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. "Guess what! I just invited to the manager's house for dinner." "______"

   A. What's that? B. Oh, how nice.
   C. Well done. D. Really? I don't think so.
2. "So how are things at school, Tom?" "________"
   A. Well, I can't agree with you. B. I was not good at it.
   C. Oh, pretty good, actually. D. It's my pleasure.
3. "Do you fancy going to a movie this evening?" "__________"
   A. I'm sorry. I don't know that. B. Not at all. go ahead.
   C. Not so bad. And you? D. That would be nice.
4. "We've been here before." "________"
   A. Oh, have we? B. How nice!
   C. How lovely! D. No, we didn't.
5. "Could I speak to Ann?" "________"
   A. This is Daisy speaking. B. Can I take a message?
   C. Just a moment. I'm coming. D. I'm sorry. Ann's not in.
6. "Well, it's been nice talking to you." "________"
   A. Yes, nice to have met you too. B. Oh, yes. I'm afraid so.
   C. Nice to meet you, too. D. Have you been here long?
7. "Did you hear about the robbery the other day?" "________"
   A. Yes, it was great. B. No, what happened?
   C. Oh, no. D. Oh, sure. Thanks.
8. "I don't think we should exercise late at night." "__________"
   A. Neither do I. B. So do I.
   C. I think so, too. D. I don't, neither.
9. "Sorry, the manager is not here." "________"
   A. Can I take a message then? B. Can I speak to the manager, please?
   C. Can I leave a message then? D. Would you like to leave a message?
10. "It was very kind of you to help me out, Paul?" "_________"
   A. I'm glad you like it. B. Thanks a million.
   C. That was the least I could do. D. You can say that again.

Exercise 8: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. "I hear The Golden Bride is a very good film." "_________"
   A. Yes, it's very exciting. B. No, I don't hear that.
   C. Yes, it's boring. D. No, I hear it, too.
2. "What would you like to do at the weekend?" "__________"
   A. I like to do a lot. B. I can't stand it.
   C. I'd like to see a football match. D. I don't like the weekend.
3. "What's the matter with your son?" "________"
   A. He went to London two weeks ago.
   B. He's just graduated from university.
   C. He's got a headache.
   D. He did an experiment on a cure for the headache.

4. "What's the weather like in Vietnam now?" "__________"
A. It's sunny and hot. B. It's summer now.
C. We have dry season and rainy season. D. It often rains in spring.

5. Customer: "__________"
Salesman: "It's over there, next to the tea and coffee."
A. I'm sorry. I didn't buy the tea and coffee.
B. Can you help me? I can't carry the tea and coffee.
C. How much is a kilo of tea and coffee?
D. Excuse me, where's the tea and coffee?

6. "Can you come down and help me with my shopping?" "_____"
A. What are you doing? B. I am coming.
C. Can't you buy me some stamps? D. I am looking forward.

7. Mr. Simon: "What shall I do when I want to call you?"
Nurse: "__________"
A. Stay here and enjoy yourself.
B. You shall find the red button on the left.
C. Press the red button on the left.
D. I'd come every ten minutes.

8. "Would you like to meet Mrs. Gale?" "_______"
A. I don't know where she is living.
B. I'd love to.
C. I find it very interesting.
D. I can make an appointment with her.

9. "Do you need any help?" "__________"
A. No, thanks. I'm too weak to lift this box.
B. No, thanks. I'm strong enough to lift this box.
C. Yes, thanks. I'm too strong to lift this box.
D. Yes, thanks. I'm weak enough to lift this box.

10. "__________" "That's all right. I can mend it."
A. I'm sorry about the dirt.
B. I'm sorry I broke the cup.
C. I do apologize for her rudeness.
D. It was all fault. I shouldn't have said that.

Exercise 9: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. "Would you like another cup of coffee?" "________"
A. Me, too. B. It's a pleasure.
C. Very kind of your part. D. I'd love one.

2. "Would you like me to get you a taxi?" "__________"
A. Well. Let's see.
B. Yes, please, if it's not bother.

C. Yes, I see.
D. That would be delightful. Thanks.

3. "How does this machine work exactly?" "__________"
A. What have you done to it? B. It's my pleasure.
C. Certainly. D. It's very simple. I'll show you.

4. "Sorry, I'm late, Peter." "__________"
A. No, I wouldn't mind at all. B. Not on my account.
C. That's all right. D. Well, it's worth a try.

5. "Why don't you come over and see the new film with me?" "_________"
A. I'm afraid not. B. Great, I'd love to.
C. Sure. Please do. D. Wow! I didn't realize that.

6. "Do you like that advanced course you're taking, John?" "________"
A. No, thanks. B. By and large, yes.
C. Not me. I'm still waiting. D. No, not everyone.

7. "Do you know where Paul is?" "__________"
A. Pardon, I don't know. B. I'm afraid I don't.
C. Why not? D. It's no use.

8. "Do you mind if I use your phone?" "_________"
A. Not at all. Help yourself. B. You can say that again.
C. Sorry, I have no idea. D. Certainly, it's true.

9. "Do you want me to turn up the heater?" "_________"
A. It's my pleasure. B. No, go right ahead.
C. No, it's quite warm here. D. Thanks. I'll be right back.

10. "Excuse me, can you tell me where I can catch a bus to London, please?"
"_______"
A. Yes, please. B. Sorry, I'm new here myself.
C. Sure, go ahead. D. OK. Here's your ticket.

Exercise 10: Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. "You look nice in these blue jeans, Ann." "_________"
A. Don't mention it. B. Don't bother.
C. You can say that again. D. Thanks.

2. "I wonder if you could help me." "________"
A. Don't mention it. B. Really? How nice.
C. I'll do my best. What's up? D. No, what is it?

3. "You won the first prize, Jane." "__________"
A. You are very welcome. B. Congratulations!
C. You are kidding. D. Well done.

4. "Didn't you go to the cinema last night?" "_________"
A. Yes. I lost the ticket. B. Yes, I stayed at home.
C. No. It was too cold to go out. D. OK. That's a good idea.

5. "Well, I hope you enjoyed your meal." "__________"
A. Oh, absolutely delicious. B. Yes, that's right.
C. No problem. D. Yes, it's very interesting.

6. "Do you have the time, please?" "__________"
A. I'd rather not. B. Sure. I have plenty of time.
C. No, I haven't. I'm busy. D. Sorry. I don't have a watch now.

7. "Would you like to go to the cinema with me tonight?" "__________"
A. No, thanks. I'd better do it myself.
B. Thanks for asking. I just need an early night.
C. Why not? Staying at home is always what I want.
D. Are there any good programmes on TV tonight?

8. "How long will it take to finish that report?" "__________"
A. It's about 10 pages long. B. I agree. It's very long.
C. I'll report it to the manager. D. I'll have it finished by next week.

9. "What is Mary's new boyfriend like?" "__________"
A. He's from the next town. B. He's intelligent and humorous.
C. She likes him a lot. D. He likes tennis and baseball.

10. "It is very kind of you to invite us to your party." "__________"
A. No, thanks. B. Good idea, thanks.
C. OK. That's great. D. It's my pleasure.

Exercise 11: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. "__________" "Yes, there's plenty of room."
A. How big is the new wardrobe? B. How much is the new wardrobe?
C. It's a big wardrobe, isn't it? D. What is the new wardrobe like?

2. "What did you send to Mr. Smith?" "__________"
A. I lent him a report. B. I wrote a report for him.
C. I sent him to the scene. D. I sent him a copy of the report.

3. "How would you like your tea?" "__________"
A. With milk, please. B. Thank you very much.
C. Yes, please. Thanks. D. It's fantastic. Thank you.

4. "I'm sorry for being late." "__________"
A. Of course, not. B. That's for sure.
C. Yes, that's right. You can do it. D. You'd better not do it again.

5. "You stepped on my toes." "__________"
A. Really? I am glad.
B. I am sorry but I meant it.
C. Are you sure? Did you take any steps?
D. I'm terribly sorry. I didn't mean it.

6. "__________" "Really? What did he say?"
A. Is Tom the one who won the lottery?
B. Can you call Tom tomorrow?
C. Tom just went to California for a holiday.
D. I ran into Tom on the way to work.

7. "You look great in the new dress." "__________"
A. That's fine. Thank you. B. Yours is lovely, too.
C. You are welcome. D. Of course not. You bet!

8. "Sorry to interrupt you but could I have a word here?" "__________"
A. Could you just wait until I finish? B. Well, it's beyond my control.
C. Thank you for your listening. D. It's none of my business.

9. "What do you think of football?" "__________"
A. I am crazy about it. B. The football players are excellent.
C. It's none of my business. D. It's beyond my expectation.

10. "__________" "Every two months."
A. When do you see your dentist?
B. How frequently do you see your dentist?
C. How much time do you see your dentist?
D. How long ago did you see your dentist?

Exercise 12: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. "__________" "Unfortunately, I didn't."
A. Can you pick me up from the airport?
B. Did you do me favour? The suitcase is too heavy.
C. Did you install any anti-viruses software?
D. Have you bought any anti-viruses software?

2. "I had a great evening. Thank you." "__________"
A. Shall we go now? B. It was not really.
C. I'm glad you came. D. Did you enjoy enough?

3. "Have you checked your email today?" "__________"
A. No, I'll check it later. B. No, it costs a lot.
C. All right. I'll do it for you. D. Yes, it's getting extremely slow.

4. "When did you last meet Jane?" "__________"
A. We will meet again next week. B. The first time was two years ago.
C. She was in Rome. D. I don't remember.

5. "How far is the post office?" "__________"
A. It's quite old. B. You'd better call a taxi.
C. It's being constructed. D. It's quite slow. I think.

6. "You should have flown with the earlier flight." "__________"
A. Yes, I did. B. Thank you very much.
C. Oh, dear. I'm sorry to hear that. D. It was fully booked.

7. "__________" "I would love to. Thank you."
A. Would you like a cake?
B. Would you like to go to the new coffee shop with me?
C. Why do you spend so much time playing games?
D. What would you do if you could afford a car?

8. "I'm having some friends over for dinner this evening. Would you like to join us?" "__________"
A. Thanks, but I mustn't. B. Come on. It's your turn.
C. Can I take a rain check? D. As a matter of fact, I do.

9. "I wondered if you could give me a lift home." "__________"
A. Really? Are you sure? B. Of course, I can.
C. That's fine. Thank you. D. Well, it's raining outside.

10. "__________" "I am glad you liked it."
A. Thank you for a great evening. The food was so good.
B. I like your handbag. It's fantastic.
C. Could you drop by tomorrow, please?
D. It's going to rain. I have to leave now.

Exercise 13: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. "Oh, no. I can't find my credit card." "__________"
A. Don't worry. They will be back soon.
B. Try to remember when you last used it.
C. It is a nice surprise. You should be glad about it.
D. Thank you for letting me know.

2. "What is the purpose of your visit?" "__________"
A. My next stop is London. B. I've been here for two days.
C. I'm attending a meeting. D. I'm not sure.

3. "My apartment has a view of the river." "__________"
A. Yes, it is. B. I've been there.
C. Guess what. D. You are lucky.

4. "How does this machine work?" "__________"
A. I think it's quite heavy. B. Will you call the mechanic?
C. Plug it in and press the button. D. It's very expensive.

5. "__________" "It's Bill's."
A. Who borrowed your hat? B. Who said this is Bill's hat?
C. Who did you buy the hat for? D. Whose is the hat you are wearing?

6. "Do you know that this house is haunted?" "__________"
A. Yes, I would. Go ahead. B. Where on earth have you been?
C. Haunted? You are pulling my leg. D. Who was haunted?

7. "Let me give you a lift home." "__________"
A. Don't mention it. B. I like lifts.
C. If you don't mind. D. You're very welcome.

8. "Would you mind getting me a cup of coffee?" "__________"
A. I never drink coffee. B. No, thanks.
C. Cream and sugar, please. D. It's my pleasure.

9. "Why didn't you pay the telephone bill?" "__________"
A. Yes, of course. B. Thank you for all that.
C. I did. D. Well, it's too late.

10. "Could you wait until I come back?" "__________"
A. That would be great. B. I'd rather not. Sorry.
C. Yes. Please do it. D. Thank you very much.

Exercise 14: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. "Do you like rock music?" "__________"
A. It's not quite well. B. I'm very interested in them.
C. I do love it so. D. That's understandable.

2. "Can we start the meeting now?" "__________"
A. Yesterday we met all day. B. Yes, I was very glad to be here.
C. It takes five hours. D. No, not everyone has arrived yet.

3. "It wasn't an important meeting." "__________"
A. Do you think it's important?
B. Yes, it was a very well-organized meeting.
C. Right. The meeting was unimportant.
D. Right. The meeting was very important.

4. "__________" "Thank you. We are proud of him."
A. Your child is just a genius. B. Your kid is naughty.
C. I can give him a lift to school. D. Can we ask your child to take a photo?

5. "Is it very hot in summer here?" "__________"
A. Well, it's too late for the weather forecast.
B. Well, it depends on the rainfall.
C. I'm sorry. I missed the weather forecast.
D. Yes, we have high rainfall.

6. "__________" "Try some sleeping pills."
A. I just can't sleep well lately. B. Did you have a good sleep?
C. Do you have sleeping pills? D. Can you sleep well?

7. "I love strawberries. How about you? Do you like them?" "__________"
A. I'm pretty fine, thanks. B. No, I can't stand them.
C. No, they always stand there. D. No, I'm standing here.

8. "We've got time for a coffee, haven't we?" "__________"
A. Why not? B. I'll have tea, please.
C. A quick one maybe. D. I'd prefer tea.

9. "I'm sorry. I broke your vase." "__________"
A. I'd rather not. B. Don't worry. Things break.
C. OK. Go ahead. D. Yes, certainly.

10. "Are you going to Tom's farewell party tonight?" "__________"
A. That's surprising. B. I'm not sure yet. And you?
C. It's too hot in here. D. They are not my favourite.

Exercise 15: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. "Can you type this letter before you go home?" "__________"

A. No, thanks. I can manage.
B. Yes, you may.
C. Yes, I'll do it now.
D. No, not very quickly.

2. "You must be very pleased." "__________"
A. Thanks very much.
B. I don't have time.
C. Actually, it's a good idea.
D. Yes, I am.

3. "Would you mind closing the window?" "_________"
A. Yes, I think so.
B. I will do it now.
C. Yes, very soon.
D. Yes, you would.

4. "Shall we eat out tonight?" "_________"
A. That's a good idea.
B. That's in question.
C. It's very kind of you to invite me.
D. You're welcome.

5. "_________" "I can manage it. Thank you."
A. Can you manage the job?
B. Let me carry the big bag for you.
C. Do you need their support?
D. Can you give me a hand with this?

6. "__________" "It's not likely."
A. Is it important to attend university in a foreign country?
B. Would you be interested in attending university in a foreign country?
C. Is it possible to get a good job without attending university?
D. How important is it to attend university?

7. "How did you hear about his death?" "___________"
A. It's too bad.
B. Your mother told me.
C. I don't know him very well.
D. I'm not sure why he died.

8. "What do you think of those sunglasses? They are only $19.50." "________".
A. They are nice. Try them on.
B. They are made of supper plastic.
C. They are imported from Taiwan.
D. I don't know if they are good on you.

9. "Could have have some more orange juice?" "______"
A. Yes, all right.
B. Yes, please.
C. That's right.
D. Don't mention it.

10. "Would you mind if I shut the window?" "________"
A. Yes, please shut.
B. Yes, I wouldn't mind.
C. No, please do.
D. No, don't shut it.

Chuyên đề 5:

KĨ NĂNG ĐỌC

Trong các đề thi tốt nghiệp Trung học Phổ thông (THPT) và thi tuyển sinh vào đại học, cao đẳng có hai dạng bài tập đọc hiểu chính:

– Dạng điền từ vào chỗ trống (guided cloze reading), nghĩa là chọn một đáp án thích hợp cho mỗi chỗ trống. Dạng bài tập dùng để kiểm tra khả năng sử dụng ngôn ngữ, khả năng phân tích.

– Dạng đọc hiểu (reading comprehension), nghĩa là chọn một đáp án thích hợp để trả lời mỗi câu hỏi. Dạng bài tập dùng để kiểm tra khả năng suy diễn, phân tích, tổng hợp và các yếu tố văn hóa.

Đề thi tốt nghiệp THPT có hai bài đọc: bài điền từ vào chỗ trống với 5 câu hỏi có độ dài khoảng 150 từ, và bài đọc hiểu với 5 câu hỏi có độ dài khoảng 200 từ.

Đề thi tuyển sinh vào đại học, cao đẳng thường có ba bài đọc: một bài điền từ vào chỗ trống với 10 câu hỏi có độ dài khoảng 200 từ, và 2 bài đọc hiểu có 10 câu hỏi cho mỗi bài và độ dài của mỗi bài là khoảng 400 từ.

I. Kĩ năng làm bài tập trắc nghiệm điền từ vào chỗ trống.

Dạng bài tập trắc nghiệm điền từ vào chỗ trống kiểm tra cả từ vựng lẫn ngữ pháp, đặc biệt là sự vận dụng kiến thức ngữ pháp và từ vựng trong ngữ cảnh của một đoạn văn để chọn đáp án chính xác.

Để làm tốt bài tập này, các em học sinh có thể theo các bước sau:

1. Đọc lướt một lượt để hiểu nội dung của đoạn văn.
2. Đọc kĩ đoạn văn, đặc biệt chú ý đến những chỗ trống cần chọn từ điền vào và những từ/ cụm từ trước và sau chỗ trống đó.
3. Đọc kĩ 4 phương án cần lựa chọn, xem xét chỗ cần điền liên quan đến từ vựng hay ngữ pháp.
4. Nếu chỗ cần điền liên quan đến từ vựng, hãy đọc kĩ cụm từ, câu hoặc đoạn văn đó, dựa vào ngữ cảnh để đưa ra sự lựa chọn hợp lí nhất.
5. Nếu chỗ cần điền liên quan đến ngữ pháp hoặc cấu trúc câu, xem xét lại các từ/ cụm từ trước hoặc sau chỗ trống đó (động từ, tính từ, giới từ...); đọc lại 4 phương án để tìm đáp án đúng nhất.

Chú ý: Làm lần lượt từ câu thứ nhất đến hết, nhưng có thể bỏ qua những câu khó rồi quay lại sau.

II. Kĩ năng làm bài tập trắc nghiệm đọc hiểu.

Dạng bài tập trắc nghiệm trả lời câu hỏi kiểm tra kĩ năng đọc hiểu như đoán nghĩa từ mới, nghĩa ngữ cảnh, kĩ năng đọc phân tích, đọc phê phán, tổng hợp hoặc suy diễn, yếu tố văn hóa được khuyến khích nhằm kiểm tra khả năng hiểu rõ nội dung bài đọc của thí sinh.

Để làm tốt dạng bài tập này, các em học sinh có thể tiến hành theo các bước sau:

– Đọc lướt đoạn văn để hiểu nội dung;

– Đọc từng câu hỏi và tìm nội dung những câu hỏi đó trong phần nào của đoạn văn bằng cách xác định vị trí chứa thông tin trả lời câu hỏi đó trong bài đọc.

– Đọc kĩ lại câu hỏi để hiểu rõ câu đó muốn hỏi về vấn đề gì;

– Đọc kĩ lại phần chứa thông tin trả lời cho câu hỏi đó;

– Đọc kĩ 4 phương án lựa chọn để tìm đáp án gần nhất với nội dung có phần thông tin trả lời cho câu hỏi (chú ý từ đồng nghĩa và trái nghĩa).

Lưu ý:

– Nếu chưa quyết định dứt khoát đáp án đúng thì hãy dùng phương pháp loại trừ dần những phương án sai.

– Các câu hỏi có thể không theo thứ tự của bài đọc, do đó có thể làm những câu hỏi dễ trước rồi quay lại câu hỏi khó sau.

Các dạng câu hỏi chính cho bài tập trắc nghiệm đọc hiểu có thể được liệt kê như sau:

1. Ý chính (main idea)

- What is the topic of this passage? (*Chủ đề của bài đọc là gì?*)
- What is the main idea expressed in this passage? (*Ý chính diễn tả trong bài đọc là gì?*)
- Which title best reflects the main idea of the passage? (*Tựa đề nào phản ánh đúng nhất ý chính của bài đọc?*)

2. Câu hỏi lấy thông tin (factual questions)

- According to the passage, why did...? (*Theo bài đọc, tại sao...?*)
- According to the information in paragraph 1, what did...? (*Theo thông tin từ đoạn 1, cái gì...?*)
- Which of the following is true, according to the author? (*Theo tác giả, câu nào sau đây là đúng?*)

3. Câu hỏi lấy thông tin đối lập (negative factual questions)

- The author mentions all of the following in the passage EXCEPT... (*Tác giả đề cập đến tất cả những điều sau đây trong bài đọc ngoại trừ....*)
- In the passage, the author does NOT mention...(*Trong bài đọc, tác giả không đề cập đến....*)
- Which of the following is LEAST likely? (*Điều nào sau đây là ít có khả năng xảy ra nhất?*)
- According to the information in paragraph 2, which of the following is NOT true? (*Theo thông tin từ đoạn 2, điều nào sau đây là không đúng?*)

4. Câu hỏi về từ vựng (vocabulary questions)

- Which of the following could best be substituted for the word ____ in line ____? (*Phương án nào sau đây có thể thay thế đúng nhất cho từ ____ ở dòng ____?*)
- The expression "____" in line ____ could best be replaced by ___. (*Cụm từ "____" ở dòng ___ có thể thay thế đúng nhất bằng ___.*)
- The word "____" in line ____ is closest in meaning to which of the following? (*Từ "___" ở dòng ___ có nghĩa gần nhất với phương án nào sau đây?*)

5. Câu hỏi liên hệ đến từ vựng (reference questions)

- The word "___" in line ___ refers to ___. (*Từ "___" ở dòng ___ đề cập đến ___.*)
- The pronoun "it" in line ____ refers to ____. (*Đại từ "it" ở dòng __ đề cập đến ___.*)
- The phrase "____" in paragraph ___ refers to ____. (*Cụm từ "___" ở đoạn ___ đề cập đến ___.*)
- The word ____ is a reference to ___. (*Từ ___ là sự ám chỉ đến __.*)

6. Câu hỏi suy diễn (inference questions)

- It is probable that... (*Có lẽ rằng...*)
- It can be inferred from the passage that... (*Có thể suy ra từ bài đọc rằng...*)
- It can be concluded from the information in paragraph 1 that...(*Từ thông tin ở đoạn 1 có thể kết luận rằng...*)
- In paragraph 2, the author implies that... (*Trong đoạn 2, tác giả ngụ ý rằng...*)
- Which of the following can be inferred from the passage? (*Điều gì sau đây có thể suy ra từ bài đọc?*)
- From the information in paragraph 3, it can be inferred that... (*Từ thông tin ở đoạn 3 có thể suy ra rằng...*)
- In the last paragraph, the author suggests that...(*Trong đoạn văn cuối, tác giả ám chỉ rằng...*)

7. Câu hỏi về mục đích của tác giả (questions on author's purpose)

- Why does the author mention ___ in paragraph 1? (*Tại sao tác giả đề cập đến ___ trong đoạn 1?*)
- Why does the author give details about____? (*Tại sao tác giả đưa ra chi tiết về___?*)
- The author refers to ___ to indicate that ___. (*Tác giả nhắc đến ___ để chỉ ra rằng ___.*)
- The author's main purpose in paragraph 2 is to____. (*Mục đích chính của tác giả trong đoạn 2 là ___.*)

8. Câu hỏi về thái độ của tác giả (questions on author's attitude)

- What is the author's opinion of ___? (*Ý kiến của tác giả về ___ là gì?*)
- Which of the following most accurately reflects the author's opinion of ___? (*Phương án nào sau đây phản ánh chính xác nhất quan điểm của tác giả về ___?*)

9. Diễn tả lại ý của câu (sentence restatement/ sentence paraphrasing)

- Which of the following best expresses the essential information in the second sentence of paragraph 3? (*Phương án nào sau đây diễn đạt đúng nhất thông tin thiết yếu trong câu thứ hai của đoạn 3.*)

10. Câu hỏi tìm liên kết về ý (questions for coherence understanding)

- The paragraph that precedes this passage/ paragraph is mostly probably about _____. (*Đoạn văn nối trước bài đọc/ đoạn văn này có thể có nội dung chính là ____.*)
- The paragraph that follow this passage/ paragraph is mostly probably about __. (*Đoạn văn tiếp sau bài đọc/ đoạn văn này có thể có nội dung chính là __.*)

Ví dụ minh họa 1: (Bài tập điền từ vào chỗ trống – Tốt nghiệp THPT)

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the blanks.

When the weather is cold, it is not very much fun to (1)____ a bus. People have to stand at a bus-stop for minutes or even hours. They talk about the bus and (2)_____ about the weather. Most of them feel cold. Some have to drink coffee to stay warm.

Traveling by bus (3)_____ pollution, but people often would rather drive their cars. Many people are not used to the bus schedules, and they do not like to wait.

On the other hand, many people have been (4)______ the bus every day for many years. They are used to it. They say the bus has been coming on time every day, and they have never been late for work. In (5)______, they do not need a parking place in all that time. Buses are very convenient when you are used to them.

Question 1:	A. search	B. look for	C. stand for	D. wait for
Question 2:	A. tell	B. complain	C. comment	D. judge
Question 3:	A. cuts	B. reduces	C. stops	D. eliminates
Question 4:	A. looking	B. waiting	C. getting	D. taking
Question 5:	A. end	B. last	C. addition	D. conclusion

Hướng dẫn:

Question 1:

D Đáp án đúng: *wait for a bus* = chờ đợi xe buýt.

A *search* (tìm kiếm ai/ cái gì) mà ở đây là chờ đợi xe buýt tại trạm xe buýt (a bus-stop).

B *look for* = tìm kiếm ai/ cái gì (giống như phương án A).

C *stand for* = dùng để cho tên đầy đủ của một từ viết tắt.

Question 2: Đáp án là B: **complain about something** (than phiền cái gì)

Question 3:

B Đáp án đúng. *To reduce something*: làm cái gì giảm về lượng, kích thước, mức độ, tầm quan trọng…. → reduce pollution: làm giảm sự ô nhiễm (về mức độ)

A *cut something* = làm cho cái gì ngắn hơn, thấp hơn, nhỏ hơn…

C *stop something* = ngưng một hoạt động.

D *eliminate something* = lấy đi, mang đi cái gì.

Question 4: **take the bus/ the train**… (đi đến đâu bằng một phương tiện giao thông nhất định).

Đáp án đúng là D (**taking**).

Question 5: **In addition** (ngoài ra) được dùng để chỉ sự nói thêm cho ý trước – nêu những lợi ích của việc dùng xe buýt (*they have never been late for work... they do not need a parking place...*). **Đáp án đúng là C.**

In conclusion dùng để đưa ra kết luận.

Ví dụ minh họa 2: (Bài tập điền từ vào chỗ trống – Tuyển sinh ĐH & CĐ)

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word(s) for each of the blanks.

Wind, water, air, ice and heat all work to cause erosion. As the wind blows over the land, it often (1)______ small grains of sand. When these grains of sand strike against solid rocks, the rocks are slowly worn away. In this way, (2)______ very hard rocks are worn away by the wind.

When particles of rocks or soil became loosened in any way, running water carries them down the (3)______. Some rocks and soil particles are carried into streams and then into the sea.

Land that is covered with trees, grass and other plants wears away very slowly, and so loses very (4)______ of its soil. The roots of plants help to (5)______ the rocks and soil in place. Water that falls on grasslands runs away more slowly than water that falls on bare ground. Thus, forests and grasslands (6)______ to slow down erosion.

Even where the land is (7)______ covered with plants, some erosion goes on. In the spring, the (8)______ snow turns into a large quantity of water that then runs downhill in streams. (9)______ a stream carries away some of the soil, the stream bed gets deeper and deeper. (10)______ thousands of years of such erosion, wide valleys are often formed.

Question 1:	A. cleans out	B. picks up	C. carries out	D. holds up
Question 2:	A. though	B. still	C. such	D. even
Question 3:	A. borders	B. topside	C. backside	D. hillsides
Question 4:	A. much	B. few	C. little	D. large
Question 5:	A. stay	B. store	C. hold	D. back
Question 6:	A. aid	B. facilitate	C. assist	D. help
Question 7:	A. thickly	B. scarcely	C. thinly	D. strongly
Question 8:	A. building	B. formed	C. melted	D. melting
Question 9:	A. Until	B. Although	C. Till	D. As
Question 10:	A. After	B. During	C. Among	D. In

Hướng dẫn:

Question 1: Câu này hỏi về ngữ động từ (phrasal verb).

B Đáp án đúng. *pick something up* = lift something up (nâng lên, làm bay đi). *"As the wind blows over the land, it often picks small grains of sand."* (Khi cơn gió thổi qua một miền đất, nó thường làm bay đi những hạt cát nhỏ.)

A Phương án sai: *clean something out* = lấy cắp, làm sạch hoàn toàn bên trong. ***Ví dụ:*** *I must clean the fish tank out.* (Tôi phải làm sạch bên trong bể cá.)

C Phương án sai: *carry something out* = thực hiện điều gì.

D Phương án sai: *hold something up* = trì hoãn, lấy cắp.

Question 2:

D Đáp án đúng. Trạng từ *even* dùng để chỉ sự ngạc nhiên hoặc sự nhấn mạnh. *"In this way, even very hard rocks are worn away by the wind."* (Bằng cách này, ngay cả những tảng đá rất cứng cũng bị gió làm mòn.)

A Phương án sai: *though* dùng để bắt đầu mệnh đề chỉ sự nhượng bộ, ngoài ra phải có mệnh đề chính. Ở đây ta chỉ có 1 mệnh đề.

B Phương án sai: trạng từ *still* không thể đứng đầu mệnh đề, nó đứng trước động từ thường, đứng sau động từ "be" hoặc trợ động từ.

C Phương án sai: *such* được dùng với danh từ đếm được số ít hoặc danh từ không đếm được, chứ nó không dùng với danh từ số nhiều.

Question 3: Câu này hỏi về từ vựng.

D Đáp án đúng. *hillside* = sườn đồi. *"When particles of rocks or soil became loosened in any way, running water carries them down the hillsides."* (Khi các hòn đất đá trở nên tơi ra, nước xoáy làm chúng trôi xuống sườn đồi.)

A Phương án sai: *border* = biên giới (giữa hai vùng hoặc hai quốc gia).

B Phương án sai: *topside* = phần nổi lên trên mặt nước của chiếc tàu, súc thịt bò cắt từ phần trên của chân.

C Phương án sai: *backside* = (trượt tuyết) mặt gót.

Question 4:

C Đáp án đúng. Tính từ **little** chỉ sự khan hiếm hoặc thiếu và gần như mang nghĩa phủ định được dùng trước danh từ không đếm được (trong câu này là *soil* = đất trồng). Ta có thể dùng trạng từ chỉ mức độ **so/ very** để bổ nghĩa cho little.

Land that is covered with trees, grass and other plants wears away very slowly, and so loses very little of its soil. (Đất được bao phủ bởi cây cối, cỏ và các loại thực vật khác bị trôi đi rất chậm, và như thế mất rất ít đất trồng.)

A Phương án sai: ta không có sự kết hợp từ như thế, có thể dùng ***not much*** mà thôi.

B Phương án sai: *few* dùng với danh từ đếm được.

D Phương án sai: ta không có sự kết hợp từ như thế.

Question 5: Câu này hỏi về nghĩa một số động từ.

C Đáp án đúng. *hold* = giữ ai/ cái gì ở vị trí nhất định. *"The roots of plants help to hold the rocks and soil in place."* (Rễ cây giúp giữ đất đá ở nguyên vị trí.)

A Phương án sai: *stay* là nội động từ không dùng với tân ngữ.

B Phương án sai: *store* = cất giữ cái gì để dùng sau này.

D Phương án sai: *back* = ủng hộ ai (bằng tiền bạc, lời nói).

Question 6:

D Đáp án đúng: *help to do something* = giúp đỡ. *"Thus, forests and grasslands help to slow down erosion."* (Do đó, rừng và đồng cỏ giúp làm chậm lại sự xói mòn.)

A Phương án sai: *aid someone/something in something* = giúp đỡ. Động từ "aid" không dùng với động từ nguyên mẫu.

B Phương án sai: *facilitate something* = làm cái gì xảy ra dễ dàng hơn. Tương tự, động từ "facilitate" không dùng với động từ nguyên mẫu.

C Phương án sai: *assist someone in something* = giúp đỡ. Động từ "assist" cũng không dùng với động từ nguyên mẫu.

Question 7:

A Đáp án đúng: *thickly covered* = bao phủ dầy đặc. *"Even where the land is thickly covered with plants, some erosion goes on."* (Ngay cả nơi đất được cây cối bao phủ dầy đặc, sự xói mòn vẫn xảy ra.) Câu này dùng "even" để chỉ sự ngạc nhiên hoặc bất ngờ.

B Phương án sai: *scarcely* (= hầu như không) không phù hợp nghĩa.

C Phương án sai: *thinly* (= ít) không phù hợp nghĩa.

D Phương án sai: *strongly* = một cách mạnh mẽ (nghĩa trừu tượng).

Ví dụ: *Many locals are strongly opposed to the development.* (Nhiều người dân địa phương chống đối mạnh mẽ dự án phát triển.)

Question 8:

D Đáp án đúng: *melting* = tan chảy. Tính từ *melting* có dạng V-ing chỉ tính chất của tuyết. *"In the spring, the melting snow turns into a large quantity of water that then runs downhill in streams."* (Vào mùa xuân, tuyết tan chảy biến thành một lượng nước khổng lồ và chảy xuống các con suối.)

A Phương án sai: *building* (= xây dựng lên) không phù hợp nghĩa.

B Phương án sai: *formed* (= được hình thành – mang nghĩa bị động) không phù hợp nghĩa.

D Phương án sai: ta không có tính từ này.

Question 9:

D Đáp án đúng. Ta dùng "as" (= when) với mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian với nghĩa phù hợp. *"As a stream carries away some of the soil, the stream bed gets deeper and deeper."* (Khi một con suối cuốn trôi đất đi, lòng suối trở nên càng ngày càng sâu hơn.)

A, C Các phương án sai: *until/ till* = cho đến khi.

B Phương án sai: ta dùng "although" (= mặc dù) với mệnh đề chỉ sự nhượng bộ.

Question 10:

A Đáp án đúng. *"After thousands of years of such erosion, wide valleys are often formed."* (Sau hàng nghìn năm của sự xói mòn, những thung lũng rộng thường được hình thành.) Ta dùng giới từ chỉ thời gian "after" để chỉ kết quả xảy ra sau thời gian đó.

B Phương án sai: *during* = trong khi.

C Phương án sai: giới từ *among* (= trong số) dùng để một nhóm, tập hợp nào đó.

D Phương án sai: giới từ chỉ thời gian "in" dùng để chỉ thời điểm tương lai. *in thousands of years* = trong hàng nghìn năm nữa.

Ví dụ minh họa 3: (Bài tập đọc hiểu – Tốt nghiệp THPT)

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Fiction is the writing of a story or text that is not true. It can be written in the form of either poetry or prose. Poetry is a style of writing in which short lines form verses. Often, words at the end of these lines rhyme, like "bed" and "red". We call a group of verses about one subject a "poem". Prose writing does not have verses, nor does it rhyme. **It** uses sentences and paragraphs. Prose is used in magazine articles, newspaper stories, short stories, and books.

Prose fiction has existed since ancient times, but most early fiction was actually written as poetry. Scholars disagree about the date of the first prose fiction book, or novel. Some scholars **classify** fictional stories from ancient Greece and Rome as the early novels. Others claim there were novels in Asia as early as the 6th century. These early novels were mostly short adventure stories about fictional characters.

In Europe, prose fiction began to seriously challenge poetry in the 16th century. A Spanish author, Cervantes, wrote Europe's first prose novel in the early 1600s. However, longer novels, like Cervantes's *Don Quixote*, did not become very popular until the 1700s. By that time, there were more printing presses, and more people knew how to read. In addition, more people had money to buy these books. Today, the vast majority of fiction is written in prose rather than in poetry.

Question 6: What does the word "**It**" in paragraph 1 refer to?

A. Non-fiction B. Fiction C. Poetry D. Prose

Question 7: What can we learn about newspaper stories from paragraph 1?

A. They are usually written in verse.
B. They are usually written in rhyme.
C. They are usually written in paragraphs
D. They are usually written by scholars.

Question 8: The word "**classify**" in paragraph 2 is closest in meaning to ______.

A. teach B. write C. call D. learn

Question 9: What can be inferred from the second paragraph?

A. Prose fiction has been very popular since long ago.
B. Poetic fiction has not been around since ancient times.
C. The date of the earliest known novel is the sixteenth century.
D. The date of the earliest known novel is not easy to determine.

Question 10: The topic discussed in paragraph 3 is about ______.

A. when prose became dominant in Europe
B. when poetry became dominant in Europe
C. when Cervantes became an important author
D. when prose began in Spain

Hướng dẫn:

Question 1: Đại từ "it" dùng để thay thế chủ ngữ trong câu trước là "Prose writing" hoặc "Prose" nói chung.

Đáp án đúng là D: **Prose** (văn xuôi).

Question 2:

C Đáp án đúng. *"It (prose) uses sentences and **paragraphs**. Prose is used in magazine articles, **newspapers stories**, short stories, and books."*

A, B "written in verse/ rhyme" là tính chất của thơ ca (poetry).

D "written by scholars" (được viết bởi các học giả) không được đề cập trong đoạn 2.

Question 3: Ta hãy chú ý đến cấu trúc *"**classify** something **as** something else"*. Cụm từ "the earliest novels" dùng để chỉ "fictional stories from ancient Greece and Rome".

Đáp án đúng là C: *classify (= **call**) something as… = gọi cái gì là…*

Question 4:

D Đáp án đúng: "The date of the earliest known novel is not easy to determine." *(Thời điểm ra đời của tiểu thuyết đầu tiên mà người ta biết đến khó xác định).*

Ta có ý sau: "Scholars disagree about the date of the first prose fiction book, or novel." *(Các học giả bất đồng quan điểm về thời điểm ra đời của tiểu thuyết.)*

A Ta có ý *"Prose fiction **has existed** since ancient times"* chứ không phải *"Prose fiction **has been very popular** since long ago."*

B "have (not) been around" = (không) thu được kiến thức và kinh nghiệm của thế giới; ý này không được nêu trong đoạn 2.

C "The date of the earliest known novel is the sixteenth century" là thông tin sai. Trong đoạn 2 thì một số học giả cho rằng tiểu thuyết ở châu Á có từ thế kỉ thứ 6 (the sixth century).

Question 5:

A Đáp án đúng: "when prose became dominant in Europe" (lúc văn xuôi trở nên có ảnh hưởng lớn ở châu Âu).
Ý trong bài là: ***"In Europe, prose fiction began to seriously challenge poetry in the 16th century."*** (Ở châu Âu, tiểu thuyết văn xuôi bắt đầu thách thức thơ ca vào thế kỉ thứ 16.)

B "when poetry became dominant in Europe" → ý sai.

C Nhà văn Cervantes và tác phẩm của ông "Don Quixote" chỉ là ví dụ minh họa cho chủ đề nêu trong đáp án A.

D "when prose began in Spain" (lúc văn xuôi xuất hiện ở Tây ban nha): không được đề cập đến trong đoạn 3.

Ví dụ minh họa 4: (Bài tập đọc hiểu – Tuyển sinh ĐH & CĐ)

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

An air pollutant is defined as a compound added directly or indirectly by humans to the atmosphere in such quantities as to affect humans, animals, vegetation, or materials **adversely**. Air pollution requires a very flexible definition that permits continuous change. When the first air pollution laws were established in England in the fourteenth century, air pollutants were limited to compounds that could be seen or smelled – a far cry from the extensive list of harmful substances known today. As technology has developed and knowledge of the health aspects of various chemicals has increased, the list of air pollutants has lengthened. In the future, even water vapor might be considered an air pollutant under certain conditions.

Many of the more important air pollutants, such as sulfur oxides, carbon monoxide, and nitrogen oxides, are found in nature. As the Earth developed, the concentration of these pollutants was altered by various chemical reactions; they became components in biogeochemical cycles. **These** serve as an air purification scheme by allowing the compounds to move from the air to the water or soil. On a global basis, nature's output of these compounds dwarfs that resulting from human activities.

However, human production usually occurs in a **localized** area, such as a city. In such a region, human output may be dominant and may temporarily overload the natural purification scheme of the cycles. The result is an increased concentration of noxious chemicals in the air. The concentrations at which the adverse effects appear will be greater than the concentrations that the pollutants would have in the absence of human activities. The actual concentration need not be large for a substance to be a pollutant; in fact, the numerical value tells us little until we know how much of an increase this represents over the concentration that would occur naturally in the area. For example, sulfur dioxide has detectable health effects at 0.08 parts per million (ppm), which is about 400 times its natural level of 0.1 ppm and is not usually a pollutant until its level reaches about 15 ppm.

Question 1: What does the passage mainly discuss?
- A. The economic impact of air pollution.
- B. What constitutes an air pollutant.
- C. How much harm air pollutants can cause.
- D. The effects of compounds added to the atmosphere.

Question 2: The word "**adversely**" in the first paragraph is closest in meaning to ______.

A. negatively B. quickly C. admittedly D. considerably

Question 3: It can be inferred from the first paragraph that ______.
- A. water vapor is an air pollutant in localized areas
- B. most air pollutants today can be seen or smelled
- C. the definition of air pollution will continue to change
- D. a substance becomes an air pollutant only in cities

Question 4: The word "**These**" in the second paragraph is closest in meaning to ______.
- A. the various chemical reactions
- B. the pollutants from the developing Earth
- C. the compounds moved to the water or soil
- D. the components in biogeochemical cycles

Question 5: For which of the following reasons can natural pollutants play an important role in controlling air pollution?
- A. They function as part of a purification process.
- B. They occur in greater quantities than other pollutants.
- C. They are less harmful to living beings than other pollutants.
- D. They have existed since the Earth developed.

Question 6: According to the passage, human-generated air pollution in localized regions ______.
- A. can be dwarfed by nature's output of pollutants
- B. can overwhelm the natural system that removes pollutants
- C. will damage areas outside of the localized regions
- D. will react harmfully with natural pollutants

Question 7: The word "**localized**" in the third paragraph is closest in meaning to ______.

A. specified B. circled C. surrounded D. encircled

Question 8: According to the passage, the numerical value of the concentration level of a substance is only useful if ______.
- A. the other substances in the area are known
- B. it is in a localized area
- C. the natural level is also known
- D. it can be calculated quickly

Question 9: The word "**detectable**" in the third paragraph is closest in meaning to ______.

A. beneficial B. special C. measurable D. separable

Question 10: Which of the following is best supported by the passage?

A. To effectively control pollution, local government should regularly review their air pollution laws.

B. One of the most important steps in preserving natural lands is to better enforce air pollution laws.

C. Scientists should be consulted in order to establish uniform limits for all air pollutants.

D. Human activities have been effective in reducing air pollution.

Hướng dẫn:

Question 1: What does the passage mainly discuss? (Đoạn văn chủ yếu đề cập về cái gì?)

B Đáp án đúng: "*What constitutes an air pollutant*" (Điều tạo thành chất gây ô nhiễm không khí). Đoạn văn đề cập đến các chất gây ô nhiễm ở Anh thế kỉ 14 cho đến hiện nay.

A Phương án sai: *The economic impact of air pollution* (Ảnh hưởng của ô nhiễm không khí đối với nền kinh tế) (không được nêu trong đoạn văn).

C Phương án sai: *How much harm air pollutants can cause* (Chất gây ô nhiễm không khí có thể gây tác hại đến mức độ nào) (không được nêu trong đoạn văn).

D Phương án sai: *The effects of compounds added to the atmosphere* (Hậu quả của các hợp chất thải vào khí quyển) (không phải ý chính).

Question 2:

A Đáp án đúng: *negatively* = không tốt, xấu. Ý trong bài: *An air pollutant....to affect humans, animals, vegetation, or materials adversely* (Chất gây ô nhiễm không khí... ảnh hưởng xấu đến con người, động vật, thực vật, hoặc vật liệu).

B Phương án sai: *quickly* = một cách nhanh chóng.

C Phương án sai: *admittedly* = đã được thừa nhận.

D Phương án sai: *considerably* = đáng kể, nhiều.

Question 3: It can be inferred from the first paragraph that _____. (Có thể suy ra từ đoạn 1 rằng _____.)

C Đáp án đúng: *the definition of air pollution will continue to change* = định nghĩa về sự ô nhiễm không khí sẽ tiếp tục thay đổi.

Ý trong bài: *Air pollution requires a very flexible definition that permits continuous change.* (Sự ô nhiễm không khí đòi hỏi một định nghĩa linh hoạt có thể tiếp tục thay đổi.)

A Phương án sai: *water vapor is an air pollutant in localized areas* (hơi nước là một chất gây ô nhiễm không khí ở một số khu vực). Trong bài nói hơi nước có thể xem là chất gây ô nhiễm trong những điều kiện nhất định.

B Phương án sai: *most air pollutants today can be seen or smelled* (ngày nay phần lớn các chất gây ô nhiễm không khí có thể nhìn thấy hoặc ngửi thấy được). Đoạn 1 nói về tính chất này của các chất gây ô nhiễm trước đây.

D Phương án sai: *a substance becomes an air pollutant only in cities* (vật chất trở thành một chất gây ô nhiễm không khí chỉ ở các thành phố). Ý này không được nêu ở đoạn 1.

Question 4: Đại từ *"These"* thay thế cho ngữ danh từ ở cuối câu trước là *"components in biogeochemical cycles"* (thành phần trong các chu kì sinh hóa). Đáp án là D.

Question 5: *For which of the following reasons can natural pollutants play an important role in controlling air pollution?* (Các chất gây ô nhiễm có trong tự nhiên đóng vai trò quan trọng trong việc kiểm soát sự ô nhiễm không khí vì lí do nào sau đây?)

A Đáp án đúng: *They function as part of a purification process* (Chúng đóng vai trò một phần trong quá trình làm sạch).

Ý trong bài: *Many of the more important air pollutants... are found in nature.... serve as an air purification scheme* (Nhiều chất gây ô nhiễm.... tìm thấy trong tự nhiên....có vai trò góp phần vào quá trình làm sạch không khí).

B Phương án sai: *They occur in greater quantities than other pollutants* (Chúng chiếm một lượng nhiều hơn các chất gây ô nhiễm khác).

C Phương án sai: *They are less harmful to living beings than other pollutants* (Chúng ít hại đối với con người so với các chất gây ô nhiễm khác) (không được nêu trong bài).

D Phương án sai: *They have existed since the Earth developed* (Chúng tồn tại từ lúc trái đất phát triển) (không phù hợp với câu hỏi).

Question 6: According to the passage, human-generated air pollution in localized regions ___. (Theo đoạn văn, sự ô nhiễm không khí do con người gây ra ở các địa phương ______.)

B Đáp án đúng: *"can overwhelm the natural system that removes pollutants"* (có thể lấn át quá trình tự nhiên loại bỏ chất gây ô nhiễm). Ý trong bài: *"human output may be dominant and may temporarily overload the natural purification scheme of the cycles"* (chất gây ô nhiễm do con người tạo ra có thể lấn át và áp đảo quá trình làm sạch tự nhiên).

A Phương án sai: *"can be dwarfed by nature's output of pollutants"* (có thể thu nhỏ bởi quá trình sinh các chất gây ô nhiễm của tự nhiên).

C Phương án sai: *"will damage areas outside of the localized regions"* (sẽ làm thiệt hại các khu vực ngoài các địa phương nhất định).

D Phương án sai: *"will react harmfully with natural pollutants"* (sẽ phản ứng với các chất gây ô nhiễm có trong tự nhiên để gây tác hại).

www.daykemquynhon.com

Question 7:

A Đáp án đúng: *localized* = *specified* (được nêu rõ). Ý trong bài: *a localized area, such as a city* (một khu vực nhất định, như là một thành phố – được nêu rõ).

B, C, D Các phương án sai: *circled/surrounded/encircled* = được bao quanh.

Question 8: According to the passage, the numerical value of the concentration level of a substance is only useful if __. (Theo đoạn văn, giá trị bằng số của mức độ tập trung của một chất chỉ có giá trị nếu__.)

C Đáp án đúng: *"the natural level is also known"* = mức độ tập trung (của các chất gây ô nhiễm của tự nhiên) cũng được biết.
Ý trong bài: *"the numerical value tells us little until we know how much of an increase this represents over the concentration that would occur naturally in the area"* (giá trị bằng số chẳng cho ta biết gì nhiều cho đến khi ta biết được mức độ tăng biểu thị cho sự tập trung các chất gây ô nhiễm tồn tại tự nhiên ở một khu vực).

A Phương án sai: *"the other substances in the area are known"* (các vật chất khác trong khu vực cũng được biết).

B Phương án sai: *"it is in a localized area"* (nó có trong một khu vực nhất định).

D Phương án sai: *"it can be calculated quickly"* (nó được tính toán một cách nhanh chóng).

Question 9: Đáp án là C: *detectable* = có thể phát hiện ra; *measurable* = có thể đo đạc được.

Ý trong bài: người ta nêu những số liệu về mức độ ô nhiễm, đơn vị *ppm*.

Question 10: Which of the following is best supported by the passage? (Ý nào sau đây được đoạn văn chứng minh?)

Câu này là câu hỏi tổng hợp ý chính trong bài.

D Đáp án đúng: *"Human activities have been effective in reducing air pollution"* (Các hoạt động của con người hữu hiệu trong việc làm giảm sự ô nhiễm không khí).

A Phương án sai: *"To effectively control pollution, local government should regularly review their air pollution laws."* (Để kiểm soát sự ô nhiễm một cách hiệu quả, chính quyền địa phương nên thường xuyên xem xét các luật về sự ô nhiễm không khí.)

B Phương án sai: *"One of the most important steps in preserving natural lands is to better enforce air pollution laws."* (Một trong những bước quan trọng trong việc bảo vệ đất tự nhiên là tăng cường các luật về sự ô nhiễm không khí.)

C Phương án sai: *"Scientists should be consulted in order to establish uniform limits for all air pollutants."* (Các nhà khoa học nên được tham khảo ý kiến để đề ra mức hạn chế đồng bộ cho tất cả các chất gây ô nhiễm.)

Bài tập đọc trắc nghiệm điền từ vào chỗ trống

Exercise 1: Choose the word or phrase that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

All men should study, we have to study to (1)______ our knowledge and develop our intelligence.

An uneducated man can only utilize his (2)______ strength to work and live. An educated man, (3)______ this strength, still has the faculty of his intelligent brain and good reflection. This intelligence and thought enable him to help his physical strength to act more quickly (4)_____ cleverly.

In a same profession or work, the educated man differs (5)____ the uneducated considerably. Therefore, intellectual workers have to study, this is a matter of course but (6)______ workers must also (7)______ an education.

In civilized countries compulsory education has been applied. (8)____ must spend seven or eight years to study. From ploughmen to labourers in these (9)____, no one is (10)____ to read a book or a paper fluently.

1. A. wide B. widely C. widen D. broad
2. A. body B. bodily C. power D. brain
3. A. with B. without C. no D. none
4. A. and B. but C. yet D. or
5. A. than B. with C. from D. apart
6. A. simple B. easy C. hard D. manual
7. A. learn B. study C. acquire D. know
8. A. Man B. One C. Human D. Mankind
9. A. parts B. regions C. fields D. nations
10. A. able B. unable C. not D. never

Exercise 2: Choose the word or phrase that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Everyone wants to reduce pollution. But the pollution (1)____ is as complicated as it is serious. It is complicated (2) __ much pollution is caused by things that benefit people. For example, (3)____ from automobiles causes a large percentage of all air pollution. But the automobile (4)____ transportation for millions of people. Factories (5)____ much of material that pollutes air and water, but factories give employment to a large number of people.

Thus, to end (6)____ greatly reduce pollution immediately, people would have to stop using many things that (7)____ them. Most people do not want to do that, of course. But pollution can be (8)____ reduced in several ways. Scientists and engineers can work to find ways to lessen the amount of pollution that such things as automobiles and factories cause. Governments can pass and enforce laws that (9)____ businesses and (10)____ to stop, or cut down on certain polluting activities.

1. A. work B. problem C. accident D. event
2. A. because B. so C. that D. while

3. A. exhaust B. fire C. gas D. liquid
4. A. carries B. takes C. affords D. provides
5. A. offer B. bring C. discharge D. cause
6. A. to B. or C. so D. that
7. A. benefit B. harm C. motivate D. encourage
8. A. little B. gradually C. so D. that
9. A. require B. forbid C. prevent D. request
10. A. commercials B. surroundings C. individuals D. traffic

Exercise 3: Choose the word or phrase that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

We are using up the world's petroleum. We use (1)____ in our cars and to heat our building in winter.

Farmers use petrochemicals to (2)_____ the soil rich. They use them to kill insects (3)______ plants. These chemicals go (4)_____ rivers and lakes and kill the fish there. Thousands of pollutants also go into the air and pollute it. Winds carry this (5)____ air to other countries and other continents.

Poor farmers use the same land over and (6)_____. The land needs a rest so it will be better next year. However, the farmers must have food this year. Poor people cut down forests (7)____ firewood. In some areas when the trees are gone, the land (8)_____ desert. Poor people can't save the environment for the (9)______.

This is not a problem for one country or one area of the world. It is a problem for all humans. The people and the nations of the world must work together to (10)_____ the world's resources.

1. A. it B. them C. that D. those
2. A. enrich B. change C. make D. let
3. A. eat B. eaten C. eating D. ate
4. A. to B. toward C. at D. into
5. A. pollute B. polluting C. polluted D. pollution
6. A. over B. again C. repeated D. repeating
7. A. of B. for C. with D. at
8. A. gets B. changes C. turns D. becomes
9. A. future B. time C. times D. period
10. A. recycle B. preserve C. keep D. use

Exercise 4: Choose the word or phrase that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Every ten minutes, one kind of animal, plant or insect dies (1)____ for ever. If nothing is done about it, one million species that are alive today will have become (2)____ twenty years from now.

The seas are in (3)____. They are being filled with poison: industrial and nuclear (4)____, chemical fertilizers and pesticides, sewage. The Mediterranean

is already nearly dead; the North Sea is following. If nothing is done about it, one day soon nothing will be able to live in the seas.

The tropical rain forests, which are the (5)____ of half the earth's living things (including many rare animals and plants), are being destroyed . If nothing is done about it, they will have disappeared in twenty years. The (6)____ on the world's climate – and on our agriculture and food supplies – will be disastrous.

Fortunately, somebody is trying to do something about it. In 1961, the World Wildlife Fund was (7)____ – a small group of people who wanted to raise money to save animals and plants from extinction.

Today, the World Wildlife Fund is a large international organization. It has raised over £35 million for conservation projects, and has created or given (8)____ to National Parks in five continents. It has helped 30 mammals and birds – including the tiger – to (9)____. Perhaps this is not much, but it is a start. If more people give more money – and if more governments wake up to what is happening – perhaps the World Wildlife Fund will be able to help us to avoid the disaster that (10)____ the natural world, and all of us will be with it.

1. A. off B. on C. out D. over
2. A. extinguished B. extinct C. distinct D. invalid
3. A. danger B. death C. debt D. despair
4. A. waste B. rubbish C. essence D. mixture
5. A. container B. origin C. house D. home
6. A. result B. impression C. effect D. motivation
7. A. founded B. found C. funded D. fixed
8. A. defence B. support C. preservation D. rescue
9. A. continue B. endure C. prolong D. survive
10. A. occurs B. pollutes C. threatens D. suffers

Exercise 5: Choose the word or phrase that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Television is one of man's most important (1)____ of communication. It brings (2)____ and sounds from around the world into millions of homes. A person with a television set can sit in his house and watch the President (3)____ a speech or visit a foreign country. He can see a war being fought and watch statesmen try to (4)____ peace. (5)____ television, home viewers can see and learn about people, places, and things in faraway lands. TV even takes viewers out of this world. It brings them (6)____ of America's astronauts as the astronauts explore outer space.

(7)____ all these things, television brings its viewers a steady stream of programmes that are (8)____ to entertain. In fact, TV provides many more (9)____ programmes than any other kind. The programmes include action-packed dramas, light comedies, sporting (10)____, and motion pictures.

1. A. procedure B. means C. manner D. technology

2. A. pictures B. images C. visages D. portraits
3. A. compose B. type C. computerize D. make
4. A. bring about B. make out C. bring round D. move around
5. A. In B. Because of C. At D. Through
6. A. covering B. views C. coverage D. looks
7. A. In addition to B. As to C. Beside D. By
8. A. designed B. patterned C. monitored D. built up
9. A. excitement B. distraction C. fun D. entertainment
10. A. happenings B. events C. occurrences D. meetings

Bài tập trắc nghiệm đọc hiểu

Exercise 1: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Hundreds of thousands of persons each year fall to prey some types of cancer; but new methods radiation therapy have enabled doctors to save more lives than ever before. Medical researches have developed several experimental forms of this time-honored cancer treatment that seem effective in fighting the diseases.

One promising approach involves exposing cancer cells to radiation by implanting a radioactive source directly into the malignant tissue. This progress greatly increases the dosage and thus the effectiveness of the treatment. Another technique utilizes drugs to make cancer cells more susceptible to the effects of radiation and to make normal cells more resistant. Certain drugs are able to neutralize the genetic framework of cancer cell, thus making them more easily affected by radiation. Both techniques have been more positive results in the treatment of inoperable brain tumors.

These and other methods have helped to raise the recovery rate for cancer victims from 30 per cent 40 years ago to around 50 per cent today. This is encouraging news for those who fall prey to one of the world's leading killers.

1. What is the author's main purpose in the passage?
   A. To provide statistical information on cancer.
   B. To argue for new methods of cancer treatment.
   C. To illustrate new techniques of radiation therapy.
   D. To give the result of recent cancer research.
2. According to the passage, which of the following is true about radiation therapy?
   A. There is only one effective form of this therapy.
   B. It saves millions of lives each year.
   C. It is an accepted method of cancer treatment.
   D. It causes the incidence of cancer to rise dramatically.
3. The word "malignant" most closely means _____.
   A. disease B. experimental C. treated D. poisonous
4. According to the passage, radiation therapy is most effective when ___.
   A. drugs are used to relax the cancer patient
   B. the cancer is directly exposed to the radioactive material
   C. it is used on as many patients as possible
   D. the cancer cells are resistant to treatment
5. It can be inferred from the passage that _____.
   A. improvements in cancer treatment during the last half century have been relatively ineffective
   B. the number of deaths caused by cancer has decreased substantially
   C. fewer people are susceptible to the effects of cancer
   D. scientists are close to eliminating cancer entirely

Exercise 2: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

European concern for wildlife was outlined by Dr. Peter Baum, an expert on the environment and nature resources division of the council, when he spoke at a conference arranged by the administrators of a British national park. The park is one of the few areas in Europe to hold the council's diploma for nature reserves of the highest quality, and Dr. Baum had come to present it to the park once again. He was afraid that public opinion was turning against national parks, and that those set up in the 1960s and 1970s could not be set up today. But Dr. Baum clearly remained a strong supporter of the view that natural environments needed to be allowed to survive in peace in their own right.

No area could be expected to survive both as a true nature reserve and as a tourist attraction, he went on. The short view that reserves had to serve immediately human demands for outdoor recreation should be replaced by full acceptance of their importance as places to preserve nature for the future.

"We forget that they are the guarantee of life systems, on which any built-up area ultimately depends," Dr. Baum went on. "We could manage without most industrial products, but we could not manage without nature. However, our natural environment areas, which are the original parts of our countryside, have shrunk to become mere islands in a spoiled and highly land mass."

1. Recent studies by the Council of Europe show that ______.
   A. it is only in Britain that wildlife needs more protection
   B. all species of wildlife in Europe are in danger of dying out
   C. there are fewer species of reptiles and butterflies in Europe than elsewhere
   D. certain species of reptiles and butterflies in Europe need protecting
2. Dr. Baum, a representative of the Council, visited one particular British national park because ______.
   A. he was presenting the park with a diploma for its achievement
   B. he was concerned about how the park was being run
   C. it was the only national park of its kind in Europe
   D. it was the only park which had ever received a diploma from the Council

3. Although it is difficult nowadays to convince the public of the importance of nature reserves, Dr Baum felt that _____.
   A. people would support moves to create more environment areas
   B. people would carry on supporting those natural parks in existence
   C. existing natural parks would need to be more independent to survive
   D. certain areas of countryside should be left undisturbed by man
4. In Dr. Baum's opinion, a true nature reserve _____.
   A. could never survive in a modern age
   B. should provide buildings for human activities
   C. should be regarded as a place where nature is protected
   D. could provide special areas for tourists to enjoy
5. Although we all depend on the resources of nature for our survival ____.
   A. industrial products are replacing all our natural resources
   B. it is only on islands that nature survives
   C. we have forgotten what our original countryside looks like
   D. we have allowed areas of countryside to be spilt by industrial development

Exercise 3: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Let children learn to judge their own work. A child learning to talk does not learn by being corrected all the time: if corrected too much, he will stop talking. He notices a thousand times a day the difference between the language he uses and the language those around him use. Bit by bit, he makes the necessary changes to make his language like other people's. In the same way, children learn to do all the other things, they learn to do without being taught – to walk, run, climb, whistle, ride a bicycle – compare their own performances with those of more skilled people, and slowly make the needed changes. But in school, we never give a child a chance to find out his mistakes for himself, let alone correct them. We do it all for him. We act as if we thought that he would never notice a mistake unless he was made to. Soon he becomes dependent on the teacher. Let him do it himself. Let him work out, with the help of other children if he wants it, what this word says, what the answer is to that problem, whether this is a good way of saying or doing this or not.

If it is a matter of right answer, as it may be in mathematics or science, give him the answer book. Let him correct his own papers. Why should teachers waste time on such ridiculous work? Our job should be to help the child when he tells us that he cannot find the way to get the right answer. Let's end all this nonsense of grades, exams, marks. Let us throw them all out, and let the children learn what all educated persons must some day learn, how to measure their own understanding, how to know what they know or do not know.

Let them get on with this job in the way that seems most sensible to them, with our help as school teachers if they ask for it. The idea that there is a body of knowledge to be learnt at school and used for the rest of one's life is nonsense in a world as complicated and rapidly changing as ours. Anxious parents and teachers say, "But suppose they fail to learn something essential, something they will go out into the world and learn it."

1. What does the author think is the best way for children to learn things?
   A. By copying what other people do.
   B. By making mistakes and having them corrected.
   C. By listening to explanations from skilled people.
   D. By asking a great many questions.
2. What does the author think teachers do which they should not do?
   A. They give children correct answers.
   B. They point out children's mistakes to them.
   C. They allowed children to mark their own work.
   D. They encourage children to copy from one another.
3. The passage suggests that learning to speak and learning to ride a bicycle are _____.
   A. not really important skills
   B. more important than other skills
   C. basically different from learning adult skills
   D. basically the same as learning other skills
4. Exams, grades, and marks should be abolished because children's progress should only be estimated by ______.
   A. educated persons
   B. the children themselves
   C. teachers
   D. parents
5. The author fears that children will grow up into adults who are _____.
   A. too independent of others
   B. too critical of themselves
   C. unable to think for themselves
   D. unable to use basic skills

Exercise 4: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

The planet Earth is 4,600 million years old. It is difficult for us to think about such an enormous length of time because it has little meaning for us. We can, however, simplify the idea to make it more understandable. We can compare the planet Earth to a person of forty-six years of age.

Nothing is known about the first seven years of this person's life. Very little information exists about the middle period either. It was only at the age of forty-two that the Earth began to flower.

Dinosaurs and great reptiles did not appear until one year ago, when the planet was forty-five. Mammals only arrived eight months ago. In the middle of last week, man like apes became ape-like men and began to communicate with each other. Last weekend, the Ice Age covered the Earth.

Modern man has only been around for four hours. During the last hour, man discovered agriculture. The Industrial Revolution and the rise of large cities began just sixty seconds ago.

During that short time, modern man has made a rubbish tip of the Earth. In one minute, he has increased his numbers to terrible proportions, and has caused the death of hundreds of species of animals. He has robbed and destroyed the planet in his search for fuels, now he stands like violent, spoilt child, delighted at the speed of his rise to power on the edge of the final mass destruction and of killing all the life which exists in the solar system.

1. The passage tells us that ______.
   A. a great deal is known about how the Earth was created
   B. life on Earth began relatively recently
   C. more is known about the first part of the Earth's life than the middle part
   D. scientists are well-informed about the middle part of the Earth's life
2. We are informed by the author that _______.
   A. the dinosaurs appeared during the middle period
   B. mammals and great reptiles both appeared at the same time
   C. there were more than forty-five kinds of great reptiles
   D. ape-like men appeared before the last Ice Age
3. The author is mainly interested in _______.
   A. the time when man first evolved from apes
   B. what has happened since the Industrial Revolution
   C. the effects of farming
   D. the period before the last Ice Age
4. It would appear that the main danger ahead is that ______.
   A. man will destroy everything on Earth
   B. man will use up all the fuels
   C. there will be population explosion
   D. more species of animals may die out
5. The author's general view of man seems to be that _______.
   A. he has no right to be so destructive
   B. he has been the most successful animal
   C. he will be able to control the environment
   D. he has learned a lot from past mistakes

Exercise 5: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

One of the most difficult questions to answer is how much a job is worth. We naturally expect that a doctor's salary will be higher than a bus conductor's wages. But the question becomes much more difficult to answer when we are compare, say, a miner with an engineer, or an unskilled man working on an oil-rig in the North Sea with a teacher in a secondary school. What the doctor, the engineer, and the teacher have in common is that they have devoted several years of their lives to studying in order to obtain the necessary qualifications for their professions. We feel instinctively that these skills and these years. When they were studying instead of earning money, should be rewarded. At the same time we recognize that the work of the miner and the oil-rig laborers is both hard and dangerous, and that they must be highly paid for the risks they take.

Another factor we must take into consideration is how socially useful a man's work is, regardless of the talents he may bring to it. Most people would agree that looking after the sick or teaching children is more important than, say, selling second-hand cars or improving the taste of toothpaste by adding a red stripe to it. Yet it is almost certain that the used-car salesman earns more than the nurse, and the research chemist earns more than the school-teacher.

Indeed, this whole question of just rewards can be turned on its head. You can argue that a man who does a job which brings him personal satisfaction is already receiving part of his reward in the form of a so-called 'psychic wage', and that it is the van with the boring, repetitive job who needs more money to make up for the soul-destroying monotony of his work. It is significant that those jobs which are traditionally regarded as 'vocation' – nursing, teaching, and the Church, for example – continue to be poorly paid, while others, such as those in the world of sports or entertainment, carry financial rewards out of all proportion to their social worth.

__Note__: ***say*** (EXPRESSION): used to express surprise or pleasure, or to attract attention to what you are about to say

1. The professional man, such as the doctor, should be well-paid because _______.
   A. he has spent several years learning how to do his job
   B. his work involves much greater intelligence than, say, a bus conductor's
   C. he has to work much harder than most other people
   D. he knows more than other people about his subject (he is a specialist)
2. It is difficult to compare a doctor and a miner because _______.
   A. a miner's work is not as useful as a doctor's
   B. each is a specialist in his own field
   C. a miner has to learn just as many skills to be able to do his job well
   D. a miner's job is less skilled but on the other hand it is more dangerous
3. You can compare an engineer with a teacher because ______.
   A. they both do useful work
   B. they both earn the same kind of salary
   C. one does socially important work and the other does dangerous work
   D. they have both spent several years in training
4. As far as rewarding people for their work is concerned, the writer believes that _______.

A. we should pay for socially useful work, regardless of the person's talent
B. we should pay people according to their talents
C. market forces will determine how much a person is paid
D. qualified people should be the highest paid

5. The argument of the "psychic wage" is used to explain why ______.
A. people who do socially important work are not always well paid
B. people who do monotonous jobs are highly paid
C. you should not try to compare the pay of different professions
D. some professional people are paid more than others

Exercise 6: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Many countries face a somewhat more serious economic problem in the form of an unfavorable trade balance with other nations. Such an imbalance exists when the total value of a country's imports exceeds that of its exports. For example, if a country buys $10 billion in products from other countries, yet sells $10 billion of its own products overseas, its trade is $20 billion. Many underdeveloped nations find themselves in this position because they lack natural resources or the industrial capacity to use these resources, and thus have to import raw materials or manufactured goods.

One effect of a trade deficit is the flow of currency out of a country. In the case of an underdeveloped nation, this can cause many financial difficulties, including failure to meet debt payments and obstacles to creation of an industrial base. Even in the case of a fully developed nation such as the United States, a large trade deficit is reason for alarm. American products, made by well-paid workers in U.S. industries, cost more to produce than those made in places like Asia, where labor and material costs are much lower. Money spent on foreign products is money not spent on items produced by domestic industries.

1. What does the passage mainly discuss?
A. Several worldwide economic problems.
B. The causes and consequences of trade deficits.
C. Lack of resources in underdeveloped countries.
D. The value of exports versus imports.

2. According to the passage, when does a trade imbalance occur?
A. A country has a serious economic problem.
B. A country sells more products overseas than its imports.
C. The value of the products a country imports is greater than the value of the products it exports.
D. A country cannot develop its natural resources.

3. The passage states that many underdeveloped nations have trade deficits because ______.
A. they find themselves in this position

B. they export most of their natural resources to other nations
C. they have to import most of their natural resources or manufactured products
D. they have failed to meet debt payments

4. Which of the following is not mentioned as a possible cause of a trade imbalance?
A. Low labor and material costs in Asian countries.
B. A lack of natural resources.
C. An underdeveloped industrial base.
D. The high cost of exported items.

5. It can be inferred from this passage that American industries ______.
A. do not pay their workers sufficient wages
B. are hurt by a trade imbalance
C. import labor and material from overseas
D. provide a strong industrial base that prevents a trade deficit

Exercise 7: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Before extensive industrialization took place in Europe, the extended family was common, and the home was also the workplace. People plied various crafts and trades at home and then sold the products of their labor in the local market place. As the workplace was centred in the home, all members of the household contributed their labor directly and indirectly. Extended families were common because each member actually participated in the family's economic function. In a typical example, the grandmother would mind the baby and sort the raw wool, the mother and daughter would spin and weave, the father would till the fields, the son would gather wood, and the grandfather would mind the animals.

The advent of industrialization in the 18th century changed this lifestyle. Large factories were established which replaced the cottage industries.

People were therefore forced to migrate to the towns for employment. Living and working conditions in the town meant that the extended family ceased to be viable. A smaller family unit became the most practical in the new industrial centres and, in fact, did become the norm.

This small or nuclear family was well suited to an industrialized society because of its mobility. To gain employment and accept promotion, the family breadwinner might be required to move from one place to another. It is relatively easier to move a small family group than a large one, and such geographic mobility would be impossible for an extended family.

In non-industrialized societies where the extended family is the norm, members other than parents assume many of the tasks and responsibilities associated with child care and education. In industrialized societies these functions are often performed for the nuclear family by specially trained people outside the family network.

An extended family often assumes the responsibility of supporting and caring for members who are too old, young or infirm to work. This care is undertaken by members who have not joined the workforce. In an industrialized society the state or government can assume responsibility for these people. A country where this occurs is said to be a welfare state. In the welfare state, the government provides institutions for those in need of constant care, and financial support for those who are disadvantaged.

Although it is the case that the 18th century extended family structure hardly exists in industrialized societies today, other forms of the extended family are known. For instance, families with more than three generations can live in one house, although they may work in different places. On the other hand, some extended families can work together but live separately.

Notes: to mind = to take care of; norm (n) = the standard

1. The extended family is _______.
   - A. typical of an industrialized society
   - B. typical of a welfare state
   - C. typical of an non-industrialized society
   - D. very common in areas where there are large factories
2. The nuclear family is _______.
   - A. one with no other members than the parents and the children
   - B. one whose grandfather minds the animals and grandmother minds the baby
   - C. one where only the father works
   - D. one that moves from one place to another to make a living
3. Living and working conditions in industrial towns _______.
   - A. make it necessary for people to live in small families
   - B. make extended families more preferable
   - C. make it easier for small families to move from one place to another
   - D. make families have more members
4. In a welfare state, ________.
   - A. most people live in institutions provided by the government
   - B. it is the government that provides care and financial support for those who are too old to work
   - C. all the members of the family have to join the workforce
   - D. All are correct
5. _________ mainly assumes responsibility of educating children in an industrialized society.
   - A. The government
   - B. The nuclear family
   - C. The teacher
   - D. The grandparent

Exercise 8: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Through a series of experiments an American scientists has obtained an understanding of the social structure of the most complex of ant societies. The ants examined are the only creatures other than man to have given up hunting and collecting for a completely agricultural way of life. In their underground nests, they cultivate gardens on soil made from finely chopped leaves. This is a complex operation requiring considerable division of labour. The workers of this type of ant can be divided into four groups according to size. Each of the groups performs a particular set of jobs.

The making and care of the gardens and the nursing of the young ants are done by the smallest workers. Slightly larger workers are responsible for chopping up leaves to make them suitable for use in the gardens and for cleaning the nest. A third group of still larger ants do the construction work and collect fresh leaves from outside the nest. The largest are the soldier ants, responsible for defending the nest.

To find out how **good** the various size-groups are at different tasks, the scientist measured the amount of work done by the ants against the amount of energy they used. He examined first the gathering and carrying of the leaves. He selected one of the size-groups, and then measured how effectively these ants could find leaves and run back to the nest. Then he repeated the experiment for each of the other size-groups. In this way he could see whether any group could do the job more efficiently than the group normally undertaking it.

The intermediate-sized ants that normally perform this task proved to be the most efficient for their energy costs, but when the scientist examined he whole set of jobs performed by each group of ants it appeared that some sizes of worker ant were not ideally suited to the particular jobs they performed.

1. In which way are the ants different from other non-human societies?
   - A. They do not need to search for food.
   - B. They do not need to look for shelter.
   - C. Individuals vary in social status.
   - D. Individuals perform different functions.
2. It seems that smaller ants perform more of the ______.
   - A. construction tasks
   - B. domestic tasks
   - C. defensive work
   - D. heavy work
3. **"good"** (first line of third paragraph) refers to the ants' _________.
   - A. co-operation in working
   - B. sense of responsibility
   - C. efficiency in working
   - D. willingness to work hard
4. The scientist's work was based on _______.
   - A. occasional observations
   - B. systematic observations
   - C. observations of several nests
   - D. observations of an undisturbed nest
5. The organization of the ants has the effect of ______.
   - A. getting the most work done
   - B. dividing the work up systematically

C. each ant helping with all the tasks
D. each ant doing what it can do best

Exercise 9: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

After two decades of growing student enrollments and economic **prosperity**, business schools in the United States have started to face harder times. Only Harvard MBA School has shown a substantial increase in enrollment in recent years. Both Princeton and Stanford have seen decreases in their enrollments. Since 1990, the number of people receiving Masters in Business Administration (MBA) degrees has dropped about 3 percent to 75,000 and the **trend of** lower enrollment rates is expected to continue.

There are two factors causing this decrease in students' **seeking** an MBA degree. The first one is that many graduates of four-year colleges are finding that an MBA degree does not guarantee a **plush** job on Wall Street, or in other financial districts of major American cities. Many of the entry-level management jobs are going to students graduating with Master of Arts degrees in English and the humanities as well as those holding MBA degrees. Students have asked the question, "Is an MBA degree really what I need to be best prepared for getting a good job?", the second major factor has been the cutting of American payrolls and the lower number of entry-level jobs being offered. Business needs are changing, and MBA schools are **struggling** to meet the new demands.

1. What is the main focus of this passage?
   A. jobs on Wall Street
   B. types of graduates degrees
   C. changes in enrollment for MBA schools
   D. how schools are changing to reflect the economy
2. The word **"prosperity"** in the first paragraph could be best replaced by which of the following?
   A. success B. surplus C. nurturing D. education
3. Which of the following business schools has NOT shown a decrease in enrollment?
   A. Princeton B. Harvard C. Stanford D. Yale
4. The phrase **"trend of"** in the first paragraph is closest in meaning to which of the following?
   A. reluctance of B. drawback to
   C. movement forward D. extraction from
5. As used, the word **"seeking"** in the second paragraph could best be replaced by which of the following?
   A. examining B. avoiding C. seizing D. pursuing
6. Which of the following descriptions most likely applies to Wall Street?
   A. a center for international affairs B. a major financial center
   C. a shopping district D. a neighborhood of New York
7. The word **"plush"** in the second paragraph most probably means __________.
   A. legal B. satisfactory C. fancy D. dependable
8. According to the passage, what are two causes of declining business school enrollments?
   A. lack of necessity for an MBA and an economic recession
   B. low salary and foreign competition
   C. fewer MBA schools and fewer entry-level jobs
   D. declining population and economic prosperity
9. As used, the word **"struggling"** in the second paragraph is closest in meaning to __________.
   A. evolving B. plunging C. starting D. striving
10. Which of the following might be the topic of the next paragraph?
    A. MBA schools' efforts to change
    B. future economic predictions
    C. a history of the recent economic changes
    D. descriptions of non-MBA graduate programs

Exercise 10: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

A pilot cannot fly a plane by sight alone. In many conditions, such as flying at night and landing in dense fog, a pilot must use radar, an alternative way of navigating. Since human eyes are not very good at determining speeds of approaching objects, radar can show a pilot how fast nearby planes are moving.

The basic principle of radar is exemplified by what happens when one shouts in a cave. The echo of the sounds against the walls helps a person determine the size of the cave. With radar, however, the waves are radio waves instead of sound waves. Radio waves travel at the speed of light, about 300,000 kilometers in one second. A radar set sends out a short **burst** of radiation waves. Then **it** receives the echoes produced when the waves **bounce** off objects. By determining the time it takes for the echoes to return to the radar set, a trained technician can determine the distance between the radar set and other objects. The word "radar", in fact, gets its name from the term "radio detection and ranging". "Ranging" is the term for detection of the distance between an object and the radar set. Besides being of critical importance to pilots, radar is essential for air traffic control, **tracking** ships at sea, and for tracking weather systems and storms.

1. What is the main topic of this passage?
   A. the nature of radar B. types of ranging
   C. alternatives to radar D. history of radar
2. According to the passage, what can radar detect besides location of objects?
   A. size B. weight C. speed D. shape
3. Which of the following words best describes the tone of this passage?
   A. argumentative B. imaginative C. explanatory D. humorous

4. The phrase **"a burst"** in the second paragraph is closest in meaning in which of the following?
   A. an attachment B. a discharge C. a stream D. a ray
5. The word **"it"** in paragraph 2 refers to which of the following?
   A. a radar set B. a short burst
   C. a radiation wave D. light
6. Which of the following could best replace the word **"bounce"**?
   A. overturn B. groove C. extend D. rebound
7. Which type of waves does radar use?
   A. sound B. heat C. radio D. light
8. The word **"tracking"** in the second paragraph is closest in meaning to which of the following?
   A. repairing B. searching for C. glancing at D. fighting
9. Which of the following would most likely be the topic of the next paragraph?
   A. other uses of radar B. uses of sonar technology
   C. other technology used by pilots D. a history of flying
10. What might be inferred about radar?
   A. It takes the place of a radio.
   B. It gave birth to the invention of the airplane.
   C. It developed from a study of sound waves.
   D. It has improved navigational safety.

Exercise 11: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Carnegie Hall, the famous concert hall in New York, has again undergone a restoration. While this is not the first, it is certainly the most **extensive** in the building's history. As a result of this new restoration, Carnegie Hall once again has the quality of sound that it had when it was first built.

Carnegie Hall owes its existence to Andrew Carnegie, the wealthy owner of a steel company in the late 1800s. The hall was finished in 1891 and quickly gained a reputation as an excellent performing arts hall where accomplished musicians gained fame. Despite its reputation, however, the concert hall suffered from several **detrimental** renovations over the years. During the Great Depression, when fewer people could afford to attend performances, the directors sold part of the building to commercial businesses. As a result, a coffee shop was opened in one corner of the building, for which the builders replaced the brick and terra cotta walls with windowpanes. A renovation in 1946 seriously damaged the acoustical quality of the hall when the makers of the film *Carnegie Hall* cut a gaping hole in the dome of the ceiling to allow for lights and air vents. The hole was later covered with short curtains and a fake ceiling, but the hall never sounded the same afterwards.

In 1960, the violinist Isaac Stern became involved in restoring the hall after a group of real estate developers **unveiled** plans to demolish Carnegie Hall and build a high-rise office building on the site. This threat **spurred** Stern to rally public support for Carnegie Hall and encouraged the city of New York to buy the property. The movement was successful, and the concert hall is now owned by the city. In the current restoration, builders tested each new material for its sound qualities, and they replaced the hole in the ceiling with a dome. The builders also restored the outer walls to their original appearance and closed the coffee shop. Carnegie Hall has never sounded better, and its prospects for the future have never looked more promising.

1. This passage is mainly about ______________.
   A. changes to Carnegie Hall
   B. the appearance of Carnegie Hall
   C. Carnegie Hall's history during the Great Depression
   D. damage to the ceiling in Carnegie Hall
2. The word **"extensive"** in the first paragraph could be best replaced by which of the following?
   A. fabulous B. thorough C. devoted D. continuous
3. What is the meaning of the word **"detrimental"** in the second paragraph?
   A. dangerous B. significant C. extreme D. harmful
4. What major change happened to the hall in 1946?
   A. The acoustic dome was damaged.
   B. Space in the building was sold to commercial businesses.
   C. The walls were damaged in an earthquake.
   D. The stage was renovated.
5. What was Isaac Stern's relationship to Carnegie Hall?
   A. He made the movie "Carnegie Hall" in 1946.
   B. He performed on opening night in 1891.
   C. He tried to save the hall, beginning in 1960.
   D. He opened a coffee shop in Carnegie Hall during the Depression.
6. What was probably the most important aspect of the recent renovation?
   A. restoring the outer wall B. expanding the lobby
   C. restoring the plaster trim D. repairing the ceiling
7. Which of the following is closest in meaning to the word **"unveiled"** in the third paragraph?
   A. announced B. restricted C. overshadowed D. located
8. The author uses the word **"spurred"** in the third paragraph to show that Stern ______________.
   A. predicted the result B. probed the plans
   C. was told in advance D. was stimulated to act
9. How does the author seem to feel about the future of Carnegie Hall?
   A. ambiguous B. guarded C. optimistic D. negative

10. Which of the following would most likely be the topic of the next paragraph?
    A. a scientific explanation of acoustics and the nature of sound
    B. a description of people's reactions to the newly renovated hall
    C. a discussion of the coffee shop that once was located in the building
    D. further discussion about the activities of Isaac Stern in 1960

Exercise 12: Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Situated in the central mountains of Alaska, a peak named Denali rises 20,320 feet above sea level. It is the highest peak in North America and the center of Denali National Park. One of America's greatest wilderness areas, the park has had limited access to visitors, but in spite of this tourism rose from under 6,000 visitors in 1950 to over 546,000 visitors in 1990. The increasing popularity of this park is **prompting** serious discussions about the future use of Denali as well as how to preserve wilderness areas in general.

One important issue of land use **arises** when parts of National Parks are owned by individuals. In Denali, though most of the land in this vast **tract** of more than a million acres is owned by the National Park Service, several thousand acres are still privately owned as mining tracts. These mining tracts in Denali were once **abundant** sources of gold, but they were sources of heavy metals such as arsenic and lead that polluted rivers and streams.

Environmentalists were successful in getting the government to require mining companies to submit statements showing the **potential impact** of a mining project before they are allowed to begin mining. Because of this requirement, many individuals closed their mines and some sold their land to the National Park Service. Some land owners, however, are wondering if it is better to sell their land to the government or keep it for possible future use. Tourism in this previously remote area is bound to rise, as more roads are built to provide easier access to the park. This increase in the number of visitors creates a demand for hotels and other real estate development. The economic implications of this are of interests to the land owners, but are dismaying to those interested in preserving the wilderness.

1. What is the primary focus of this passage?
    A. controversies over land use in Denali
    B. miners selling their property in Denali
    C. Alaska building more roads to Denali
    D. limiting tourist access to Denali
2. The word **"prompting"** in the first paragraph could best be replaced by which of the following?
    A. promising B. sanctioning C. initiating D. trapping
3. The word **"arises"** in the second paragraph could be best replaced by __.
    A. surrenders B. occurs C. volunteers D. prospers

4. The word **"tract"** in the second paragraph as used in the passage refers to which of the following?
    A. trail B. resort C. frontier D. expanse
5. Which of the following is most similar to the word **"abundant"** in the second paragraph?
    A. plentiful B. sparse C. hopeful D. absolute
6. According to the passage, which of the following are pollutants in the Denali area?
    A. gold B. pesticides C. human waste D. arsenic
7. Which of the following is closest in meaning to the phrase **"potential impact"** in the third paragraph?
    A. appropriate cost B. expected value
    C. proposed size D. possible effects
8. The author infers that some mine owners might hesitate to sell their land to the Park Service for which of the following reasons?
    A. There may be increasing demand for the ore in the mines.
    B. They might want to build a house on their property.
    C. They might receive more money selling their lands to developers.
    D. They might want to move to the towns.
9. What is the author's purpose in writing this passage?
    A. to demonstrate the changes in Denali National Park
    B. to use Denali as an example of common park issues
    C. to introduce the wonders of the wilderness area of Denali
    D. to explain the problems occurring in Denali Park
10. Which of the following would most likely be the topic of the next paragraph in this passage?
    A. conflict between land owners and environmentalists
    B. the role of the National Park Service in development
    C. tourist needs in Denali Park
    D. wildlife in the park

Chuyên đề 6:

KĨ NĂNG VIẾT

Dạng bài tập chuyển hóa (sentence transformation) có thể kiểm tra một khía cạnh ngữ pháp trong từng câu như trong đề thi Tốt nghiệp THPT, còn ở cấp độ đề thi tuyển sinh vào đại học, cao đẳng thì dạng bài tập này có thể kiểm tra hơn một khía cạnh ngữ pháp trong từng câu.

Dạng bài tập trắc nghiệm phát hiện lỗi sai đều có trong cả đề thi Tốt nghiệp THPT và đề thi tuyển sinh vào đại học, cao đẳng. Để làm tốt dạng bài tập này, các em học sinh có thể thực hiện theo các bước gợi ý sau:

1. Đọc kĩ 4 phần gạch dưới trong mỗi câu.
2. Xem xét các từ/ cụm từ đứng ngay trước hoặc sau mỗi phần được gạch dưới để biết được thì, cấu trúc của câu đó.
3. Qua việc liên hệ với các từ/ cụm từ đứng ngay trước hoặc sau mỗi phần được gạch dưới có thể tìm được ngay phần chứa lỗi sai.
4. Nếu chưa tìm được phần chứa lỗi sai ngay, hãy dùng phương pháp loại trừ dần những phần gạch dưới đúng để chốt lại phần chứa lỗi sai cần tìm.

Bài tập trắc nghiệm tìm câu đồng nghĩa có mục đích kiểm tra kiến thức ngữ pháp ở cấp độ câu thông qua việc yêu cầu học sinh đọc và chọn câu đồng nghĩa trong 4 phương án đã cho đúng nhất so với câu gốc. Đáp án được lựa chọn phải đúng về ngữ pháp và có nghĩa gần nhất với câu đã cho.

Để làm tốt dạng bài tập viết, ta cần ôn một số điểm sau:

I. Các loại mệnh đề phụ

Ngoài mệnh đề chính, ta còn có mệnh đề phụ (subordinate clauses). Sau đây là các loại mệnh đề phụ thường gặp.

1. Mệnh đề quan hệ (relative clauses)

Mệnh đề quan hệ là mệnh đề bắt đầu bằng các đại từ quan hệ *who*, *whom*, *which*, *that*, *whose* hoặc các trạng từ quan hệ *where*, *when*, *why*.

They decided not to import things which/ that we could produce ourselves.

We stopped to help a driver whose car had broken down.

- Mệnh đề quan hệ có thể rút gọn thành cụm phân từ (participle phrase) với hai loại sau:

+ cụm hiện tại phân từ V-ing (present participle phrase) mang nghĩa chủ động

+ cụm quá khứ phân từ V-ed/V$_3$ (past participle phrase) mang nghĩa bị động

People who travel into the city every day are used to the traffic jam.

→ People travelling into the city every day are used to the traffic jam.

The song which was written by my uncle has become famous.

→ The song written by my uncle has become famous.

- Mệnh đề quan hệ có thể rút gọn thành ngữ danh từ đồng vị (apposition).

Oak, which is one of the most durable hard woods, is often used to make furniture.

→ Oak, one of the most durable hard woods, is often used to make furniture.

- Mệnh đề quan hệ có thể rút gọn thành cụm động từ nguyên mẫu (to-infinitive phrase) sau cấu trúc:

the first/ second/.../ the last/ the only / the oldest... (so sánh nhất)

Who was the first person that conquered Mount Everest?

→ Who was the first person to conquer Mount Everest?

She is the only student who has signed up for the course.

→ She is the only student to sign up for the course.

My uncle was the oldest learner who attended that class.

→ My uncle was the oldest learner to attend that class.

2. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ (adverb clauses)

- Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ nguyên nhân là mệnh đề bắt đầu các liên từ như *because, as, since, for, seeing that.*
- Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ mục đích là mệnh đề bắt đầu các liên từ như *so that, in order that, for fear that, in case.*
- Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian là mệnh đề bắt đầu các liên từ như *when, while, before, after, since, as, till, until, as soon as, once.*
- Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thể cách là mệnh đề bắt đầu các liên từ như *as, as if, as though.*
- Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ kết quả là mệnh đề bắt đầu các liên từ như *so* (+ tính từ + *that*), *such* (+ danh từ + *that*).
- Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự tương phản là mệnh đề bắt đầu các liên từ như *though, although, no matter...*
- Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ điều kiện là mệnh đề bắt đầu các liên từ như *if, unless, provided that, providing that, supposing.*
- Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự so sánh là mệnh đề bắt đầu các liên từ như *as .... as, -er than....*

Ví dụ:

Don't put off going to the dentist until you have a problem.

Since credit cards are so convenient, many people use them.

Some people arrived in taxis while others took the subway.

Once you have done the basic course, you can go on to the more advanced one.

Lưu ý:

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ có thể rút gọn thành các cụm từ với các liên từ *although, while, if, when, before, after, until* nhưng không với *because.*

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ có thể rút gọn với phân từ (Reduced adverb clauses with participles):

Although it had been damaged, the machine was still operational.

→ Although damaged, the machine was still operational.

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ có thể rút gọn với tính từ (Reduced adverb clauses with adjectives):

Although he was nervous, he gave a wonderful speech.

→ Although nervous, he gave a wonderful speech.

3. Mệnh đề danh ngữ (noun clauses)

Mệnh đề danh ngữ thường bắt đầu với *that, if, whether* hoặc một từ dùng để hỏi như *what, when, where, how...*

- Mệnh đề danh ngữ làm chủ ngữ:

When the summit meeting will be held has not been decided.
That the majority of students in Vietnam learn English is obvious.

- Mệnh đề danh ngữ làm tân ngữ:

We know that astronauts were very tired after their long trip.
The figures show how much the population has increased.

- Mệnh đề danh ngữ làm bổ ngữ:

The advantage of DVD is that it gives you much better picture quality.
It seems that the company has made a mistake in its marketing strategy.

- Mệnh đề danh ngữ với chức năng ngữ đồng vị:

You can't deny the fact that his fingerprints were on the gun.
(mệnh đề danh ngữ là ngữ đồng vị của "the fact")
There is a rumour going round that the exam papers have been stolen.
(mệnh đề danh ngữ là ngữ đồng vị của "rumour")

4. Những lỗi thường gặp với mệnh đề và cụm từ.

- Mệnh đề quan hệ thiếu đại từ quan hệ.
  Câu sai: *I think the man is talking to John works for my company.*
  Câu đúng: ……*the man **who** is talking to John….*
- Mệnh đề quan hệ thiếu động từ.
  Câu sai: *Asking questions which essential in learning a language can be difficult for beginners.*
  Câu đúng: …..*which **is** essential in….*
- Dùng mệnh đề quan hệ rút gọn với hành động đã hoàn tất.
  Câu sai: *The man escaping from prison is said to be dangerous.*
  Câu đúng: *The man **who escaped** from….*
- Dùng *but* đi với *although* trong mệnh đề trạng ngữ.
  Câu sai: *Although John was tired but he kept on working until midnight.*
  Câu đúng: *Although John was tired, he kept on….*
- Dùng sai đại từ quan hệ trong mệnh đề danh từ làm ngữ đồng vị.
  Câu sai: *The news which the plane had crashed came as a terrible shock.*
  Câu đúng: *The news **that** the plane had crashed…*(*that* ở đây là liên từ không phải là đại từ)
- Dùng cụm phân từ và mệnh đề chính có chủ từ không chỉ cùng đối tượng.
  Câu sai: *Walking along the street, a car crashed into a lorry.*
  Câu đúng: *Walking along the street, I saw a car crash into a lorry.*
- Dùng sai hình thức phân từ:
  Câu sai: *Founding in 1076, the Royal College is the oldest university in the country.*
  Câu đúng: *Founded in 1076, the Royal College is the oldest university in the country.*
- Dùng sai hình thức động từ nguyên mẫu.
  Câu sai: *Cross the river was one of the most difficult tasks in our expedition.*
  Câu đúng: ***Crossing** the river was one of the most…*
- Dùng sai giới từ hoặc liên từ.
  Câu sai: *Because his wife being there, I said nothing about it.*
  Câu đúng: *Because his wife **was** there, I said nothing about it.*
  hoặc ***Because of** his wife being there, I said nothing about it.*
  Câu sai: *Despite parrots are tropical birds, they can live in temperate or even cold climate.*
  Câu đúng: *Although parrots are tropical birds, they can live…*

II. Hình thức đảo ngữ của chủ từ và động từ (inversion of subject and verb)

Người ta dùng hình thức đảo ngữ này trong một số trường hợp để nhấn mạnh. Khi đó ta đảo động từ ra trước chủ từ.

Sau đây là một số trường hợp đảo ngữ thường gặp trong tiếng Anh.

1. Đảo ngữ với các từ phủ định (inversion with negatives).

Những trạng từ và ngữ trạng từ quan trọng nhất là:
hardly ever = hầu như không bao giờ
hardly… when/ scarcely… when/ no sooner… than = vừa mới…. thì
not only…. = không những
not until/till = không… cho tới khi
nowhere = không nơi nào
on no account = không vì bất cứ lí do gì
only by = chỉ bằng cách
only in this way = chỉ bằng cách này
only then/when = chỉ lúc đó/ chỉ khi nào
scarcely ever = hầu như không bao giờ
seldom = ít khi

Sự đảo ngữ này được thực hiện bằng cách đưa trợ động từ (auxiliary verb) đứng trước chủ từ:

Từ/ cụm từ phủ định + trợ động từ + chủ từ + động từ chính

Ví dụ:
*Never in my life **have I seen** such a strange behavior.*
*Only after arriving at the office **did I realize** that I had forgotten to turn off the gas cooker.*
*No sooner **does he learn** a few English words than he forgets them all.*
*Under no circumstances **can you open** this door.*
*Not until he had retired **did he think** about having a holiday.*
*Not only **did she pass** the exam but she also got scholarship.*
*Nowhere **have I felt** as comfortable as this town.*

2. Đảo ngữ sau các cấu trúc ***"so + tính từ… that"***, ***"such + be… that"***, ***"neither/ nor"***.

Ví dụ:

So alike ***were the twins*** *that few people could tell them apart.*

Such ***is the popularity of the play*** *that the theater is likely to be full every night.*

He had no money, nor ***did he know*** *anyone he could borrow from.*

After the accident, Jane couldn't hear, and neither ***could she see.***

3. Đảo ngữ sau một số từ/ cụm từ chỉ nơi chốn (inversion with place expressions).

   Khi đặt một số trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn ở đầu câu kết hợp với một số động từ như *"stand, sit, lie, come, go..."*, ta có hình thức đảo ngữ của chủ từ và động từ.

   Ví dụ:

   Around the corner ***is the hospital.***

   On the grass ***sat an enormous frog.***

   In the doorway ***stood her father.***

   Under the tree ***was lying some children.***

4. Đảo ngữ trong câu điều kiện (inversion with conditionals).

   Ta có thể dùng hình thức đảo ngữ này để lược bỏ từ "if" trong câu điều kiện. Khi đó ta đưa các trợ động từ như *"should, were, had"* ra trước chủ từ.

   Ví dụ:

   If you see Jane, please give her this message.

   → ***Should you see*** *Jane, please give her this message.*

   He would get the job if he were more careful in writing his résumé.

   → *He would get the job* ***were he*** *more careful in writing his résumé.*

   If the goalkeeper had played bettwe, we would have won the game.

   → ***Had the goalkeeper played*** *better, we would have won the game.*

III. Cấu trúc song hành (parallel structure)

Cấu trúc song hành là cấu trúc đòi hỏi phải sử dụng cùng một loại cấu trúc ngữ pháp cho những ý có liên quan với nhau và có cùng mức quan trọng trong câu.

Ví dụ: *I like to sing and ~~dancing~~.*

→ *I like* ***singing*** *and* ***dancing***. hoặc *I like* ***to sing*** *and* ***to dance.***

1. Cấu trúc song hành có thể được dùng cho hai từ, hai cụm từ hoặc hai mệnh đề. Hai thành phần này trong cấu trúc song hành phải có dạng giống nhau.

   Ví dụ:

   Ann enjoys swimming, riding and ~~to play~~ tennis.

   → *Ann enjoys* ***swimming, riding*** *and* ***playing*** *tennis.*

   The team leader demanded from his team members a serious attitude towards work, good team spirit, and ~~that they work hard~~.

   → *The team leader demanded from his team members* ***a serious attitude towards work, good team spirit****, and* ***their hard work.***

2. Cấu trúc song hành được dùng với các liên từ đẳng lập (coordinate conjunctions).

Các liên từ đẳng lập như *and, but, or* liên kết các danh từ, động từ, tính từ, trạng từ, cụm từ, mệnh đề với các ý tương đương và có cùng mức quan trọng trong câu.

danh từ		*danh từ*
động từ	***and***	*động từ*
tính từ	***but***	*tính từ*
trạng từ	***or***	*trạng từ*
cụm từ		*cụm từ*
mệnh đề		*mệnh đề*

Ví dụ:

The examination last week was short but ~~causing difficulty~~.

→ *The examination last week was* ***short*** *but* ***difficult.***

There are students in the classroom and ~~some are in front of the building~~.

→ *There are students* ***in the classroom*** *and* ***in front of the building.***

3. Cấu trúc song hành được dùng với các cặp liên từ.

   Cấu trúc song hành cũng dùng với cặp liên từ liên kết các danh từ, động từ, tính từ, trạng từ, cụm từ, mệnh đề với các ý tương đương và có cùng mức quan trọng trong câu.

both	*danh từ*	***and***	*danh từ*
either	*động từ*	***or***	*động từ*
neither	*tính từ*	***nor***	*tính từ*
not only	*trạng từ*	***but also***	*trạng từ*
	cụm từ		*cụm từ*
	mệnh đề		*mệnh đề*

   Ví dụ:

   I know both where you went and ~~the thing you did~~.

   → *I know both* ***where you went*** *and* ***what you did.***

   The tickets are neither in my pocket nor ~~I keep in my wallet~~.

   → *The tickets are neither* ***in my pocket*** *nor* ***in my wallet.***

4. Cấu trúc song hành được dùng với các dạng so sánh.

   Khi thực hiện sự so sánh, ta chỉ ra sự giống nhau hoặc khác nhau giữa hai đối tượng, và hai đối tượng này phải có cấu trúc ngữ pháp giống nhau.

danh từ	***more ... than***	*danh từ*
động từ	***-er ... than***	*động từ*
tính từ	***less ... than***	*tính từ*
trạng từ	***as ... as***	*trạng từ*
cụm từ	***the same ... as***	*cụm từ*
mệnh đề	***similar ... to***	*mệnh đề*

   Ví dụ:

   To be rich is better than ~~poor~~. → ***To be rich*** *is better than* ***to be poor.***

IV. Câu chẻ hay câu nhấn mạnh (Cleft sentences)

Ta có thể dùng cấu trúc "It is/was…that" để nhấn mạnh phần ta muốn nói bằng cách đưa thành phần muốn nhấn mạnh vào giữa *It is/was* và *that*, phần còn lại của câu được đặt sau *that*. Thành phần được nhấn mạnh có thể là chủ ngữ, tân ngữ, hoặc trạng ngữ trong câu.

1. Subject focus (nhấn mạnh chủ ngữ)

Để nhấn mạnh chủ ngữ, ta đưa chủ ngữ đó vào giữa *It is/was* và *who* hoặc *that*. Đối với chủ ngữ chỉ người, ta có thể dùng *who* hoặc *that*; đối với chủ ngữ chỉ vật, sự vật, con vật thì ta dùng *that*.

It is/was + subject (for person) + who/that + verb….

It is/was + subject (for things/ animals) + that + verb….

Ví dụ: *Ms Lan Phuong teaches English at Chu Van An School.*

→ *It is Ms Lan Phuong who teaches English at Chu Van An School.*

(Chính cô Lan Phương dạy tiếng Anh ở trường Chu Văn An.)

My father bought a new car last Saturday.

→ *It was my father who bought a new car last Saturday.*

(Chính cha tôi đã mua một ô tô mới thứ Bảy tuần trước.)

English becomes more and more popular in the world.

→ *It is English that becomes more and more popular in the world.*

(Đó chính là tiếng Anh trở nên ngày càng phổ biến trên thế giới.)

2. Object focus (nhấn mạnh tân ngữ)

Để nhấn mạnh tân ngữ, ta đưa tân ngữ đó vào giữa *It is/was* và *that*.

It is/was + object + that + subject + verb…

Ví dụ: *I met Lan at the party.*

→ *It was Lan that I met at the party.*

(Đó chính là Lan người mà tôi gặp ở buổi tiệc.)

She sent her friend the postcard.

→ *It was the postcard that she sent her friend.*

(Đó chính là tấm bưu thiếp mà cô ấy gửi cho bạn.)

Lưu ý: Khi nhấn mạnh tân ngữ chỉ người, ta có thể dùng *who/whom* hoặc *that*. Tuy nhiên khi tân ngữ là danh từ riêng thì *that* được dùng phổ biến hơn là *who/whom*.

Ví dụ: *It was his wife who(m)/that he met in Britain.*

It was Mr. Nam that I met at the meeting.

3. Adverbial focus (nhấn mạnh trạng ngữ)

Để nhấn mạnh trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn, phương cách, lí do…, ta đưa trạng ngữ đó vào giữa *It is/was* và *that*.

It is/was + adverbial phrase + that + subject + verb…

Ví dụ: *My father bought a new car last Saturday.*

→ *It was last Saturday that my father bought a new car.*

(Chính vào thứ Bảy tuần trước cha tôi đã mua một ô tô mới.)

I was born in this house.

→ *It was in this house that I was born.*

(Chính trong ngôi nhà này tôi được sinh ra.)

You can kill computer viruses by using some software.

→ *It is by using some software that you can kill computer viruses.*

(Chính là bằng cách dùng phần mềm bạn có thể tiêu diệt vi-rút máy tính.)

The father repaired the bicycle for Nam.

→ *It was for Nam that the father repaired the bicycle.*

(Chính là vì cho Nam mà cha cậu ấy sửa chiếc xe đạp.)

Ghi chú:

– Dạng phủ định cũng có thể được sử dụng trong câu chẻ.

Ví dụ: *My sister didn't write this letter.*

→ *It wasn't my sister who wrote this letter.*

– Trong tiếng Anh thông dụng, ta thường dùng *It's me* và *It's us* hơn là *It's I* và *It's we*.

Ví dụ: *It's us that have helped him out of the problem.*

V. Các cấu trúc thường gặp khác cần lưu ý

1. Thể truyền khiến (causative form)

To have somebody do something (sai khiến ai/ bảo ai làm gì)

I'll have John fix my laptop.

To get somebody to do something (sai khiến ai/ bảo ai làm gì)

They got the technician to repair the laptop.

To have/ to get something done (làm một việc gì bằng cách thuê/ sai khiến người khác)

I had my car washed and dried.

2. Cấu trúc với *unless* được sử dụng với nghĩa "trừ khi, trừ trường hợp…". khi mệnh đề *unless* đứng ở đầu câu, nó được tách biệt với mệnh đề chính bằng dấu phẩy.

You won't have a sick leave unless you have a doctor's note.

Unless something unexpected happens, I'll attend the meeting.

3. Cấu trúc với *until* (cho đến khi).

Let's wait until the rain stops.

Until she spoke I hadn't realized she wasn't English.

They did not come until the meeting was half over.

Cấu trúc "**It + be + not + until**" đặt ở vị trí đầu câu được sử dụng để nhấn mạnh hành động nào đó mãi đến thời điểm đó mới xảy ra.

It was not until 9 o'clock that I got out of bed. (= I didn't get out of bed until 9 o'clock./ I stayed in bed until 9 o'clock.)

It was not until the meeting was half over that they came. (= They did not come until the meeting was half over.)

Bài tập câu đảo ngữ

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Not only __________.
A. he refused to help me but he also made fun of me
B. did he refuse to help me but he made fun of me also
C. did he refuse to help me but he also made fun of me
D. he did refuse to help me but also made fun of me

2. ______ had she opened the cupboard door than she stood in front of it petrified.
A. No sooner   B. As soon as   C. Hardly   D. The fact

3. ______ with enough life-boats she wouldn't have caused so heavy casualties.
A. Were the Titanic to be equipped   B. The Titanic were to be equipped
C. The Titanic was to be equipped   D. Had the Titanic been equipped

4. It was not until the doctors asked him to comment on his death ______ recognized their craziness.
A. when he   B. and he   C. that he   D. he

5. George would certainly have attended the meeting ______.
A. if he didn't get a flat tire   B. if the flat tire hadn't happened
C. had he not had a flat tire   D. had the tire not flattened itself

6. _______ received law degrees as today.
A. Never so many women have   B. Never have so many women
C. The women aren't ever   D. Women who have never

7. _______ during his dinner with us.
A. Not did my grandfather say a single word
B. Not said a single word did my grandfather
C. Not my grandfather said a single word
D. Not a single word did my grandfather say

8. There is no water on the moon, nor ______ an atmosphere around it.
A. there is   B. it is   C. there is not   D. is there

9. _______ the work when his wife came in with two policemen.
A. Had he hardly finished   B. Had hardly he finished
C. Hardly he had finished   D. Hardly had he finished

10. Not until the first land plants developed _______.
A. land animals appeared   B. did land animals appear
C. would land animals appear   D. the land animals appeared

Exercise 2: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Not only _______ in the field of psychology but animal behavior is examined as well.
A. is studied human behaviour   B. is human behavior studied
C. did human behavior study   D. human behavior studied

2. It was not until she had arrived home _______ remembered her appointment with the doctor.
A. when she   B. that she   C. and she   D. she

3. Not until a student has mastered algebra ______ the principles of geometry, trigonometry, and physics.
A. he can begin to understand   B. can he begin to understand
C. he begins to understand   D. that he can begin to understand

4. _______ they go to the theatre.
A. Only on rare occasions   B. Only on rare occasions do
C. On rare occasions only   D. Only do on rare occasions

5. _______ pleased with himself.
A. Only after John received the first prize was he
B. Only after John received the first prize he was
C. After John received the first prize only was he
D. After John received the first prize only he was

6. ______ the lights went out.
A. Hardly had the performance begun when
B. Hardly the performance had begun when did
C. Hardly had the performance begun than
D. Hardly the performance had begun than did

7. __________ visited her.
A. Had I known she was sick, I would have
B. No sooner had I known she was sick, I would have
C. No sooner had I known she was sick than I
D. Hardly had I known she was sick when I

8. ________ I would give a party.
A. Were she to come next month   B. She were to come next month
C. She comes next month   D. She would come next month

9. ______ more help, I could call my neighbour.
A. Needed   B. Should I need   C. I have needed   D. I should need

10. ______ my father sat down for lunch than there was a knock at the door.
A. Hardly had   B. No sooner had
C. At no time had   D. Never before had

Exercise 3: Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. ______ the book, please return it to me.
A. Should you find   B. Will you be finding
C. will you find   D. Will you have found

2. ______ graduated from college.
A. Nowhere does he found a job after he had
B. Nowhere did he find a job after he had
C. Not anywhere did he find a job after had he
D. Nowhere did he find a job after had he

3. ________ he sold the house.
A. Hardly did he have time to settle down when
B. Hardly has he had time to settle down when
C. No sooner had he had time to settle down when
D. No sooner had he had time to settle down than

4. _______ lost all his clothes.
A. Before arriving in New York had he spent all his money and
B. No sooner had he arrived in New York than had he spent all his money
C. Not only had he spent all his money before arriving in New York but he also
D. Not only had he spent all his money before arriving in New York but had he also

5. _______ to speak to his wife about his ex-girlfriend!
A. Never has he again dared B. Never again has he dared
C. Again never has he dared D. Never again did he have dare

6. _______ to say too much about oneself.
A. Seldom does it wise B. Seldom is it wise
C. Seldom wise it is D. Seldom wise is it

7. Not until ______________.
A. I approached the flat did I realize that it was completely empty
B. did I approach the flat that I realized it was completely empty
C. I approached the flat that I realized completely was it empty
D. did I approach the flat I realized that it was completely empty

8. _________ most of the soldiers gave up!
A. So was the exercise difficult that
B. So difficult was the exercise that
C. So was the exercise difficult that did
D. So difficult was the exercise that did

9. _________ be impolite to our parents.
A. Not in any circumstances should we
B. In any circumstances shouldn't we
C. In no circumstances should we
D. No circumstances permit us to

10. ______ send the telegram.
A. No sooner the train should be delayed shall I
B. No sooner should the train be delayed than shall I
C. Should the train be delayed, I shall
D. Should the train is delayed shall I

Exercise 4: Choose the sentence that best rewrites the original one.

1. John certainly can't be held responsible for the accident.
A. In no way can John be held responsible for the accident.
B. Certainly can't John be held responsible for the accident.
C. For any reason can John not be held responsible for the accident.
D. On no account can John not be held responsible for the accident.

2. The police didn't at all suspect that the judge was the murderer.
A. At all didn't the police suspect that the judge was the murderer.
B. Little did the police suspect that the judge was the murderer.
C. Seldom did the police at all suspect that the judge was the murderer.
D. Never before suspected the police that the judge was the murderer.

3. You won't find fossils like this anywhere else.
A. Nowhere else will you find fossils like this.
B. Nowhere will you find fossils like this else.
C. Anywhere else won't you find fossils like this.
D. Anywhere will you not find fossils like this else.

4. The money is not to be paid under any circumstances.
A. Under no circumstances is the money not to be paid
B. Under any circumstances isn't the money to be paid
C. In any circumstances is the money not to be paid
D. In no circumstances is the money to be paid

5. The demand for the tickets was so great that people queued day and night.
A. So great the demand for the tickets was that people queued day and night.
B. So great was that the demand for the tickets people queued day and night.
C. Such was the demand for the tickets that people queued day and night.
D. Such great was demand for the tickets that people queued day and night.

6. Just after the play started there was a power failure.
A. Hardly did the play start then there was a power failure.
B. Hardly had the play started when there was a power failure.
C. No earlier had the play started than there was a power failure.
D. No sooner did the play start before there was a power failure.

7. Harry broke his leg, and also injured his shoulder.
A. Not only did harry break his leg but he also injured his shoulder.
B. Not only Harry broke his leg but also did he injure his shoulder.
C. Harry broke his leg and also did he injure his shoulder.
D. Also injured his shoulder did Harry break his leg.

8. The way so much money has been spent to so little purpose must be a record.
A. Never before so much money has been spent to so little purpose must a record be .
B. So much money has been spent to so little purpose must be a record.

C. So little must purpose be that so much money has been spent.
D. Never before has so much money been spent to so little purpose.

9. It was only the office phoned me that I found out about the meeting.
A. Not until did the office phone me did I find out about the meeting.
B. Not until the office phoned me did I find out about the meeting.
C. Only the office phoned me did I find out about the meeting.
D. Only after did the office phone me that I found out about the meeting.

10. He never suspected that she was a witch.
A. At no time did he suspect that she was a witch.
B. Never did he suspect that a witch she was.
C. Never a witch did he suspect that she was.
D. No before did he suspect was she a witch.

Exercise 5: Choose the sentence that best rewrites the original one.

1. I shall never forget her in my life.
A. Never I shall forget her in my life.
B. Never in my life shall I forget her.
C. Never forget her in my life shall I.
D. Never in my life I shall forget her.

2. She was so nice that many people wanted to make friends with her.
A. So nice was she that many people wanted to make friends with her.
B. So nice she was that many people wanted to make friends with her.
C. Such a nice girl she was that many people wanted to make friends with her.
D. Such nice a girl was she that many people wanted to make friends with her.

3. I can finish this work on time only if you help me.
A. Only if you help me I can finish this work on time.
B. I can finish this work on time do you help me only if.
C. Only if you help me can I finish this work on time.
D. This work can be finished on time only if do you help me.

4. As soon as I got into the bath, someone knocked at the door.
A. As soon as had I got into the bath that someone knocked at the door.
B. Hardly I had got into the bath when did someone knock at the door.
C. No sooner had I got into the bath than someone knocked at the door.
D. Barely did I get into the bath before someone had knocked at the door.

5. If you need money, go to the banks before 4.30 pm.
A. Need you money, go to the banks before 4.30 pm.
B. Will you need money, go to the banks before 4.30 pm.
C. You can go to the banks before 4.30 pm unless you need money.
D. Go to the banks before 4.30 pm should you need money.

6. She is not only beautiful but also can study very well.
A. Not only she is beautiful but can she also study very well.
B. Not only is she beautiful but she can also study very well.
C. Not only beautiful she is but also can she study very well.
D. Not only beautiful is she but she also can study very well.

7. If they had asked, I would have had to tell them.
A. I would have had to tell them had they asked.
B. I would have had to tell them would they have asked.
C. Did they ask, I would have had to tell them.
D. Would I have had to tell them if they had asked.

8. Paul hardly ever opens his mouth at the staff meeting.
A. Hardly ever Paul opens his mouth at the staff meeting.
B. Hardly ever does Paul open his mouth at the staff meeting.
C. At the staff meeting does Paul hardly ever open his mouth.
D. Ever hardly Paul does open his mouth at the staff meeting.

9. If Mr. Mills were still the headmaster, he wouldn't permit such bad behaviour.
A. Would he not permit such bad behavior if Mr. Mills were still the headmaster.
B. Did Mr. Mills be still the headmaster, he wouldn't permit such bad behaviour.
C. Were Mr. Mills still the headmaster, he wouldn't permit such bad behaviour.
D. Should Mr. Mills have been the headmaster, he wouldn't permit such bad behaviour.

10. It was only when I heard the full story that I realized I had been taken in.
A. Only when did I hear the full story that I realized I had been taken in.
B. Only when did I hear the full story did I realize that I had been taken in.
C. Only when I heard the full story that I realized had I been taken in.
D. Only when I heard the full story did I realize that I had been taken in.

Bài tập trắc nghiệm hoàn thành câu

Exercise 1: Complete each sentence, using one of the four phrases given.

1. Never before in my life ____________.
A. I have ever tasted such a good apple
B. I had ever tasted such a good apple
C. have I ever tasted such a good apple
D. will I ever taste such a good apple

2. The car was too expensive _____________.
A. for us to buy　　B. for us to buy it
C. enough for us to buy　　D. that we wouldn't buy it

3. The accident _______ was the mistake of the driver.
A. which causes many people to die
B. to cause many people to die

C. caused great human loss
D. causing many people to die

4. The water well is said ____________.
A. dug by the local people a long time ago
B. to be dug by the local people a long time ago
C. to have been dug by the local people a long time ago
D. to dig by the local people a long time ago

5. ___________ seemed a miracle to all of us.
A. When he had recovered so soon
B. That he recovered so soon
C. What he recovered so soon
D. His recovery be so soon

6. It was imperative _________.
A. that he would arrive there in time
B. that he arrive there in time
C. that he had to arrive there in time
D. that he arrived there in time

7. _________ a helicopter, we would have saved the lives of the flood victims.
A. Haven't we had
B. Had we had
C. Did we have
D. May we have

8. Despite their efforts, __________.
A. they could not score another goal
B. another goal could not be scored
C. yet they could score another goal
D. and they could not score another goal

9. Supposing you had seen the incident, what _________?
A. would you do
B. would you have done
C. would you have been done
D. will you do

10. They were such difficult tests ___________.
A. that I couldn't finish
B. so I couldn't finish them
C. that I couldn't finish them
D. for me to finish

Exercise 2: Complete each sentence, using one of the four phrases given.

1. Peter has received several scholarships ____________.
A. as resulting of his ability in the arts and the academy
B. because of his academic and artistic ability
C. for both his academic ability as well as his artistic
D. not only because of his artistic but his academic ability

2. ________, he has never been out of his hometown.
A. Strange as it may seem
B. Strange may as it seem
C. May it seem strange
D. As strange it may seem

3. ________, we were all thirsty afterwards.
A. As a result of the soup was very salty
B. Although the soup was very salty
C. Because of the soup was very salty
D. As the soup was very salty

4. No sooner had the football match started _________.
A. than it started to rain heavily
B. than did it start to rain heavily
C. when did it start to rain heavily
D. when it started to rain heavily

5. __________ we've been having!
A. What a dreadful weather
B. What dreadful weather
C. How dreadful is the weather
D. How dreadful the weather

6. __________ has tickets is allowed in.
A. Only anyone whom
B. Only who is anyone
C. Only anyone who
D. Only is anyone who

7. The police advised ____________.
A. the man against hiding the truth
B. the man not hide the truth
C. the man not hiding the truth
D. the man not to hiding the truth

8. __________, this problem would not have happened.
A. You had followed the orders
B. You followed the orders
C. Had you followed the orders
D. Had you been followed the orders

9. It is important that _________.
A. an exact record should be kept
B. an exact record to be kept
C. keeping an exact record
D. to keep an exact record

10. This mountain is __________.
A. higher than that one nearly 100 metres
B. higher nearly 100 metres than that one
C. nearly 100 metres higher than that one
D. higher that one nearly 100 metres

Exercise 3: Complete each sentence, using one of the four phrases given.

1. Only after you finish your homework __________.
A. I will take you out for a walk
B. will be you taken out for a walk
C. you will be taken out for a walk
D. will I take you out for a walk

2. The classroom is empty. I think they _________ to the laboratory.
A. must have gone
B. need have gone
C. should have gone
D. can have gone

3. _________ the policeman arrived to arrest him.
A. He had entered the building no sooner than
B. No sooner had he entered the building than
C. Hardly had he entered the building than
D. No sooner he had entered the building than

4. ___________ poor results but also may cause accidents.
A. Haste does not only produce
B. Haste had not only produced
C. Haste not only produces
D. Haste produces not only

5. But for mobile phones, __________ it difficult to communicate with each other now.
A. we would have found   B. we would find
C. we will find   D. we find

6. The building __________ is going to be pulled down next month.
A. in where his house is located   B. in which his house is located in
C. where his house is located   D. where his house is located in

7. They complained ____________.
A. the landlady about the leak on the roof
B. to the landlady about the leak on the roof
C. about the leak on the roof to the landlady
D. about the landlady the leak on the roof

8. Mary's work was _________.
A. as good as if not better than ours
B. so good as if not better than ours
C. as good like if not better than our
D. as well as if not better than ours

9. Could you tell me ________?
A. what is the weather like today   B. what the weather is like today
C. what is the weather today   D. what the weather is today

10. Ann advised us to withdraw __________.
A. so as to get not involved   B. so as not to get involved
C. as not to get involved   D. as to get involved

Exercise 4: Complete each sentence, using one of the four phrases given.

1. ____________ causes of population growth.
A. Family planning's failure
B. Failure in family planning is one of the
C. Failure of family planning often
D. Failure in family planning are

2. The post office offers ________________.
A. a special mail service which is particularly fast
B. a special mail service, it is particularly fast
C. a special mail service, that is particularly fast
D. a special mail service who is particularly fast

3. If I were the British Prime Minister, ______________.
A. I'd lower taxes   B. I'd better lower taxes
C. I'd have lowered taxes   D. I'd lowered taxes

4. When I retire, ________________.
A. I'll do a lot of voluntary service for the Red Cross
B. I'll expect doing a lot of voluntary service for the Red Cross
C. a lot of voluntary service for the Red Cross will be done
D. a lot of voluntary service for the Red Cross will be expected to be done

5. Most people think that volunteer work should ____________.
A. encourage more in our communities
B. be encouraged more in our communities
C. be more encouraged in our communities
D. more encouraged in our communities

6. The building ____________ is being restored.
A. which built more than a century ago
B. built more than a century ago
C. was built more than a century ago
D. that built more than a century ago

7. The first person ____________.
A. to arrive at the meeting was the secretary
B. who arrives at the meeting was the secretary
C. arrived at the meeting was the secretary
D. who has arrived at the meeting was the secretary

8. What did you do? – After finishing my homework, ___________.
A. I go out for a drink with my friends
B. I went out for a drink with my friends
C. I had gone out for a drink with my friends
D. I have gone out for a drink with my friends

9. The post clerk ____________ is my sister.
A. is talking to customers   B. is to talk to customers
C. talking to customers   D. talks to customers

10. He is intelligent enough ______________.
A. to understand the problem
B. so that he can't understand the problem
C. for him to understand the problem
D. for us to understand the problem

Exercise 5: Complete each sentence, using one of the four phrases given.

1. The hotel ______________ was destroyed by a fire the next day.
A. which we stayed for two days   B. where we stayed in for two days
C. that we stayed for two days   D. in which we stayed for two days

2. Because of lack of money, ______________.
A. he can't do nothing   B. so that he could not do anything
C. he could do nothing   D. he avoided not buying some more items

3. Doctors advise ______________.
A. eating a lot of vegetables and doing regular exercise
B. that we to ear a lot of vegetables and to do regular exercise
C. to eat a lot of vegetables and to do regular exercise
D. All are correct.

4. I am going to buy ___________ with the money.
   A. either a camera or a DVD player
   B. both a camera or a DVD player
   C. either a camera and a DVD player
   D. not only a camera and also a DVD player

5. This is Mr. Brown, ___________.
   A. his son won the first prize in the talent show last week
   B. whom his son won the first prize in the talent show last week
   C. in the talent show last week whose son won the first prize
   D. whose son won the first prize in the talent show last week

6. Having found that I was not at home, ___________.
   A. police arrested the thief
   B. my house was broken into by the thief
   C. the thief broke into my house
   D. I didn't know that the thief broke into my house

7. The world ___________ was to be a great adventure for him.
   A. he knew very little   B. that he knew very little
   C. where he knew very little   D. about which he knew very little

8. ___________ the whale species.
   A. The hunting of whales are in danger   B. Whale hunting is in danger
   C. The hunting of whale endanger   D. Whale hunting endangers

9. Do you get on with the neighbours ___________?
   A. you live next door with them   B. that you live next door with them
   C. with whom you live next door to   D. who live next door

10. He isn't good enough to pass the test. He wishes ___________.
   A. he were good enough to pass the test
   B. he is good enough to pass the test
   C. he had been good enough to pass the test
   D. he will be good enough to pass the test

Exercise 6: Complete each sentence, using one of the four phrases given.

1. The film ___________ wasn't very interesting.
   A. that I saw last night on TV
   B. I saw on TV last night
   C. I saw it on TV last night
   D. which I last night saw on TV

2. Mr. Smith is the person ___________.
   A. whom I don't have much confidence in him
   B. I don't have much confidence
   C. in that I don't have much confidence
   D. in whom I don't have much confidence

3. The Asian Games ___________ intellectual knowledge and friendship within Asia.
   A. hold and develop   B. are held to develop
   C. are held and developed   D. which are held and developed

4. They would have paid you more ___________.
   A. if they were told of its value   B. unless they had told of its value
   C. would they be told of its value   D. had they been told of its value

5. The tree ___________ over one hundred years old.
   A. was estimated to be   B. was estimated that it has been
   C. had been estimated that it was   D. had estimated to be

6. I first started learning French ___________.
   A. since my first holiday in Paris   B. when I went to Paris for a holiday
   C. for my first holiday in Paris   D. in two years in Paris

7. While her father was travelling abroad, ___________.
   A. she writes him often
   B. she is waiting for him to return
   C. she received postcards from him quite often
   D. she had often written postcards to him

8. Linda started learning ___________.
   A. how to drive last year   B. what to drive last year
   C. to drive since last year   D. driving last year

9. There are far more restaurants in the city ___________.
   A. than it was   B. than it did
   C. than there used to be   D. than it was used to

10. I have been living in this part of the town ___________.
   A. when I moved here last month   B. for last month
   C. since two months   D. for a couple of months

Exercise 7: Complete each sentence, using one of the four phrases given.

1. Many good students sometimes have trouble ___________.
   A. to concentrate on the work   B. and concentrate in their work
   C. concentrating on their work   D. to concentrate in the work

2. After students are admitted to the university, they tend to pay more attention ___________.
   A. about extracurricular activities as to their class work
   B. with extracurricular activities than to their class work
   C. in extracurricular activities than their class work
   D. to extracurricular activities than to their class work

3. The United Kingdom has replaced many of its specialized secondary schools ___________.
   A. into comprehension high schools
   B. with comprehension high schools

C. as comprehension high schools
D. unless with comprehension high schools

4. Career preparation involves ______________.
A. to learn a variety of skills B. learning a variety of skills
C. what to learn a variety of skills D. that learning a variety of skills

5. Manufacturers can help conserve mineral and timber supplies _______.
A. which recycling materials left over from production processes
B. by recycling materials left over from production processes
C. that recycles materials being left over from production processes
D. recycling materials which left over from production processes

6. Many good students sometimes have trouble ___________.
A. to concentrate on the work
B. and concentrate in their work
C. concentrating on their work
D. to concentrate in the work

7. After students are admitted to the university, they tend to pay more attention ________.
A. about extracurricular activities as to their class work
B. with extracurricular activities than to their class work
C. in extracurricular activities than their class work
D. to extracurricular activities than to their class work

8. The United Kingdom has replaced many of its specialized secondary schools ________.
A. into comprehension high schools
B. with comprehension high schools
C. as comprehension high schools
D. unless with comprehension high schools

9. Career preparation involves ______________.
A. to learn a variety of skills B. learning a variety of skills
C. what to learn a variety of skills D. that learning a variety of skills

10. Manufacturers can help conserve mineral and timber supplies _______.
A. which recycling materials left over from production processes
B. by recycling materials left over from production processes
C. that recycles materials being left over from production processes
D. recycling materials which left over from production processes

Exercise 8: Complete each sentence, using one of the four phrases given.

1. In high school, students develop basic verbal and numerical skills, __________.
A. studying habits and other practical abilities
B. that study habits and other practical abilities
C. which study habits and other practical abilities
D. study habits and other practical abilities

2. The availability of labor-saving household appliances since 1950 ___________.
A. has contributed to the participation of women in the labor force
B. contributed to the participation of women in the labor force
C. contributing to the participation of women in the labor force
D. contributing to the participation of women who are in the labor force

3. As a little boy, _____________.
A. I used to take my father to the circus
B. my father used to take me to the circus
C. I used to be taken to the circus
D. my father used to be taken me to the circus

4. Before Doi Moi, people in that region _______________.
A. had lots of opportunities to find jobs
B. had to suffer severe unemployment
C. lacked of employment severely
D. suffered a severe lack for unemployment

5. In recent years, with the economic reforms _____________.
A. farmers have had more chance for export their products
B. their products have had more chance to be exported by farmers
C. farmers; products have had more chance to export
D. farmers have had more chance to export their products

6. His parents ____________, but they fail to stop him.
A. don't approve of what he does B. didn't approve with what he did
C. don't approve with what he did D. didn't approve of what he does

7. I can understand your English ______________.
A. if you make the grammar mistakes
B. however much grammar mistakes you make
C. despite you make the grammar mistakes
D. in spite of the grammar mistakes you make

8. I am glad to know that _______________.
A. I'd do what you'd forgiven me
B. I've done what you've forgiven me
C. you've forgiven me for what I've done
D. you'd forgiven me for what I'd do

9. Despite having worked in the field day after day, ____________.
A. the whole family could hardly enough to feed
B. her parents could hardly earn enough to feed the whole family
C. earning enough to feed the whole family is hardly for her parents
D. could her family hardly earn enough to feed her parents

10. The accident was my fault, ____________.
A. so I had to pay for the repairs
B. so I had to pay all the repairs

C. but I had to pay all the repairs
D. but I had to pay for the repairs

Exercise 9: Complete each sentence, using one of the four phrases given.

1. In the 1980's and 1990's, hundreds of protected areas ___________.
   A. would have been established in tropical forests
   B. may be established in tropical forests
   C. were established in tropical forests
   D. are established in tropical forests
2. Protecting the habitat is the key method ___________.
   A. to preserving endangered species
   B. to preserve dangerous species
   C. of preserving endangered species
   D. for the preserve endangered species
3. _____________ in the desert, cacti are the most popular.
   A. Despite other kinds of plants can be found
   B. In spite of finding other kinds of plants
   C. Although we can find other kinds of plants
   D. However other kinds of plants can be found
4. _______ to adapt themselves to the lack of water and extreme temperatures.
   A. Animals are living in the desert have
   B. Animals live in the desert have
   C. Animals that live in the desert has
   D. Animals living in the desert have
5. Camels' humps store fat __________.
   A. when crossing the desert and turn into food to help them survive
   B. and turn into food and help them survive when crossing the desert
   C. when crossing the desert that can turn into food to help them survive
   D. that can turn into food to help them survive when crossing the desert
6. Whenever he applies for a job, he gets the refusal ___________.
   A. before they know him to be 60 years old
   B. as soon as they know he is 60 years old
   C. while they know he is 60 years old
   D. because they know to be 60 years old
7. _____________ until I get my exam results.
   A. I will know if I have got into university
   B. I didn't know whether I got into university
   C. I won't know if I have got into university
   D. I knew whether I got into university
8. Modern women now work outside the home ______________.
   A. because they want to be economically independent
   B. in spite of their economical independence
   C. although they are economically independent
   D. so that they are economically dependent
9. Women today should ___________.
   A. pay the same wage as men B. pay as many wage as men
   C. be paid as many wage as men D. be paid the same wage as men
10. Today women in many countries make some of the decisions ______.
    A. of what will they do with their lives
    B. over what they would do with their lives
    C. about what they will do with their lives
    D. in what would they do with their lives

Exercise 10: Complete each sentence, using one of the four phrases given.

1. __________ in order to save endangered species.
   A. Efforts have made through different conservation
   B. Efforts have been made with different conservation
   C. Different conservation efforts have been made
   D. They have been made different conservation efforts
2. When all the trees in a region are cut, _____________.
   A. there is nothing remains but worthless desert
   B. nothing remains but worthless desert
   C. nothing but sand and land becomes desert
   D. sand and land becomes desert
3. Bill was growing ____________ as I told him the news.
   A. angrier and angrier B. more and more angry
   C. angry and angry D. more and more angrily
4. Do not start a book ___________.
   A. if you will see it is the one you can easily read and understand
   B. if you see it is the one you can easily read and understand
   C. unless you can see it is the one you can easily read and understand
   D. unless you cannot see it is the one you can easily read and understand
5. You'd better leave early. ________, the more chance you can get a good seat.
   A. The earlier you leave B. The early you leave
   C. The more early you leave D. The earliest you leave
6. I am very interested _____________.
   A. about the information you gave me.
   B. in the information you gave it to me
   C. in the information you gave me
   D. about the information you gave it to me
7. It takes him thirty minutes to go ___________.
   A. to work with motorbike every day
   B. to work on motorbike every day

C. to work by motorbike every day
D. working by motorbike every day

8. I haven't got ________________.
A. much money for buying that English book
B. any money to buy that English book
C. some money to buy that English book
D. no money to buy that English book

9. She regretted to tell him that ______________.
A. she was leaving the tickets at home
B. the tickets at home would be left
C. she would have left the tickets at home
D. she had left the tickets at home

10. I spent one hour ______________.
A. trying to find the answer to the question
B. to try to find the answer to the question
C. trying to find the answer with the question
D. to try to find the answer with the question

Bài tập trắc nghiệm tìm câu đồng nghĩa

Exercise 1: Choose the correct sentence among A, B, C or D which has the same meaning as the given one.

1. You can enrich your knowledge by listening to the radio.
A. You can be rich if you listen to the radio.
B. Listening to the radio makes you know less.
C. Listening to the radio enables you to be rich.
D. Listening to the radio can make you know more.

2. We started to write to each other three years ago.
A. We used to write to each other for three years.
B. We have written to each other for three years.
C. We have written to each other since three years.
D. We used to write to each other in three years.

3. It took him two hours to do his homework.
A. He did his homework two hours ago.
B. He finished his homework two hours ago.
C. He did his homework in two hours.
D. He spent two hours doing his homework.

4. He last had his eyes tested a year ago.
A. He hadn't tested his eyes for a year.
B. He didn't have any tests on his eyes in a year.
C. He hasn't had his eyes tested for a year.
D. The last time he tested his eyes was a year ago.

5. The exam lasted three hours.
A. We finished the exam at three o'clock.
B. It is a three-hours exam.
C. It is a three-hour exam.
D. It takes us three hours to take the exam.

6. If it hadn't been so late, I would have called you.
A. It was not late when I called you.
B. It was late, so I did not call you.
C. It was late, but I called you.
D. It was not late but I did not call you.

7. No one but the seven-year-old boy saw the accident.
A. Only the seven-year-old boy saw the accident.
B. No one at all saw the seven-year-old boy's accident.
C. The seven-year-old boy saw no one in the accident.
D. No one in the accident saw the seven-year-old boy.

8. Most people get fewer colds in summer than in winter.
A. A person is more likely to get a cold in winter.
B. More people have summer colds than winter colds.
C. People get colder in summer than in winter.
D. Winter is much colder than summer.

9. They are watering the flowers.
A. The flowers are being watered by them.
B. They need some water and flowers.
C. There are some water on the flowers.
D. They are putting the flowers in water.

10. I would rather you stopped talking about her.
A. I would rather stop talking about her.
B. I prefer you not to talk about her any more.
C. I would rather you not talk about her.
D. I want you to talk about her.

Exercise 2: Choose the correct sentence among A, B, C or D which has the same meaning as the given one.

1. Unlike her friends, Jane prefers an independent life.
A. Jane doesn't like her friends because she prefers an independent life.
B. Her friends live in an independent life and Jane doesn't like it.
C. Jane doesn't like her friends to live in a dependent life.
D. Jane prefers an independent life but her friends do not.

2. I used to live in Happy Valley.
A. I'm used to living in Happy Valley.
B. I'm living in Happy Valley.
C. I once lived in Happy Valley but no longer live there.
D. I've always lived in Happy Valley.

3. My sister speaks little German.
   - A. My sister can speak German rather well.
   - B. My sister doesn't speak much German.
   - C. My sister speaks German softly.
   - D. My sister speaks German badly.
4. Who made you work so hard yesterday?
   - A. Who forced you to work so hard yesterday?
   - B. Why did you work so hard yesterday?
   - C. What made you work so hard yesterday?
   - D. How could you work so hard yesterday?
5. Her father fell ill because he had worked so hard.
   - A. Her father was too ill to work hard.
   - B. Her father was ill and he could not work hard.
   - C. Her father didn't work hard because he fell ill.
   - D. Her father fell ill because of working so hard.
6. She didn't ring the bell but just walked in.
   - A. She just walked in without the bell ringing.
   - B. she just walked in not ringing the bell.
   - C. She just walked in and then rang the bell.
   - D. She just walked in without ringing the bell.
7. When they arrived, the good seats were already taken.
   - A. They didn't get good seats because they arrived too late.
   - B. They arrived late enough to get good seats.
   - C. They had to stand for a long time to have good seats.
   - D. They couldn't get good seats although they arrived early.
8. Anna never wants to see another horror film.
   - A. Anna hasn't seen a horror film.
   - B. Anna has enjoyed all the horror films she has seen.
   - C. Anna is tired of seeing horror films.
   - D. Anna is worried to miss the next horror film.
9. It won't rain tomorrow.
   - A. There won't be any rain tomorrow.
   - B. There won't be no rain tomorrow.
   - C. There won't be some rain tomorrow.
   - D. There won't be raining tomorrow.
10. Their game of badminton is always on Thursday.
   - A. They always play badminton on Thursday.
   - B. They have always played badminton on Thursday.
   - C. They always play their game on Thursday.
   - D. They play badminton always on Thursday.

Exercise 3: Choose the correct sentence among A, B, C or D which has the same meaning as the given one.

1. After he gets up, he enjoys having a bath.
   - A. He likes having a bath after he gets up.
   - B. He likes having a bath before he gets up.
   - C. He likes having a bath while he gets up.
   - D. He likes having a bath during he gets up.
2. She started school when she was six years old.
   - A. At the year of six, she started school.
   - B. At the time of six, she started school.
   - C. At the old of six, she started school.
   - D. At the age of six, she started school.
3. He couldn't afford the flat.
   - A. He didn't have enough money for the flat.
   - B. He had never afforded for the flat.
   - C. He couldn't stay in the flat.
   - D. He wouldn't buy the flat.
4. The villagers in my hometown lived in poverty.
   - A. The villagers in my hometown lived with poor people.
   - B. The villagers in my hometown were poor.
   - C. The villagers in my hometown live in a poor village.
   - D. The villagers in my hometown were living in a polluted environment.
5. Peter took a class to learn how to use a computer.
   - A. Peter used a computer for his class.
   - B. Peter joined a computing class in order to use a computer.
   - C. Peter took a computer to his class for students to learn.
   - D. Peter taught his students how to use a computer.
6. She likes learning Chemistry best.
   - A. Chemistry is one of her best subjects.
   - B. She tries her best to study Chemistry.
   - C. She finds Chemistry easy to study.
   - D. Chemistry is her favourite subject.
7. This flat is too small for my family.
   - A. This flat is not enough big for my family.
   - B. This flat is not big enough for my family.
   - C. This flat is not very big for my family.
   - D. This flat is not rather big for my family.
8. They didn't meet again until the war was over.
   - A. Because the war was over, they couldn't meet again.
   - B. They met again when the war happened.
   - C. They met again after the war had stopped.
   - D. They couldn't meet again although the war finished.

9. Smoking in the theater is forbidden.
   A. It is forbidden from smoking in the theater.
   B. It is forbidden from people to smoke in the theater.
   C. It is forbidden to smoke in the theater.
   D. The theater is forbidden to smoke in.
10. I'm looking for a job as a secretary.
   A. I'm looking for someone who works as a secretary.
   B. I'm trying to find a job as a secretary.
   C. A secretary is looking for a job as my job.
   D. I was offered a job as a secretary.

Exercise 4: Choose the correct sentence among A, B, C or D which has the same meaning as the given one.

1. "Never borrow money from friends," my father said.
   A. My father said to me never borrow money from friends.
   B. My father told me never to borrow money from friends.
   C. My father advised me not borrow money from friends.
   D. My father suggested me never borrowing money from friends.
2. Mr. Richards lost his job because he was late every day.
   A. If Mr. Richards were late every day, he would lose his job.
   B. If Mr. Richards had been late every day, he would have lost his job.
   C. If Mr. Richards weren't late every day, he wouldn't lose his job.
   D. If Mr. Richards hadn't been late every day, he wouldn't have lost his job.
3. It is difficult to start looking for a job at my age.
   A. I'm young, so it is difficult to start looking for a job.
   B. It is difficult for me to get employed at my age.
   C. Getting employed at such ages is also difficult.
   D. I don't think I can start looking for a job now.
4. Although she is intelligent, she doesn't do well at school.
   A. In spite of intelligent, but she doesn't do well at school.
   B. Despite being intelligent, she doesn't do well at school.
   C. Even though her intelligence, she doesn't do well at school.
   D. In spite the fact that she is intelligent, she doesn't do well at school.
5. Life in Vietnam in 2050 will be very different.
   A. Vietnam will be very different in 2050.
   B. The year 2050 will see great changes in Vietnam.
   C. The year 2050 will see great differences in life in Vietnam.
   D. People of Vietnam will make great changes for the country.
6. "Why don't you complain to the company, John?" said Peter.
   A. Peter asked John why he doesn't complain to the company.
   B. Peter advised John complaining to the company.
   C. Peter suggested John to complain to the company.
   D. Peter suggested that John should complain to the company.

7. He was driving very fast because he didn't know the road was icy.
   A. If he knew the road was icy, he wouldn't drive so fast.
   B. If he had known the road was icy, he wouldn't have been driving so fast.
   C. He wasn't driving very fast if he would know the road was icy.
   D. He hadn't been driving very fast if he would have known the road was icy.
8. He was annoyed because I walked across his field.
   A. He objected to me because I walked across his field.
   B. He objected to me to have walked across his field.
   C. He objected to my walking across his field.
   D. He objected for me to walk across his field.
9. The dictionary was so expensive that I didn't buy it.
   A. The dictionary was enough expensive for me to buy.
   B. The dictionary was too expensive for me to buy it.
   C. It was an expensive dictionary so that meant I didn't buy.
   D. It was such an expensive dictionary that I didn't buy it.
10. I'm sure it wasn't Mr. Pike you saw because he is in London.
   A. It couldn't be Mr. Pike you saw because he is in London.
   B. It can't have been Mr. Pike you saw because he is in London.
   C. It mustn't have been Mr. Pike you saw because he is in London.
   D. It mightn't be Mr. Pike you saw because he is in London.

Exercise 5: Choose the correct sentence among A, B, C or D which has the same meaning as the given one.

1. "Don't walk on the grass," the gardener said to us.
   A. The gardener said to us don't walk on the grass.
   B. The gardener told us not to walk on the grass.
   C. The gardener suggested us not to walk on the grass.
   D. The gardener advised us not walking on the grass.
2. Keeping calm is the secret of passing the driving test.
   A. Keep calm or you will pass the driving test.
   B. As long as you keep calm, you will pass the driving test.
   C. Unless you keep calm you will pass the driving test.
   D. Pass the driving test is without keeping calm.
3. If students have problems, you can ask questions to check their understanding.
   A. I advise you to ask questions to check their understanding.
   B. It's better to check their understanding by asking questions.
   C. Questions can be asked to check their understanding if students have problems.
   D. Asking questions to check their understanding if they have problems.
4. This passage focuses on helping students read faster.
   A. How to read this passage faster and faster.
   B. Reading faster in the content of this passage.

C. The purpose of this passage is to help students read more quickly.
D. The purpose of this passage is to helping students to read more quickly.

5. The exam was much easier than he had expected.
   A. The exam was much easier that he finished it all.
   B. He did not find the exam as difficult as he had thought.
   C. It's possible for him to perform well on the exam.
   D. He had expected that the exam was easy.
6. To find a house in this city is difficult.
   A. It's impossible to buy a house in this city.
   B. It's so difficult to find a house in this city.
   C. It's very difficult to build a house in this city.
   D. It costs a lot to rent a house in this city.
7. John and Mary have been married for five years.
   A. John and Mary's marriage life lasted five years.
   B. It took John and Mary five years to prepare their wedding.
   C. It is five years since John and Mary got married.
   D. John and Mary got married after five years of being friends.
8. It is important to let disabled children develop in the way they want.
   A. To let children develop in the way they want is important.
   B. To help disabled children develop in the way they want is important.
   C. To help disabled children develop in the way they want is unimportant.
   D. It is important that disabled children can't develop in the way they want.
9. Nam won the scholarship; he studied well.
   A. Nam, who studied well, won the scholarship.
   B. Nam, that studied well, won the scholarship.
   C. Nam who studied well won the scholarship.
   D. A and C are correct.
10. He is very lucky because his parents tried their best to help their son with his interest.
   A. He is fortunate because his parents are very famous.
   B. He is unlucky because his parents didn't try their best to help him with his interest.
   C. Because he is very interested in music, he is lucky.
   D. He is very lucky because his parents tried their best to help him follow his interest.

Exercise 6: Choose the correct sentence among A, B, C or D which has the same meaning as the given one.

1. My sister gets high pay because she works well.
   A. My sister will work well if she gets good salary.
   B. My sister gets high pay because of her good work.

   C. My sister works well because she is high.
   D. My sister gets a well-paid job and she works well.
2. Nobody has invited her to the party.
   A. No one has been invited to the party.
   B. She has invited nobody to the party.
   C. Nobody has given a party to her.
   D. She hasn't been invited to the party.
3. He started working as an engineer 5 years ago.
   A. He worked as an engineer 5 years ago.
   B. He had worked as an engineer for 5 years.
   C. He didn't work as an engineer any more.
   D. He has worked as an engineer for 5 years.
4. They have built a new bridge across the river.
   A. The new bridge across the river have been built.
   B. The new bridge has built across the river.
   C. A bridge has been built new across the river.
   D. A new bridge has been built across the river.
5. I will get home at about seven and I'll give you a ring then.
   A. I will give you a ring when I get home at about seven.
   B. I will give you a ring unless I get home at about seven.
   C. I will give you a ring then I get home at about seven.
   D. I will give you a ring when I will get home at about seven.
6. David used to smoke 20 cigarettes a day.
   A. David often smokes 20 cigarettes a day.
   B. David didn't use to smoke 20 cigarettes a day.
   C. David often smoked 20 cigarettes a day.
   D. David is used to smoking 20 cigarettes a day.
7. Nobody has finished the work.
   A. The work has been finished by everybody.
   B. The work haven't been finished.
   C. The work has been finished.
   D. The work hasn't been finished.
8. My brother prefers typing to writing by hand.
   A. My brother would rather type than write by hand.
   B. My brother doesn't like typing at all.
   C. My brother likes typing than writing by hand.
   D. My brother likes tying better writing by hand.
9. Getting to know a person is always time-consuming.
   A. Knowing a person so long is a waste of time.
   B. People spend time on knowing each other.
   C. It takes so long to get to know a person.
   D. It is time to get to know a person.

10. I haven't seen her since we left school.
   A. The last time I saw her was when we left school.
   B. The last time I saw her was when we were at school.
   C. I last saw her when we left school.
   D. A and C are correct.

Exercise 7: Choose the correct sentence among A, B, C or D which has the same meaning as the given one.

1. He decided to go to London on the last day.
   A. He decided to go to London yesterday.
   B. A big decision was made to go to London by him the day before last.
   C. He made a big decision to go to London on the last day.
   D. He made a big decision to go to London at last..
2. I don't think Jane will win the tennis match.
   A. In my opinion, Jane will not likely to win the tennis match.
   B. I will never think Jane will win the tennis match.
   C. The fact is that Jane won't win the tennis match.
   D. Jane will win the tennis match, I don't think that.
3. All of the students but Peter went to the meeting.
   A. Peter went to the meeting, and so did all of the students.
   B. Except for Peter, all of the students went to the meeting.
   C. All of the students, especially Peter went to the meeting.
   D. All of the students including Peter went to the meeting.
4. There is not a single corner of Hue that my friends haven't visited.
   A. My friends have visited only a single part of Hue.
   B. My friends have visited every part of Hue already.
   C. My friends have visited most parts of Hue.
   D. My friends haven't visited any parts of Hue.
5. We take great pride in offering the best service in town.
   A. Our service is the best. That's why people can see our pride.
   B. We are very proud of offering the best service in town.
   C. The best service in town is offered to people with great pride.
   D. No one takes great pride in offering the best service in town, but we do.
6. She said, "It isn't so foggy today as it was yesterday."
   A. She remarked that it wasn't so foggy today as it was yesterday.
   B. She remarked that it wasn't so foggy today as it had been yesterday.
   C. She remarked that it wasn't so foggy today as it was the day before.
   D. She remarked that it wasn't so foggy that day as it had been the day before.
7. "I pay him if I can", she said.
   A. She said that she would pay him if she could.
   B. She said that I would pay him if I could.
   C. She told that I would pay him if she could.
   D. She said that she would have paid him if she could have.
8. "I can cook as well as my mother", Hoa said.
   A. Hoa said she could cook as well as my mother.
   B. Hoa said she can cook as well as my mother.
   C. Hoa says she could cook as well as her mother.
   D. Hoa said she could cook as well as her mother.
9. He found it extremely difficult to learn this subject.
   A. The subject was so easy that he could learn it well.
   B. It was extremely difficult for him to learn this subject.
   C. He had difficulty finding the subject.
   D. He did not find it difficult to learn this subject.
10. The bank was open until nine o'clock and the department store until ten.
   A. The bank opened at nine and the department store at ten.
   B. The bank closed at nine and the department store at ten.
   C. The bank opened at nine, and the department store closed at ten.
   D. The bank closed at nine, and the department store opened at ten.

Exercise 8: Choose the correct sentence among A, B, C or D which has the same meaning as the given one.

1. Susan hasn't driven a car before.
   A. It is the first time Susan goes by car.
   B. It is the first time Susan has driven a car.
   C. It is the first time Susan goes in a car.
   D. It is the first time Susan is driving a car.
2. I don't know the answer, so I can't tell it to you.
   A. If I knew the answer, I wouldn't tell it to you.
   B. If I knew the answer, I would tell it to you.
   C. If I knew the answer, I will tell it to you.
   D. If I had known the answer, I would tell it to you.
3. It appears that you make no mistakes in the test.
   A. You seem to make no mistakes in the test.
   B. No mistakes appear in your test.
   C. It doesn't matter you make mistakes in the test.
   D. Your appearance makes no mistakes to me.
4. Nam said, "There is a nice restaurant here."
   A. Nam said there is a nice restaurant here.
   B. Nam told there was a nice restaurant here.
   C. Nam said there was a nice restaurant there.
   D. Nam told there is a nice restaurant there.
5. He has had the TV set repaired before the football season starts.
   A. He has arranged the TV set for repairs before the football season starts.

B. He has arranged for the TV set to be repaired before the football season starts.
C. He has repaired the TV set before the football season starts.
D. He has replaced the TV set before the football season starts.

6. Keep silent or you'll wake the baby up.
A. If you don't keep silent, you will wake the baby up.
B. If you mustn't keep silent, you will wake the baby up.
C. If you keep silent, you will wake the baby up.
D. If you don't keep silent, you would wake the baby up.

7. He said, "I bought these books last week."
A. He said he bought these books last week.
B. He told he bought these books the week before.
C. He said he had bought those books the week before.
D. He told he had bought these books last week.

8. I didn't have an umbrella with me, so I got wet.
A. If I hadn't had an umbrella with me, I would have got wet.
B. If I didn't have an umbrella with me, I would get wet.
C. If I had an umbrella with me, I wouldn't get wet.
D. If I had had an umbrella with me, I would not have got wet.

9. Ann started learning French at the age of six.
A. Ann studied French for six years.
B. Ann started learning French in a class for children over six years old.
C. Ann started learning French six years ago.
D. Ann started learning French when she was six years old.

10. If you don't rest, you really will be ill.
A. You really won't be ill unless you don't rest.
B. You really won't be ill if you don't rest.
C. If you rest, you really will be ill.
D. Unless you rest, you really will be ill.

Exercise 9: Choose the correct sentence among A, B, C or D which has the same meaning as the given one.

1. David felt sick from eating too many green apples.
A. David felt sick because he has eaten a lot of green apples.
B. David felt sick because he has eaten so many green apples.
C. David felt sick because there were too many green apples he ate.
D. David felt sick because he had eaten too many green apples.

2. When did you last ride a bike?
A. What time is it since you ride a bike?
B. How long is it since you last rode a bike?
C. How much time did you ride a bike?
D. How often did you ride a bike?

3. Why don't we go out for a drink?
A. I suggest going out for a drink. B. Let's go out for a drink.
C. We are going out for a drink. D. A and B are correct.

4. The day was so cold that we stayed indoors.
A. It was such cold a day that we stayed indoors.
B. It was such a cold day that we stayed indoors.
C. It was a so cold day that we stayed indoors.
D. It was a cold day so that we stayed indoors.

5. They usually walk in the park after dinner.
A. They used to walk in the park after dinner.
B. They are used to walking in the park after dinner.
C. They are used to walk in the park after dinner.
D. They used to walking in the park after dinner.

6. Although he has a lot of money, he feels unhappy.
A. Despite his money, he feels unhappy.
B. He feels unhappy whether he has a lot of money or not.
C. He has a lot of unhappiness because of his money.
D. He has a lot of money, so he feels unhappy.

7. In the middle of our lunch, there was a knock at the door.
A. When we were having lunch, there was a knock at the door.
B. Our lunch were in the middle there was a knock at the door.
C. When we had just finished lunch, there was a knock at the door.
D. When they knock at the door, we were having lunch.

8. I haven't been to the cinema for several months.
A. The last time I went to the cinema several months ago.
B. It is several months since I last went to the cinema.
C. It has been several months after I last went to the cinema.
D. I didn't go to the cinema until several months ago.

9. I am sorry that I didn't learn English when I was younger.
A. I regret not having learned English when I was younger.
B. I regret not learning English when I was younger.
C. I wish that I had learned English when I was younger.
D. All are correct.

10. That Hoa is lazy makes her parents sad.
A. That Hoa makes her parents sad is terrible.
B. Hoa is lazy, which makes her parents sad.
C. Hoa who is lazy makes her parents sad.
D. Hoa is lazy which makes her parents sad.

Exercise 10: Choose the correct sentence among A, B, C or D which has the same meaning as the given one.

1. Someone has robbed the bank near our house.

A. The bank have been robbed near our house.
B. The bank near our house has been robbed.
C. The bank near our house had been robbed.
D. The bank near our house has robbed.

2. The picnic was cancelled because it rained.
A. The picnic was cancelled due to the rain.
B. We planned to go on a picnic because we didn't know it would rain.
C. Despite the rain, we went on a picnic as planned.
D. We postponed the picnic whether it rained or not.

3. The architect designed these new flats; he has moved to Hue.
A. The architect designed these new flats moved to Hue.
B. The architect designed these new flats has moved to Hue.
C. The architect who designed these new flats has moved to Hue.
D. The architect, that designed these new flats, has moved to Hue.

4. They are going to hold next year's conference in Hanoi.
A. Next year's conference is going to hold in Hanoi.
B. Next year's conference is going to be held in Hanoi.
C. Hanoi is going to hold next year's conference.
D. Hanoi is going to be held next year's conference.

5. He used to write home once a week.
A. He was forced to write home once a week.
B. He enjoys writing home once a week.
C. He no longer write home once a week.
D. He never fails to write home once a week.

6. I'm grateful that you helped my brother do that work.
A. Thank you for helping my brother do that work.
B. Thank you about helping my brother do that work.
C. Thank you because you helped me do that work.
D. Thank you that you helped my brother do that work.

7. This is the first time I have gone out for a picnic.
A. I have ever gone out for a picnic.
B. I have never gone out for a picnic before.
C. I had never gone out for a picnic before.
D. All are correct.

8. What about going to the beach this weekend?
A. Why didn't we go to the beach this weekend?
B. Ought we go to the beach this weekend?
C. How about going to the beach this weekend?
D. All are correct.

9. I won't swim in the sea because it is too cold.
A. The sea isn't enough warm for us to swim in.

B. The sea is not so warm that I can swim in.
C. The sea is not warm for me to swim in.
D. The sea is not warm enough for me to swim in.

10. He said, "They will take you to the hotel."
A. He said that they would take me to the hotel.
B. He said that they will take you to the hotel.
C. He said that he will take you to the hotel.
D. He said that he would take me to the hotel.

Bài tập trắc nghiệm phát hiện lỗi sai

Exercise 1: Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

1. Next week when there will be a full moon, the ocean tides will be
A B C D
higher.

2. Do you know how many teachers does our school have?
A B C D

3. That's my aunt over there. She stands near the window.
A B C D

4. Your sister and you went to the cinema last night, weren't you?
A B C D

5. The marathon runner has been running for almost two hours when he
A B
collapsed to the pavement.
C D

6. We were at home having our anniversary dinner when my uncle
A B C
was calling to congratulate us last night.
D

7. Paul took many trips to Asia since he started his own import-export
A B C D
business.

8. The children had been playing for the last two hours, but they don't
A B C
seem to be tired yet.
D

9. Up to now Peter wrote five novels and over six short stories.
A B C D

10. I am polishing this table all the morning but she isn't satisfied with it
A B C D
yet.

Exercise 2: Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

1. As soon as he will graduate, he is going to return to his hometown.
A B C D

2. By the time I return to my hometown, I am away from home for more
A B C D
than five years.

3. By the end of the 21st century, scientists have discovered the treatment
A B C
for cancer.
D

4. I saw that movie three times, and now I want to see it again.
A B C D

5. My brother wants me to change the job and I am thinking he is right.
A B C D

6. So far this week the teachers are giving us a lot of homework every day.
A B C D

7. By the time he left the office, he have attended three meetings.
A B C D

8. We are waiting for Tom for the last two hours, but he still hasn't arrived.
A B C D

9. We have lived since ten years, but we are going to move again soon.
A B C D

10. I think you have asked me five or six questions since we have begun this
A B C D
exercise.

Exercise 3: Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

1. If your parents object your leaving dinner to take a call, tell your friends
A B C D
to avoid calling at that hour.

2. My mother asked me what it was the purpose of our visit to the museum.
A B C D

3. After the accident, I opened my eyes slowly and realized that I
A B C
am still alive.
D

4. He asked me what I intended to do after I graduate.
A B C D

5. When he left, Bob forgot that he put his passport and wallet in his other
A B C D
pocket.

6. International students should take full use of tutorial appointments.
A B C D

7. If I had eaten lunch, I wouldn't have been hungry now.
A B C D

8. Unless I don't go home early, please go shopping and buy some food
A B C
for lunch.
D

9. Each university consider the application before making the decision on
A B C D
the offer of the place.

10. When exam results are known, universities make a final decision on
A B C D
each application.

Exercise 4: Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

1. Who does the household works in your family?
A B C D

2. I am now under my attempt to win a place at university.
A B C D

3. Our students are obedience and hard-working, but they are mischievous
A B C
sometimes.
D

4. My mother is the person I often divide my secrets with.
A B C D

5. I borrowed four books on gardening the last time I had gone
A B C
to the library.
D

6. She wanted to know what company I worked for the previous year.
A B C D

7. A colleague of mine told that there would be a meeting the next day.
A B C D

8. They wondered if Jane would come to the party the next day or not.
A B C D

9. Pointing in someone is usually considered impolite in most cases.
A B C D

10. She asked me that how much I had bought my laptop.
A B C D

Exercise 5: Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

1. Vietnamese students may encounter some problems when studying
A B C
in abroad.
D

2. Had I been interested in that subject, I would try to learn more about it.
A B C D

3. By itself, technology can be either good nor bad, depends on how people
A B C D
use it.

4. All applications ask for your address, telephone number and the title of
A B C
the job for whom you are applying.
D

5. Scientific advances and other developments constant eliminate some
A B C
jobs and create new ones.
D

6. Businesses, industries and other organizations need workers help them
A B C
run smoothly and effectively.
D

7. I changed my major from history to English because the former isn't so
A B
interested to me as the latter.
C D

8. If we didn't run out of money, we wouldn't have come home from our
A B C D
holiday early.

9. If you'd told me you were coming, I would make something to eat.
A B C D

10. If you didn't stop smoking, your health will become worse and worse.
A B C D

Exercise 6: Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

1. Although his bad cough, he kept on smoking.
A B C D

2. Production is the process growing or making food, goods, or materials.
A B C D

3. Although I try hard to play the guitar, but I don't seem to improve.
A B C D

4. As you can see, costs of living have been reduced for 20% over the past
A B C D
year.

5. There will be major changes in climate during next century.
A B C D

6. I'm fed up for you telling me what to do.
A B C D

7. Children usually get bored of doing the same activity during a lesson.
A B C D

8. Are you fond at walking in the rain without wearing a raincoat?
A B C D

9. David's new computer is similar than mine.
A B C D

10. Tom's parents think that chocolates are bad at him.
A B C D

Exercise 7: Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

1. Last year my little brother got lost when we had gone shopping.
A B C D

2. Is he aware of how long we are waiting for the tour to start?
A B C D

3. We don't know why Mary is upset, and she didn't speak to us for ages.
A B C D

4. They asked me what did happen last night, but I was unable to tell them.
A B C D

5. I haven't come back to Hanoi from my brother last visited me.
A B C D

6. Have you finished reading the English magazine which I lend you
A B C D
yesterday?

7. He asked me whether I had ever been to America before?
A B C D

8. Paul decided to join the army after the first year at college and he was in
A B C D
it ever since.

9. The director, as well as his wife and two children, were injured in the
A B C D
accident.

10. John used to working in Leeds, but his company had him transfer to a
A B C
better position in London.
D

Exercise 8: Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

1. She is tired from being asked to do the same things every day.
A B C D

2. My father's office is under the second floor.
A B C D

3. The students who they cheated in the examination had to leave the room.
A B C D

4. That is the man who's daughter won the spelling bee.

A B C D

5. The person from him you got the information is my brother.

A B C D

6. I invited 20 people to my party, some of them are my former classmates.

A B C D

7. If I had studied carefully, I wouldn't make so many mistakes.

A B C D

8. This job suits students whom want to work during holidays.

A B C D

9. The man for who the police are looking robbed the bank yesterday.

A B C D

10. Hai Phong is the place which I was born and grew up.

A B C D

Exercise 9: Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

1. People are not allowed to enter the park after midnight because lack of

A B C D

security.

2. During the basic training, I was not only told what to do but also what

A B C

to think.

D

3. It rained very hardly, so we didn't go out that night.

A B C D

4. Although his family was very poor, but he had good education.

A B C D

5. Most Vietnamese people love the peace atmosphere in the countryside.

A B C D

11. Deforestation is occurring most rapid in tropical regions of the world.

A B C D

12. The ancient ruins may be discovered as early as 1820.

A B C D

13. He usually gets involved with some ridiculous arguments.

A B C D

14. Many teachers have devoted their lives to teaching therefore teaching is

A B C

not a well-paid job.

D

15. Safari is an organized trip to hunting or photograph wild animals,

A B C

usually in Africa.

D

Exercise 10: Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

1. Canoeing was the primary mode of long-distant transportation at one

A B C

time throughout much of North America.

D

2. Throughout history, water had been people's slave and also their master.

A B C D

3. Don't you get tired with watching TV every night?

A B C D

4. Her last book is published in over 20 languages years ago.

A B C D

5. On February 21, 1995, the oldest person in the world, a French woman

A B

was named Jeanne Calment, celebrated her 120th birthday.

C D

6. Books with good stories are often described like 'hard to put down'.

A B C D

7. My father reads books whenever he has little free time.

A B C D

8. Developed in the early 1900s in Canada, synchronized swimming is a

A

sport is performed almost exclusively by women, although there is some

B C D

participation by men.

9. Shore-based dives are dives where the site is closed enough to the

A B

water's edge that a diver can swim out into the water and descend to the

C D

dive site.

10. If a defender commits a foul within the five meter area that prevents a

A B

likely goal, the attacking team will award a penalty shot.

C D

ĐỀ THI ĐỀ NGHỊ
(Tốt nghiệp THPT & Tuyển sinh ĐH, CĐ)

TEST 1
(Tốt nghiệp THPT)

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the rest in each of the following questions.

1. A. hour B. how C. exhaust D. heir
2. A. casual B. television C. pleasure D. decision
3. A. closed B. marked C. believed D. followed
4. A. Thursday B. health C. thought D. smooth
5. A. ideal B. idiot C. iron D. idea

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

6. I could tell from the frightened look on her face that something terrible ______.
   A. has happened B. happening
   C. had happened D. would be happening
7. He rarely goes fishing, _______?
   A. doesn't he B. is he C. does he D. isn't he
8. There's somebody behind us. I think we ______.
   A. are following B. have been following
   C. had been being followed D. are being followed
9. Have you ever considered ______ to study in a foreign country?
   A. going B. to go C. to be going D. having gone
10. Now I do apologize for what I said about you. I know I shouldn't _____ that.
    A. have said B. said C. say D. saying
11. He spoke quietly to her _____ nobody else could her a word.
    A. because B. in order C. although D. so that
12. ______ a movie to be entertaining, it should have an interesting story.
    A. So that B. In order that C. In order for D. In order to
13. They stayed and chatted for hours, _____ annoyed me a lot.
    A. which B. that C. what D. it
14. Poverty is a problem in some cities ______ whole families can only afford to live in one room.
    A. when B. where C. even D. if

15. The teacher speaks slowly _____ the pupils may understand him.
    A. because B. in order to C. so that D. or
16. You must hurry, _______ you'll miss the last bus.
    A. otherwise B. and C. nevertheless D. but
17. He showed us the house _____ he was born.
    A. which B. in which C. in where D. in that
18. Safeguarding our natural resources is now a ______.
    A. force B. must C. power D. needy
19. She had changed so much that _____ anyone recognized her.
    A. almost B. no C. nearly D. hardly
20. There's always _____ traffic in the city center at rush hour.
    A. full B. crowded C. heavy D. plenty
21. Children should be ______ to realize their full potential.
    A. encouraging B. courageous C. encouraged D. discouraged
22. I hope we can ______ the difficulty without too much effort.
    A. get over B. get off C. get away D. get through
23. The problem with him is that he suffers from constant ______.
    A. sleepy B. sleepless C. sleeplessness D. asleep
24. They didn't want their money back. They wanted a ______.
    A. placement B. replacement C. place D. replacing
25. My brother applied _____ the job that he saw advertised in the paper.
    A. in B. on C. to D. for
26. I disapprove ______ people throwing rubbish on the streets and in public places.
    A. with B. on C. at D. of
27. The sick man was operated _____ by the surgeon yesterday.
    A. in B. for C. on D. with
28. "What kind of boy is Tom?" "_________"
    A. He is smiling B. He's ambitious.
    C. He's bought a red car. D. He has brown eyes.
29. "That's a nice shirt you're wearing." "_________"
    A. That's nice. B. I like it.
    C. I'm glad you like it. D. That's all right.
30. "What do you think about Jane?" "_________"
    A. I forgot all about her. B. She's sweet and gentle.
    C. She went to Paris. D. No, I don't.

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to show the underlined part that needs correction.

31. The cost of living has gone up considerably the last few years.
    A B C D
32. I think your garden needs to weed and you had better do it right now.
    A B C D

33. I'm going out now. If anyone phones while I shall be out, can you take
A B C
a message?
D

34. In some countries, octopuses and snails are considered being delicacies
A B C
to eat.
D

35. Men and women in that organization work with people in developing
A B C
countries to help them improving their living conditions.
D

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the blanks.

Another side effect of the human population explosion will be the conversion of more land to food production or cities. This habitat (36)________ will cause progressive extinction of many more species. Globally, 45 species of birds and 40 species of mammals went (37)________ between 1650 and 1969, more have disappeared since then, and many more are in endangered species list. It has been estimated that half of all the species on Earth reside in the Amazon rain forest, (38)________ most of them in Brazil. Brazil's plans to colonize and cut down the rain forests and similar changes in Congo and Indonesia may very well (39)________ a major episode of extinction. Recent efforts to estimate the projected rate of extinction suggest (40)________ half of all the species of mammals and birds will become extinct within the next 200 to 300 years.

36.	A. variety	B. extinction	C. endanger	D. destruction
37.	A. exhausted	B. exhaust	C. extinction	D. extinct
38.	A. as with	B. with	C. as to	D. as for
39.	A. influence	B. result from	C. lead to	D. cause to
40.	A. that	B. this	C. those	D. these

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

All around the world, there are many **endangered animals**, largely because of human progress. As the world's population grows, humans move into new areas, create more pollution, and use more natural resources. This all puts pressure on animals, which cannot really compete with humans. An excellent example of this would be the case of the leatherback sea turtle.

At 6.5 metres long, and up to 600 kilograms, the leatherback is the largest turtle on Earth. It is also one of the most endangered. Scientists do not know the exact number of leatherbacks because they spend their entire lives at sea. This makes them very difficult to count. But female leatherbacks come on land to lay their eggs. From the number of nests that scientists find, they can estimate the number of turtles. The numbers do not show a good future for the leatherback. At one beach, scientists counted over 10,000 egg nests in 1954. In 1993, there were only 50 nests at the same beach. Scientists think that the leatherback population is perhaps only 1% of what it was just 50 years ago. Human development over the last 50 years is undoubtedly the reason for this.

Humans affect leatherbacks in many ways. Many of the beaches leatherbacks used to lay their eggs at are now covered with hotels and resorts, so there are few places for the turtles to make their nests. In addition, in many parts of the world, people eat the turtle eggs. At one beach in Mexico, almost 100% of all the leatherback nests were dug up and the eggs eaten by humans. The turtles also get caught in fishing nets and die. In the 1950s, there were 5,000 **fishing boats** in the Gulf of Mexico, a common spot for the leatherbacks. Now there are over 55,000 fishing boats in the same area. If the situation does not change soon, the leatherback may disappear forever.

41. As used in the passage, the term **"endangered animals"** can best be explained as ________.
    - A. animals caught in fishing nets
    - B. animals with very low numbers
    - C. animals in areas where humans live
    - D. a kind of turtle

42. According to paragraph 1, humans put pressure on animals in all of the following ways EXCEPT ______.
    - A. by killing the animals
    - B. by moving into new areas
    - C. by adding to pollution
    - D. by using natural resources

43. According to paragraph 2, why is it difficult to count the numbers of leatherback turtles?
    - A. They swim very fast.
    - B. Their nests are hard to find.
    - C. They live most of their lives in the sea.
    - D. They are scared of humans.

44. According to the passage, how do hotels and resorts hurt leatherback turtles?
    - A. They pollute the beaches and kill the leatherbacks.
    - B. People at the hotels go fishing and eat the turtle eggs.
    - C. They bring more people to the beaches to see the animal.
    - D. They occupy the beaches where the turtles lay their eggs.

45. The author mentions **"fishing boats"** in order to ______.
    - A. show that fishing is becoming more popular in the Gulf of Mexico
    - B. suggest a connection between the rise in fishing and the fall in leatherback turtles
    - C. explain why there are no leatherback turtles in the Gulf of Mexico

D. suggest that the Gulf of Mexico is a good place to catch leatherback turtles

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

46. It took the director two hours ______.
A. explaining us the new plan B. explaining the new plan to us
C. to explain the new plan to us D. to explain with us the new plan

47. There are nine planets ______ and get light from it.
A. which move round the sun B. that moving round the sun
C. which the sun is moved around D. being moved around the sun

48. What measures would you take _____?
A. if you go to my place B. if you give me some advice
C. if you were in my place D. whether you like or not

49. ______ was flat was believed by most people in the 19th century.
A. The earth B. That the earth
C. Whether the earth D. As the earth

50. Most rodents eat grain, seeds and nuts, _______.
A. but some eat almost anything B. instead a few doesn't eat grain
C. while some eat those things D. contrary few eat anything

TEST 2
(Tốt nghiệp THPT)

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the rest in each of the following questions.

1. A. thought B. southern C. threaten D. thunder
2. A. celebrated B. recommended C. vaporised D. expected
3. A. rate B. date C. private D. roommate
4. A. decoration B. preparation C. prevention D. question
5. A. solar B. cosy C. motion D. wonder

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

6. He ______ for the acceptance from the company since last Friday.
A. was waiting B. has been waiting
C. had waited D. waits

7. She couldn't go far because she was afraid of ______.
A. flying B. to fly C. be flying D. being flying

8. Mary _____ the question well, so did Paula.
A. didn't answer B. answers C. has answered D. answered

9. It was an awful film. In fact, it was the worst film that I _______.
A. have ever seen B. would have ever seen
C. ever saw D. had ever seen

10. Since 1999, Tom ______ in London, and he is still there now.
A. is working B. was working
C. has been working D. had been working

11. We couldn't stay to dinner because the last bus _____ at seven o'clock.
A. left B. has left C. is leaving D. will leave

12. My little sister is well-behaved and always does ______ she is told.
A. when B. since C. what D. like

13. The tennis match was continued _____ it began to rain.
A. because B. despite C. although D. thanks to

14. Hoa works hard _____ her brother is very lazy.
A. when B. whereas C. even if D. unless

15. I was _____ tired that I went to bed early.
A. so B. such C. too D. very

16. Make up your mind _____ it will be too late.
A. and B. so C. if D. or

17. I talked to the boy _____ kite was caught in a tree.
A. whose B. whom C. who's D. of which

18. It started to rain. _____, we went inside and watched television.
A. However B. Therefore C. Moreover D. Whereas

19. The police must try to catch those men _____ drive dangerously.
A. who B. whom C. which D. whose

20. We had to use our neighbour's telephone because ours was _____.
A. out of work B. out of action
C. out of order D. out of place

21. I'm sorry I haven't got any money. I've ______ my wallet at home.
A. left B. missed C. forgotten D. put

22. She is not here: she has gone to ______.
A. home B. restaurant C. house D. church

23. They say more boys are born than girls ______.
A. as a whole B. in whole C. wholly D. on the whole

24. My motorbike ______ so I had to come by bus.
A. fell down B. fell over C. broke down D. broke up

25. Who is the ______ of this factory?
A. own B. owning C. owner D. ownership

26. ______, I didn't have a map with me when I was in New York so I got lost.
A. Misfortune B. Fortunately C. Unfortunate D. Unfortunately

27. In spite of all the difficulties, the Vietnam team did succeed _____ climbing Mt. Everest.

A. of B. in C. at D. to

28. "Susan comes here by bus, doesn't she?" "______"

A. Yes, she does. B. No, she does.
C. Yes, she will. D. No, she won't.

29. "What's this button for?" "________"

A. I'll start the tape. B. It's to start the tape.
C. For start the tape. D. Starting the tape.

30. "Do you like pop music?" "________"

A. I would. B. No, I like it. C. Yes, a lot. D. Yes, I am.

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to show the underlined part that needs correction.

31. It was believed that he himself has travelled all over the world for the
A B C
shortest time.
D

32. Marilyn Monroe, who acting in many films, committed suicide in 1962.
A B C D

33. If the weather is fine, we would surely go out next weekend.
A B C D

34. The healthier he is, the most easy his life becomes.
A B C D

35. It is nearly four hundred years for the birth of Shakespeare.
A B C D

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the blanks.

At the turn of the century, American people often did their shopping from catalogs. A catalog was a book which described (36)_____ the merchandise a shopper could purchase from a certain company. A person could look (37)_____ a catalog and find everything from men's overalls to coffee grinders. When the shopper decided (38)_____ to buy, the order was sent by mail. The company delivered the merchandise the same way – by mail.

The catalog offered a handy way of shopping at time when most people lived in small towns or (39)_____ farms. In those days, a shopper might have to travel a long distance by horse and buggy to get to the nearest store. After 1918, however, the automobile had been invented. More people were living in cities. (40)_____ people could do their shopping directly in a department store. In many areas, catalog shopping disappeared.

36. A. as B. in length C. by means D. in detail
37. A. for B. in C. up D. through
38. A. what B. how C. when D. where
39. A. by B. on C. close D. next
40. A. Lots B. Almost C. Most D. Mostly

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Columbus crossed the Atlantic Ocean three times. His first voyage brought him fame and popularity – he discovered a new continent. But he had enemies who wanted to get rid of him. On his second voyage the government of the country that Columbus himself discovered threw him into prison.

He was sent back to Spain as a prisoner. But Columbus succeeded in proving that the lies his enemies spread about him were untrue, and the Spanish government gave him four ships to start on a new voyage. But this third voyage was unfortunate from the beginning. The ships were met by terrible storms and at the time he reached the shores of Haiti, Columbus lost three of them. The remaining ship was about to go down when Columbus reached the island.

It took Columbus almost a year to return to Spain. He was unhappy, disappointed and broken in health. Worst of all, everyone forgot his achievements. He died in poverty in 1506 without knowing that he discovered a new world. Before Columbus died, another traveler named Amerigo Vespussi returned to Spain. He traveled along the coast of the land that Columbus discovered and he proved that it was not the coast of India, as Columbus thought, but unknown continent.

For a long time the new continent was called the New World. But at last, they decided to name it America, in honour of Amerigo, whose voyage showed that it was not India. America was discovered by Columbus in 1492. It was named America in 1506, the year in which Columbus died.

41. Columbus was famous and popular for _______.

A. his three voyages B. discovering a new continent
C. having many enemies D. being thrown into prison

42. When he returned to Spain, Columbus lived ______.

A. very happily B. in good health
C. in poverty D. a better life

43. Columbus died in 1506 without knowing that he himself _______.

A. had reached a new continent
B. had discovered the coast India
C. showed the world the unknown ocean
D. proved the new land to be America

44. Which of the following is NOT true according to the passage?

A. Columbus thought he had come to the coast of India.
B. People did not recognize Columbus's achievement.
C. The new continent was named after Amerigo.
D. The new continent was discovered by Amerigo.

45. The phrase "in honour of" used in the last paragraph mostly means _____.

A. in order for something to be done
B. in order to show admiration for
C. in terms of someone's honour
D. on account of someone's honour

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

46. Before you go to bed, __________.

A. the light is remembered to turn off
B. remember to turn off the light
C. remembering to turn off the light
D. remember turning off the light

47. I can see Mary's car in the car park, so she ______.

A. should be here somewhere   B. can't be around here
C. must be here somewhere   D. may be going home.

48. Let's go out _______.

A. when he will come back   B. if he came back
C. when he comes back   D. his coming back

49. Staying in a guesthouse costs ______ renting a room in a dormitory.

A. twice more than   B. twice as much as
C. as much twice as   D. as much as twice

50. ______, we eventually reached the station.

A. Soaked to the skin   B. Soaking to the skin
C. Being soaking to the skin   D. Our skin being soaked

TEST 3

(Tốt nghiệp THPT)

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the rest in each of the following questions.

1. A. sector   B. resort   C. gentle   D. event
2. A. clear   B. rear   C. bear   D. dear
3. A. ethnic   B. thus   C. marathon   D. theory
4. A. announce   B. double   C. country   D. touch
5. A. release   B. deaf   C. defeat   D. ease

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

6. While we ______, someone came to the house and left this note.

A. shall fish   B. would fish   C. are fishing   D. were fishing

7. I hope they _____ the road by the time we come back next summer.

A. will repair   B. have repaired
C. will have repaired   D. are repairing

8. This is the first time I _____ to play table tennis.

A. am trying   B. was trying   C. have tried   D. tried

9. I won't lend it to you unless you _____ to return it on time.

A. promise   B. will promise   C. promised   D. would promise

10. New computer courses _____ by the university next year.

A. are going to offer   B. are going to be offering
C. are going to be offered   D. are going to have offered

11. Thousands of people came to see the Queen _____ the rain.

A. although   B. in spite of   C. despite of   D. even though

12. _______ he gets to the airport, he'll check in his luggage.

A. Wherever   B. However   C. As soon as   D. While

13. I wanted a cup of tea, ______ I heated some water.

A. but   B. so   C. and   D. or

14. He hung up in the middle of our conversation, ______ absolutely made me angry.

A. that   B. which   C. who   D. when

15. At the hospital I was told that ______ I gave up smoking immediately my illness would get worse.

A. except   B. until   C. without   D. unless

16. She looks delighted – she _____ have received some good news.

A. can   B. must   C. should   D. has to

17. _____ who saw the robbery should contact the police.

A. Somebody   B. One   C. Anyone   D. Someone

18. He threatened to hit me if I didn't _____ my money.

A. hand over   B. take away   C. give up   D. come into

19. I just finished a terrible book. It's ______ book I've ever read.

A. the worse   B. the worst
C. the baddest   D. the most badly

20. I suppose it's true. I don't think you would _____ me a lie.

A. tell   B. say   C. talk   D. speak

21. Please _____ the radio; it's too noisy.

A. slow down   B. let down   C. put down   D. turn down

22. We ______ the electricians to install an air conditioner in the living room.

A. had   B. got   C. made   D. arranged

23. There's _____ in trying to contact him as he is touring Europe.

A. no way   B. nowhere   C. no point   D. no quarter

24. I can communicate now but I'm not ______ with my English.

A. satisfying   B. satisfied   C. satisfactory   D. satisfaction

25. After the explosion, only five people were left ______.
A. living B. alive C. lively D. lived

26. Nobody at the party talked to us – they were very _______.
A. unfriendly B. befriended C. friendship D. friendly

27. I'm looking _______ a toy for my nephew. Can you suggest anything?
A. up B. for C. at D. after

28. "____________" "Go straight, then turn left."
A. When do you want to go to the station?
B. Could you tell me how to get to the station?
C. Could you go to the station, please?
D. Why do you get to the station and where?

29. "__________" "He doesn't look very well."
A. What is he like? B. What does he look?
C. How well is he? D. How is he?

30. "What does your brother do?" "________"
A. He is painting in his room. B. He is a painter.
C. He is still single. D. he likes to paint pictures.

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to show the underlined part that needs correction.

31. We're working hard, so the job has been done by tomorrow evening.
A B C D

32. I am going to get a job once I will finish school.
A B C D

33. Of the three of us I seem to have the fewest money.
A B C D

34. My sister doesn't like to go swimming but she wishes she does.
A B C D

35. He plays not only the piano but also composes music.
A B C D

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the blanks.

The earth is becoming increasingly linked by telecommunications. People in one country can speak to those in another country on the opposite (36)______ of the earth by telephone. They can communicate in writing (37)______ of fax machines. But if they are from countries where different languages are spoken, what language should they agree to speak to each (38)______.

For many years now there has been hope that the world might find a universal language. The western world had (39)______ a language for hundreds of years in the Middle Ages: Latin was used as the language of education. In the last four hundred years or (40)______, French has been viewed as the international language of diplomacy. But what about a world language for general and everyday use?

36. A. post B. position C. way D. side
37. A. on means B. on meaning C. by meaning D. by means
38. A. other B. others C. another D. the other
39. A. its B. such C. that D. exactly
40. A. else B. so so C. far D. so

Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.

Can dolphin talk? Maybe they can't talk with words, but they talk with sounds. They show their feelings with sounds.

Dolphins travel in a group. We call a group of fish a 'school'. They don't study, but they travel together. Dolphins are mammals, not fish, but they swim together in a school.

Dolphins talk to other dolphins in the school, they give information. They tell when they are happy or sad or afraid. They say 'Welcome' when a dolphin comes back to the school. They talk when they play.

They make a few sounds above water. They make many more sounds under water. People cannot hear these sounds because they are very, very high. Scientists make tapes of the sounds and study them.

Sometimes people watch a dolphin for a large aquarium – a zoo for fish. People can watch the dolphins in a show. Dolphins don't like to be away from their school in an aquarium. They are sad and lonely.

There are many stories about dolphins. They help people. Sometimes they save somebody's life. Dolphin meat is good, but people don't like to kill them. They say that dolphins bring good luck. Many people believe this.

41. Dolphins talk with ________.
A. words B. their hands C. sounds D. music

42. Dolphins make more sounds ________.
A. above water B. underwater C. for tapes D. ins school

43. Dolphins like to be ________.
A. at an aquarium B. lonely
C. on tapes D. in their school

44. In this passage, what does the word "school" mean?
A. group of fish B. place where children study
C. place where dolphins study D. zoo of fish

45. Which of the following statements is NOT true?
A. A dolphin can save a person's life.
B. The dolphin is not a kind of fish.
C. People can hear and understand the dolphin's sounds.
D. People don't like to kill dolphins.

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

46. Did he tell you how much ______?
A. the book costs B. does the book cost
C. the book cost D. does the book costs

47. I spent every summer on a farm until ______.
A. twelve years ago I was B. my age was about twelve
C. I was about twelve D. when I was about twelve

48. He said that the pudding ______.
A. was tasting very sweetly B. tasted very sweet
C. had tasted very sweetly D. was tasting very sweet

49. ______ after a worker had been sacked.
A. The strike was beginning last week
B. The strike began last week
C. The strike would begin last week
D. The strike had begun last week

50. If the post office closes before I get there, ______.
A. I mailed your package tomorrow morning
B. I would have mailed your package tomorrow morning
C. I would mail your package tomorrow morning
D. I will mail your package tomorrow morning

TEST 4
(Tuyển sinh ĐH, CĐ)

1–5. Pick out the word that has the stress differently from that of the other words.

1. A. idiomatic B. mathematics C. characteristic D. possibility
2. A. encounter B. museum C. dependent D. understand
3. A. dental B. device C. drunkard D. endless
4. A. relate B. edit C. region D. final
5. A. package B. customer C. supervisor D. accountant

6–35. Choose the best answer among A, B, C or D that best completes each sentence.

6. As soon as the fire-bell rang everyone walked quickly downstairs and out of building, _________ gathered in the car park.
A. while B. then C. before D. to

7. I'm hungry. Is there any food _________?
A. to eat B. to be eaten C. eating D. for me eating

8. I have heard nothing from him since _________.
A. he has left B. he leaves C. he left D. he had left

9. Because his argument was so confusing, _________ people understood it.
A. few B. clever C. less D. many

10. When she was crossing the room, the night-nurse happened to notice the old lady _________ to get out of bed.
A. has tried B. trying C. being tried D. tried

11. _________ you have no key, you'll have to get back before I go out.
A. Although B. If C. Unless D. As

12. Some schools have very _________ rules of behaviour which must be obeyed.
A. strict B. solid C. straight D. strong

13. They were very _________ about keeping so much money in the house overnight.
A. risky B. willing C. nervous D. dangerous

14. "Did you finally paint your house?" "Yes. It should ______ a long time ago."
A. have done B. be done C. have been doneD. been done

15. I wish you _________ stop interrupting me whenever I speak.
A. will B. did C. would D. might

16. Staying in a hotel costs _________ renting a room in a dormitory for a week.
A. twice more than B. twice as much as
C. as much twice as D. as much as twice

17. He likes to take _________ in sport, not only to watch it.
A. practice B. part C. exercise D. place

18. "Do you like frog's legs?" "_________ them, I don't really know."
A. Never trying B. Not to have tried
C. Never having tried D. Never had tried

19. One difference between maths and language is that maths is precise _________.
A. while language is not B. but language not
C. language is not D. while is language

20. "Before last night, I hadn't seen Derek in years." "Neither had I. _________ to see how he's changed."
A. It is interested B. I am interesting
C. I am interested D. It is interesting

21. "Has Jennifer ever been to Paris?" "No, but _______, she's going next week."

A. interestedly B. interested enough
C. interestingly enough D. enough interesting

22. I bought this grammar book ________ I could go over all the things we have studied this year.
A. that B. seeing that C. so that D. so far as

23. The house, ________ he bought in 2000, is being repaired at the moment.
A. where B. that C. which D. what

24. Overpopulation tends to create conditions which may result in ________ of food in developing countries.
A. supplies B. surpluses C. shortages D. failures

25. Could you describe the ways ________ Mr. Stammer has adapted to living in Vietnam?
A. in which B. on which C. among which D. at which

26. It is not easy for me to distinguish ________ genuine painting and copies.
A. for B. to C. within D. between

27. In order to ________ their goals in college, students need to invest the maximum amount of time, money, and energy in their studies.
A. manage B. catch C. establish D. achieve

28. Mom told her little boy to put all his toys ____ before coming to dinner.
A. out B. off C. away D. in

29. The couple put their wedding ______ until next year.
A. off B. up C. on D. away

30. The gunman told the victim to hand _____ all his money.
A. out B. over C. in D. off

31. "Where will you go on vacation?" "________"
A. Probably to the beach. B. The beach is nice, isn't it?
C. Probably I won't think of. D. I have a four-day vacation.

32. "________" "I think the vase is broken."
A. Can I help you? B. Why is it so expensive?
C. What is it? D. What's wrong with it?

33. "What do you do for a living?" "________"
A. I get a high salary, you know. B. I want to be a doctor, I guess.
C. I work in a bank. D. It's hard work, you know.

34. "I wonder if you could do something for me." "________"
A. It depends on what it is. B. What's it like?
C. No, thanks. D. I'm afraid I won't come.

35. "Haven't you put an advertisement in the paper yet?" "________"
A. I'm not sure. Really? B. I will, the first thing in the afternoon.
C. I'm with you there. D. I can get a paper for you right now.

36-40. Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

36. Vaslav Nijinsky achieved world recognition as both a dancer as well as a choreographer.
A B C D

37. Airports must be located near to major population centers for the advantage of air transportation to be retained.
A B C D

38. It is said that Einstein felt very badly about the application of his theories to the creation of weapons of war.
A B C D

39. The plants that they belong to the family of ferns are quite varies in their size and structure.
A B C D

40. Despite the increase in air fares, most people still prefer to travel by plane.
A B C D

41-45. Choose the correct sentence among A, B, C or D which has the same meaning as the given one.

41. Who made you work so hard yesterday?
A. Who forced you to work so hard yesterday?
B. Why did you work so hard yesterday?
C. What made you work so hard yesterday?
D. How could you work so hard yesterday?

42. Despite his inexperience in the field, John applied for the job.
A. John was unable to do the job because he was inexperienced.
B. John applied for the job because he has experience in the field.
C. John did not apply for the job because of his inexperience in the field.
D. John applied for the job even though he has no experience in the field.

43. I couldn't help laughing when he told me that story.
A. The story he told me did not help at all.
B. I did not laugh when hearing that story.
C. I couldn't help him tell that story.
D. I couldn't resist laughing when he told me that story.

44. She feels happy because of her coming birthday party.
A. She feels happy to come to a birthday party.
B. Her coming birthday party makes her happy.
C. Because she was born she feels happy.
D. Her birthday party will happily come.

45. "That's a lovely new dress, Jean," said her mother.

A. Jean's mother said she liked her dress.
B. Jean's mother complimented her on the lovely new dress.
C. Jean's mother wanted to buy a lovely new dress.
D. Jean's mother told her to buy that lovely new dress.

46–50. Choose the correct option among A, B, C or D to complete the following statements.

46. The room was empty. There _________.

A. was somebody there
B. was anybody there
C. wasn't nobody there
D. was nobody there

47. Nowadays, Tet ___________.

A. is a short holiday than that in the past
B. is much shorter than that in the past
C. does not last longer than that in the past
D. not lasts as long as that in the past

48. I see him ______________.

A. have passed her house every day
B. to have passed her houses every day
C. pass her house every day
D. to pass her house every day

49. __________ needed more help from charity organizations.

A. The people live in the flood-affected area
B. The people in the flood-affected area where they live
C. The people who are living in the flood-affected area
D. The people living in the flood-affected area

50. ___________ are taking part in the struggle against illiteracy.

A. There are more and more people
B. More than people before
C. Young people who
D. Young people in our country

51–60. Choose the word or phrase that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Several years ago an old factory on the edge of Paris was turned into exhibition centre. This helped many artists (51)________ had found it too expensive to work in the centre of Paris, and so for the (52)________ few years painters, musicians, actors and other people (53)________ had space to work and perform. The people behind the idea now (54)________ to change the use of other old buildings (55)________ the same reasons. Sometimes the use of the buildings can only (56)________ for a short period of time, a year, for example, (57)________ the opportunity is always worth in for the young artists. On one occasion a businessman lent an old building (58)________ the organizers for two years, and in that time the artists were (59)________ to put on concerts, art exhibitions and fashion shows to (60)________ the local people.

51.	A. which	B. some	C. who	D. those
52.	A. other	B. past	C. late	D. remaining
53.	A. have	B. must	C. would	D. had
54.	A. think	B. like	C. go	D. want
55.	A. with	B. by	C. beyond	D. for
56.	A. take	B. be	C. seem	D. have
57.	A. but	B. so	C. because	D. since
58.	A. for	B. in	C. to	D. from
59.	A. suitable	B. able	C. better	D. successful
60.	A. attract	B. bring	C. provide	D. enjoy

61–70. Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answers the question about the passage.

Alzheimer's disease **impairs** a person's ability to recall memories, both distant and as recent as a few hours before. Although there is not yet a cure for the illness, they may be hope for a cure with a protein called nerve growth factor. The protein is produced by nerve cells in the same region of the brain where Alzheimer's occurs. Based on this relationship, scientists from the University of Lund in Sweden and the University of California in San Diego designed an experiment to test whether doses of nerve growth factor could **reverse** the effects of memory loss caused by Alzheimer's. Using a group of rats with impaired memory, the scientists gave half of the rats doses of nerve growth factor while giving the other half a blood protein as a placebo, thus creating a control group.

At the end of the four-week test, the rats given nerve growth factor performed equally to rats with normal memory abilities. While the experiments do not show that nerve growth factor can stop the general process of **deterioration** caused by Alzheimer's, they do show **potential** as a means to slowing the process **significantly**.

61. With what topic is this passage mainly concerned?

A. impaired memory of patients
B. cures for Alzheimer's disease
C. the use of rats as experimental subjects
D. nerve growth factor as a cure for Alzheimer's

62. The word **"impairs"** in the first paragraph is most similar to which of the following?

A. affects B. destroys C. enhances D. diminishes

63. According to the passage, where is nerve growth factor produced in the body?

A. in nerve cells in the spinal column
B. in red blood cells in the circulatory system

C. in nerve cells in the brain
D. in the pituitary gland

64. Which of the following could best replace the word **"reverse"** in the first paragraph?
A. foster B. prompt C. override D. match

65. Which of the following can be inferred from the passage?
A. Alzheimer's disease is deadly.
B. Though unsuccessful, the experiments did show some benefits derived from nerve growth factor.
C. The experiments did not show any significant benefits from nerve growth factor.
D. More work needs to be done to understand the effects of nerve growth factor.

66. The passage most closely resembles which of the following patterns of organization?
A. chronological order B. statement and illustration
C. cause and effect D. alphabetical order

67. Which of the following is closest in meaning to the word **"deterioration"** in the second paragraph?
A. depression B. deduction C. decline D. disconnection

68. Which of the following could best replace the word **"potential"** in the second paragraph?
A. possibility B. capability C. dependability D. creativity

69. Which of the following could best replace the word **"significantly"** in the second paragraph?
A. considerably B. knowingly C. suggestively D. tirelessly

70. The relationship between nerve growth factor and a protein is similar to the relationship between Alzheimer's and ____________.
A. forgetfulness B. a disease C. a cure D. a cancer

71–80. Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answers the question about the passage.

Until recently, hunting for treasure from shipwrecks was mostly fantasy, with recent technological advances, however, the search for **sunken** treasure has become more popular as a legitimate endeavor. This has caused a debate between those wanting to salvage the wrecks and those wanting to preserve them.

Treasure hunters are spurred on by the thought of finding catches of gold coins or other valuable objects on a sunken ship. One team of salvagers, for instance, searched the wreck of the *RMS Republic*, which sank outside the Boston harbor in 1900. The search party, using side-scan sonar, a device that projects sound waves across the ocean bottom and produces **a profile** of the sea floor, located the wreck in just two and a half days. Before the use of this new technology, such searches could take months or years. The team of 45 divers searched the wreck for two months, finding silver tea services, crystal dinnerware, and thousands of bottles of wine, but they did not find the five and a half tons of American Gold Eagle coins they were searching for.

Preservationists focus on the historic value of a ship. They say that even if a shipwreck's treasure does not have a high monetary value, it can be an invaluable source of historic artifacts that are preserved in nearly **mint condition**. But once a salvage team has **scoured** a site, much of the archaeological value is lost. Maritime archaeologists who are preservationists worry that the success of salvagers will attract more treasure-hunting expeditions and thus threaten remaining undiscovered wrecks. Preservationists are lobbying their state lawmakers to legally restrict underwater searches and unregulated salvages. To counter their efforts, treasure hunters argue that without the **lure** of gold and million-dollar treasures, the wrecks and their historical artifacts would never be recovered at all.

71. What is the main idea of this passage?
A. Searching for wrecks is much easier with new technologies like side-scan sonar.
B. Maritime archeologists are concerned about the unregulated searching of wrecks.
C. The search of the *RMS Republic* failed to produce the hoped-for coins.
D. The popularity of treasure seeking has spurred a debate between preservationists and salvagers.

72. The word **"sunken"** in the first paragraph is closest in meaning to which of the following words?
A. broken B. underwater C. ancient D. hollow

73. Which of the following could best replace the phrase **"a profile"** in the second paragraph?
A. a projection B. an execution C. a highlight D. an outline

74. Which of the following statements is best supported by the author?
A. The value of a shipwreck depends on the quantity of its artifacts.
B. Preservationists are fighting the use of technological advances such as side-scan sonar.
C. Side-scan sonar has helped to legitimize salvaging.
D. The use of sound waves is crucial to locating shipwrecks.

75. The author uses the phrase **"mint condition"** in the third paragraph to describe __________.
A. something perfect B. something significant
C. something tolerant D. something magical

76. All of the following were found on the *RMS Republic* EXCEPT __________.
A. wine bottles B. silver tea services
C. American Gold Eagle coins D. crystal dinnerware

www.caykenguynhon.com

77. From the passage, you can infer that a preservationist would be most likely to ________.
A. shun treasure-seeking salvagers B. be a diver
C. put treasures in a museum D. do archaeological research

78. The word **"scoured"** in the third paragraph is most similar to which of the following?
A. scraped away B. scratched over
C. scrambled around D. searched around

79. What is the closest meaning to the word **"lure"** in the third paragraph?
A. knowledge B. attraction C. luxury D. glare

80. The second and third paragraphs are an example of ________.
A. chronological order B. explanation
C. specific to general D. definition

TEST 5
(Tuyển sinh ĐH, CĐ)

1–5. Pick out the word that has the stress differently from that of the other words.

1. A. educational B. preferentially C. administrative D. abnormality
2. A. miraculous B. accessible C. technology D. apprehension
3. A. operation B. associate C. revolution D. independence
4. A. mineral B. property C. introduce D. honesty
5. A. incredible B. humidity C. necessary D. definition

6–35. Choose the best answer among A, B, C or D that best completes each sentence.

6. "Was Jack wearing a seat belt?" "Yes, he would have ________ without it."
A. injure B. injured C. been injure D. been injured

7. The three friends all ________ for the same job.
A. requested B. applied C. intended D. referred

8. "You haven't seen my notebook, have you?" "No, but I didn't know you ________ for it."
A. should look B. have looked
C. were looking D. could be looking

9. I wonder who drank all the milk yesterday. It ________ have been Jane because she was out all day.
A. can't B. must C. could D. needn't

10. "Do you like Australia?" "Oh, yes, I think it's one of ____ in the world."
A. the most beautiful place B. most beautiful places
C. most beautiful place D. the most beautiful places

11. Your voice reminds me of someone but I can't remember ________.
A. who is B. it is C. who is he D. who

12. "Do you think raising children is difficult?" "Yes, it's especially hard to teach them ________."
A. the responsible ones B. the responsibility
C. a responsibility D. responsibility

13. "Are you coming to the party?" "I'm not sure, but there's a good chance ________ there."
A. we are B. of us C. we would be D. of our being

14. "Is this Mary's original copy of the letter?" "No, it's the ________ one."
A. rewrote B. rewritten C. rewrite D. rewriting

15. At the bus stop ________ an old man and two young people on their way to the suburb.
A. sits and waits B. was C. is D. were

16. "What are they talking about?" "They are discussing problems ________ the budget."
A. concerned to B. concerning to C. concerned D. concerning

17. "I don't think we'll need that much cash for the trip." "I don't either, but Sally suggested ________ extra just in case."
A. to take B. taking C. that we'll take D. be taken

18. ________ the time you get to the theatre, the play will have finished.
A. Until B. In C. On D. By

19. I have never ________ any experience of living in the country.
A. had B. wished C. done D. made

20. Running is an individual sport but football is a ________ sport.
A. collection B. single C. group D. team

21. "The building's nearly finished, isn't it?" "Yes, but it'll be ________ we can move in."
A. too much time till B. hardly time when
C. a long time before D. very soon that

22. He will only pass the examination if there is a(n) ________ in his study.
A. progress B. improvement C. rise D. increase

23. ________, he felt so unhappy and lonely.
A. Despite of his health B. Rich as was he
C. Rich as he was D. Despite he was so rich

24. Peter asked me ________.
A. what time does the film start B. what time the film starts
C. what time the film started D. what time did the film start

25. ________ as taste is really a composite sense made up of both taste and smell.

A. That we refer to it
B. What we refer to
C. To which we refer
D. What do we refer to

26. Never before ________ as accelerated as they are now during the technological age.

A. have historical changes been
B. have been historical changes
C. historical changes have been
D. historical have changes been

27. I was taking a quiet walk last night when, ________, there was a loud explosion.

A. all in all
B. all at once
C. suddenly at once
D. once at all

28. Don't throw your jacket on the bed. Hang it ________.

A. up
B. over
C. on
D. in

29. The supervisor told her to keep ________ the good work.

A. over
B. on
C. with
D. up

30. The documentary was so ________ that many viewers cried.

A. moody
B. touching
C. touchy
D. moved

31. "Have you noticed that the manager wears something green every day?" "________"

A. I know. He's a good manager.
B. Sure. He will do that.
C. I know. He must like green.
D. He'd rather do that.

32. "________" "No, I don't play the piano."

A. What kind of music do you like?
B. Do you play the piano?
C. Do you earn a lot by playing the piano?
D. What kind of music do you like?

33. "Excuse me. I'm your new neighbor. I just moved in." "________"

A. Sorry, I don't know.
B. Oh, I don't think so.
C. I'm afraid not.
D. Where to, sir?

34. "How about an evening riverboat tour?" "________"

A. No, it's good to do so.
B. Actually I've never gone on an evening riverboat tour.
C. No, I've never gone on an evening riverboat tour.
D. Actually I've gone twice this week.

35. "Can you come over after the show?" "________"

A. That would be nice.
B. No, I didn't.
C. Please, go ahead.
D. Why don't we go to the show?

36–40. Choose the underlined part among A, B, C or D that needs correcting.

36. Coastal and inland waters are inhabited not only by fish but also by such
A B C
sea creature as shrimps.
D

37. Economists have tried to discourage the use of the phrase
A B
"underdeveloped nation" and encouraging the more accurate phrase
C D
"developing nation" in order to suggest an ongoing process.

38. A gas like propane will combination with water molecules in a saline
A B
solution to form a solid called a hydrate.
C D

39. Regardless of your teaching method, the objective of any conversation
A B
class should be for the students to practise speaking words.
C D

40. A City University professor reported that he discovers a vaccine that has
A B
been 80 percent effective in reducing the instances of tooth decay among
C D
small children.

41-45. Choose the correct sentence among A, B, C or D which has the same meaning as the given one.

41. Anne had the TV on when her parents entered the room.

A. Anne's parents told her to turn on the TV.
B. Anne noticed her parents watching TV.
C. Anne's parents found her watching TV.
D. The TV was on a table in Anne's room.

42. The tourists were unharmed after the train crash.

A. All the tourists were injured in the train crash.
B. None of the tourists were injured in the train crash.
C. The train crash was not harmful for the tourists.
D. The tourists were very afraid after the train crash.

43. I was shocked that John stole the car.

A. John was shocked that he could not take the car.
B. That John stole the car shocked me.
C. John's car was very shocking.
D. The car was stolen, and John was shocked.

44. Many women in remote areas could not find the right way to limit the size of their families.

A. Many women in remote areas were not able finding the right way to limit the size of their families.

B. Many women in remote areas are not able finding the right way to limit the size of their families.

C. Many women in remote areas were not able to find the right way to limit the size of their families.

D. Many women in remote areas are not able to find the right way to limit the size of their families.

45. Housewives are always busy with cooking traditional foods before Tet.

A. Housewives are too busy to cook traditional foods before Tet.

B. Cooking traditional foods before Tet is easy for housewives.

C. Housewives always enjoy cooking traditional foods before Tet.

D. Cooking traditional foods makes housewives busy all the time before Tet.

46–50. Choose the correct sentence among A, B, C or D to complete the following sentences.

46. It was imperative ___________.

A. that he would arrive there in time

B. that he arrive there in time

C. that he had to arrive there in time

D. that he arrived there in time

47. _____ a helicopter, we would have saved the lives of the flood victims.

A. Haven't we had B. Had we had

C. Did we have D. May we have

48. Despite their efforts, ___________.

A. they could not score another goal

B. another goal could not be scored

C. yet they could score another goal

D. and they could not score another goal

49. Supposing you had seen the incident, what _________?

A. would you do B. would you have done

C. would you have been done D. will you do

50. They were such difficult tests ___________.

A. that I couldn't finish B. so I couldn't finish them

C. that I couldn't finish them D. for me to finish

51–60. Choose the word or phrase that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Why do people drink? Often because they (51)_____, but this can't be the (52)____ reason, there (53)_____ be other reasons, too. In many countries, when friends see (54)_____, they often have a drink while they sit and talk. Many English people don't need (55)_____, they drink tea several times (56)_____ day even if they are alone!

In most countries, people say (57)_____ when they drink together. The English (58)_____ "Cheers". In all countries, there are many places (59)_____ main purpose is to sell drinks. Since there are so many of those places, it seemed that many people drink more often than they really (60)_____.

51. A. have thirsty B. have thirst C. are thirsty D. are thirst
52. A. lonely B. single C. only D. alone
53. A. shall B. must C. should D. ought
54. A. each other B. themselves C. them D. another
55. A. another B. any other C. anyone else D. other persons
56. A. a B. during C. the D. by
57. A. something specially B. something special C. anything specially D. anything special
58. A. often say B. often says C. say often D. says often
59. A. of which B. where the C. what's D. that the
60. A. need to B. need it C. must D. must it

61–70. Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answers the question about the passage.

Are you interested in seeing the beautiful fall foliage of New England but tired of traffic jams and overbooked hotels? Then this year forget the crowds in New England and see the beautiful colors of autumn in the Catskills.

These **rugged** mountains in New York State, just 90 miles northwest of New York City are famous for the legendary tales of Rip Van Winkle, and more recently for the summer hotels that **sprang up** in the region during the 1940s, 1950s, and 1960s. Families trying to escape the heat of New York City found the Catskills to be the perfect place to stay for a month or so each summer. By the late 1950s, there were over 500 resorts and hotels offering nighttime entertainments as well as all kinds of outdoor activities. Famous comedians like Jackie Gleason, Joan Rivers, and Sid Caesar all got their start touring the hotel clubs here. Since the introduction of air-conditioning and cheaper air travel, however, families have stopped coming to the Catskills in such large numbers, choosing instead more distant locations at different times of the year. Many of the Catskills hotels closed in the 1970s, but some remain and have expanded and changed their facilities to meet the needs of today's visitors.

Currently, there are many activities available to the traveler besides witnessing the changing colors of the leaves. There is an all-organic sheep farm where visitors can see how a traditional sheep farm operates. There are also hundreds of miles of scenic **drives** in the area. Route 42, for instance, is an excellent site for **spotting** bald eagles. For more information on vacations in the Catskills, call the Office of Public Information.

61. What is the author's main purpose in this passage?

A. to promote the Catskills as a vacation destination

B. to introduce visitors to famous Catskills entertainers
C. to describe the history of the Catskills region
D. to compare the Catskills to New England

62. The word **"rugged"** in the second paragraph could be best replaced by which of the following?
A. barren B. rough C. tall D. lush

63. According to the passage, which of the following caused the decline in the number of resorts in the 1970s?
A. television B. shorter vacations
C. affordable air travel D. more traffic

64. The phrase **"sprang up"** in the second paragraph most probably refers to something that has ________.
A. burst forth B. spread out
C. operated vigorously D. joined together

65. In what season would a tourist most likely have visited the Catskills in the 1950s?
A. fall B. winter C. spring D. summer

66. Which of the following most reflects the author's tone in this passage?
A. light and encouraging B. informative and scientific
C. humorous and sceptical D. regretful and reminiscent

67. What does the passage imply that a visitor might be lucky enough to do?
A. see fall leaves in color B. see a kind of bird
C. work on a sheep farm D. drive on scenic roads

68. The word **"drives"** in the third paragraph refers to ______.
A. excursions B. tracks C. paths D. canyons

69. Which of the following could best replace the word **"spotting"** in the third paragraph?
A. photographing B. seeing
C. painting D. shooting

70. The author implies that in the Catskills there are few ______.
A. leaves B. eagles C. people D. sheep

71–80. Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answers the question about the passage.

It is hard to find artifacts that are genuinely American, but the present day banjo may be one of them. Even though its ancestry is African, the modern banjo is nothing like the early instruments first brought by Africans to the southern **plantations**. In the nineteenth century, the banjo was a standard instrument in minstrel shows, and, as it continued to be used, it was changed in various ways. Machined **pegs** were added for **precise** tuning, frets were added for better intonation, and vellum heads were added to improve the tension. The number of strings also continued to change. Early banjos had four strings, while later models had as many as nine. In the late 1800s, the five-string banjo was developed, a model that had a small unfretted drone string that was played with the thumb. This was the instrument that country singer Earl Scruggs played, and was the type used to produce that great style of music known as American bluegrass.

In the 1920s, the four-string tenor banjo made a remarkable **comeback**, as banjo bands became popular in schools and clubs from coast to coast. Again in the 1960s, there was a **renewed** interest in folk and country music that brought the banjo back into the **forefront** of American 20. It is an American instrument that continues to live on.

71. What does this passage mainly discuss?
A. the lasting effects of bluegrass music
B. the development of an American instrument
C. the life of a banjo
D. changes in music in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries

72. The banjo originally came from ________.
A. southern plantations B. folk and country music
C. minstrel shows D. Africa

73. The word **"plantations"** in the first paragraph most probably refers to ________.
A. types of farms in the South B. southern states
C. southern musical theaters D. bands common in the South

74. Which of the following words is most similar to the word **"pegs"** in the first paragraph?
A. holes B. bars C. pins D. strings

75. The word **"precise"** in the first paragraph could best be replaced by which of the following?
A. accurate B. confirmed C. processed D. forthcoming

76. According to the passage, all of the following are true of the five-string banjo EXCEPT ________.
A. it was used by Earl Scruggs
B. it was famous in the production of bluegrass music
C. it had an unfretted string
D. it was a tenor banjo

77. Which of the following is most similar to the meaning of **"comeback"** in the second paragraph?
A. performance B. reappearance C. gain D. achievement

78. The word **"renewed"** in the second paragraph could be best replaced by which of the following?
A. rescued B. remarkable C. revived D. renowned

79. Which of the following means most nearly the same as the word **"forefront"** in the second paragraph?
A. forecast B. spotlight C. footnote D. record

80. Which of the following best indicates the author's attitude toward the banjo?
A. It is a unique instrument.
B. It should be in a museum.
C. It should be used more.
D. It must be kept alive.

ĐÁP ÁN

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 1

PHÁT ÂM

Exercise 1:
1. D 2. D 3. D 4. B 5. A 6. D 7. A 8. C 9. C 10. C

Exercise 2:
1. A 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. B 7. D 8. D 9. B 10. B

Exercise 3:
1. A 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. A 6. D 7. A 8. D 9. C 10. C

Exercise 4:
1. B 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A 6. B 7. C 8. D 9. A 10. B

Exercise 5:
1. C 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. B 6. A 7. B 8. B 9. A 10. C

Exercise 6:
1. C 2. D 3. D 4. A 5. A 6. D 7. A 8. B 9. B 10. C

Exercise 7:
1. B 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. D 7. C 8. B 9. B 10. C

Exercise 8:
1. D 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. C 6. A 7. D 8. A 9. C 10. C

Exercise 9:
1. D 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. C 6. B 7. A 8. B 9. B 10. C

Exercise 10:
1. A 2. D 3. C 4. B 5. C 6. A 7. C 8. C 9. B 10. C

Exercise 11:
1. A 2. A 3. D 4. D 5. A 6. D 7. B 8. A 9. A 10. D

Exercise 12:
1. B 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. D 6. B 7. C 8. B 9. A 10. A

Exercise 13:
1. B 2. C 3. B 4. D 5. A 6. C 7. A 8. C 9. D 10. B

Exercise 14:
1. B 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. A 6. C 7. D 8. D 9. A 10. C

Exercise 15:
1. C 2. D 3. D 4. A 5. B 6. D 7. B 8. C 9. B 10. A

Exercise 16:
1. D 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. D 6. C 7. C 8. C 9. D 10. B

TRỌNG ÂM

Exercise 17:
1. A 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. D 6. D 7. D 8. A 9. C 10. A

Exercise 18:
1. B 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. C 6. C 7. A 8. D 9. B 10. B

Exercise 19:
1. C 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. B 6. A 7. D 8. D 9. C 10. B

Exercise 20:
1. D 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. D 6. C 7. C 8. B 9. C 10. B

Exercise 21:
1. B 2. C 3. D 4. C 5. A 6. C 7. A 8. A 9. D 10. C

Exercise 22:
1. D 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. B 6. D 7. A 8. A 9. D 10. C

Exercise 23:
1. C 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. D 6. D 7. A 8. A 9. D 10. B

Exercise 24:
1. A 2. D 3. D 4. B 5. A 6. D 7. B 8. D 9. A 10. C

Exercise 25:
1. B 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. D 6. A 7. B 8. D 9. B 10. C

Exercise 26:
1. B 2. D 3. A 4. D 5. C 6. C 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. D

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 2

PHƯƠNG THỨC CẤU TẠO TỪ

Exercise 1:
1. C 2. C 3. D 4. C 5. D 6. B 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. D

Exercise 2:
1. B 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. B 6. B 7. A 8. B 9. A 10. B

Exercise 3:
1. A 2. C 3. B 4. D 5. B 6. C 7. D 8. D 9. D 10. C

Exercise 4:
1. C 2. D 3. D 4. C 5. A 6. D 7. B 8. C 9. A 10. A

Exercise 5:
1. B 2. D 3. B 4. D 5. B 6. B 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. D

CHỌN TỪ – SỰ KẾT HỢP TỪ

Exercise 1:
1. D 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. C 6. C 7. D 8. A 9. C 10. D

Exercise 2:
1. C 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. A 6. D 7. C 8. B 9. C 10. B

Exercise 3:
1. D 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. D 6. C 7. D 8. C 9. D 10. A

Exercise 4:
1. A 2. C 3. B 4. D 5. B 6. C 7. B 8. D 9. C 10. D

Exercise 5:
1. A 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. C 6. C 7. D 8. D 9. C 10. C

Exercise 6:
1. B 2. D 3. B 4. B 5. D 6. C 7. D 8. C 9. B 10. A

Exercise 7:
1. D 2. D 3. D 4. A 5. D 6. D 7. C 8. C 9. D 10. C

Exercise 8:
1. C 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. D 6. A 7. B 8. C 9. C 10. C

Exercise 9:
1. A 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. C 6. A 7. C 8. D 9. B 10. A

Exercise 10:
1. B 2. D 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. B 7. D 8. C 9. D 10. C

Exercise 11:
1. C 2. B 3. B 4. D 5. C 6. C 7. B 8. B 9. C 10. B

Exercise 12:
1. C 2. C 3. D 4. D 5. D 6. C 7. A 8. C 9. D 10. D

Exercise 13:
1. B 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. A 6. B 7. D 8. C 9. C 10. A

Exercise 14:
1. C 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. A 6. B 7. A 8. B 9. B 10. C

THÀNH NGỮ

Exercise 1:
1. D 2. D 3. D 4. B 5. C 6. A 7. A 8. C 9. D 10. D

Exercise 2:
1. B 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. D 6. B 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. D

Exercise 3:
1. D 2. B 3. D 4. D 5. B 6. D 7. A 8. B 9. B 10. B

Exercise 4:
1. D 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. C 6. A 7. B 8. D 9. B 10. C

Exercise 5:
1. C 2. D 3. B 4. D 5. B 6. D 7. A 8. B 9. D 10. A

Exercise 6:
1. D 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. B 7. C 8. B 9. C 10. B

Exercise 7:
1. C 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. C 7. B 8. A 9. D 10. A

Exercise 8:
1. C 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. C 6. D 7. A 8. B 9. A 10. C

NGỮ ĐỘNG TỪ

Exercise 1:
1. C 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. D 6. C 7. C 8. D 9. D 10. A

Exercise 2:
1. D 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. A 7. D 8. C 9. B 10. A

Exercise 3:
1. D 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. A 6. D 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. D

Exercise 4:
1. B 2. A 3. C 4. D 5. B 6. C 7. D 8. B 9. B 10. C

Exercise 5:
1. A 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. D 6. B 7. C 8. A 9. C 10. A

Exercise 6:
1. C 2. B 3. D 4. D 5. D 6. D 7. C 8. B 9. A 10. C

Exercise 7:
1. B 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. D 6. D 7. A 8. D 9. D 10. B

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 3

I. THÌ CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ

Exercise 1:
1. D 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. D 6. A 7. D 8. D 9. B 10. D

Exercise 2:
1. A 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. C 6. D 7. A 8. B 9. A 10. B

Exercise 3:
1. C 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. A 6. C 7. C 8. D 9. D 10. A

Exercise 4:
1. C 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. D 6. B 7. D 8. A 9. C 10. C

Exercise 5:
1. A 2. A 3. C 4. D 5. B 6. A 7. B 8. A 9. A 10. A

Exercise 6:
1. A 2. D 3. C 4. C 5. B 6. A 7. A 8. D 9. A 10. C

Exercise 7:
1. C 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. A 7. D 8. A 9. C 10. D

Exercise 8:
1. B 2. A 3. D 4. A 5. A 6. C 7. C 8. B 9. B 10. D

Exercise 9:
1. B 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. D 6. B 7. C 8. B 9. C 10. B

Exercise 10:
1. B 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. B 6. B 7. B 8. D 9. B 10. A

II. ĐỘNG TỪ TÌNH THÁI

Exercise 1:
1. A 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. D 6. D 7. A 8. D 9. C 10. C

Exercise 2:
1. C 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. A 6. C 7. D 8. D 9. A 10. C

Exercise 3:
1. B 2. C 3. D 4. D 5. A 6. D 7. D 8. C 9. A 10. D

Exercise 4:
1. B 2. C 3. D 4. A 5. B 6. D 7. D 8. C 9. C 10. B

Exercise 5:
1. C 2. B 3. B 4. D 5. B 6. C 7. B 8. B 9. A 10. B

III. TÍNH TỪ, TRẠNG TỪ, CẤU TRÚC SO SÁNH

Exercise 1:
1. B 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. A 6. C 7. B 8. C 9. D 10. C

Exercise 2:
1. A 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A 6. B 7. A 8. A 9. C 10. C

Exercise 3:
1. B 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. D 6. D 7. B 8. B 9. B 10. B

Exercise 4:
1. B 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. D 6. A 7. C 8. D 9. B 10. C

Exercise 5:
1. C 2. D 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. A 7. D 8. A 9. C 10. D

Exercise 6:
1. C 2. D 3. A 4. A 5. C 6. C 7. A 8. C 9. C 10. B

Exercise 7:
1. D 2. C 3. C 4. C 5. C 6. C 7. C 8. D 9. C 10. C

Exercise 8:
1. A 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. A 6. A 7. A 8. A 9. A 10. A

IV. THỂ BỊ ĐỘNG

Exercise 1:
1. B 2. D 3. A 4. A 5. A 6. D 7. C 8. A 9. C 10. B

Exercise 2:
1. A 2. B 3. D 4. B 5. C 6. D 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. D

Exercise 3:
1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. A 7. C 8. C 9. A 10. B

Exercise 4:
1. B 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. D 6. A 7. B 8. B 9. A 10. C

Exercise 5:
1. C 2. B 3. D 4. C 5. C 6. C 7. B 8. C 9. A 10. A

V. CÂU GIÁN TIẾP

Exercise 1:
1. A 2. A 3. D 4. D 5. C 6. C 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. D

Exercise 2:
1. D 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. A 6. D 7. A 8. B 9. A 10. B

Exercise 3:
1. A 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. B 7. A 8. B 9. C 10. C

Exercise 4:
1. C 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. A 7. D 8. A 9. C 10. A

Exercise 5:
1. A 2. B 3. D 4. B 5. A 6. C 7. D 8. A 9. C 10. A

VI. CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN

Exercise 1:
1. A 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. B 7. C 8. A 9. A 10. A

Exercise 2:
1. D 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. B 6. C 7. B 8. A 9. D 10. B

Exercise 3:
1. B 2. D 3. C 4. B 5. B 6. B 7. D 8. B 9. C 10. B

Exercise 4:
1. D 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. D 6. A 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. A

Exercise 5:
1. A 2. D 3. C 4. B 5. C 6. C 7. D 8. A 9. B 10. B

VII. MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ

Exercise 1:
1. A 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. A 6. B 7. C 8. B 9. C 10. C

Exercise 2:
1. B 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. A 6. B 7. C 8. C 9. B 10. D

Exercise 3:
1. A 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. A 6. C 7. C 8. A 9. C 10. A

VIII. TỪ NỐI MỆNH ĐỀ, TỪ NỐI CÂU

Exercise 1:
1. A 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. B 6. B 7. C 8. B 9. B 10. C

Exercise 2:
1. B 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. B 6. D 7. B 8. D 9. C 10. C

Exercise 3:
1. D 2. D 3. C 4. B 5. A 6. A 7. B 8. D 9. A 10. A

Exercise 4:
1. B 2. D 3. B 4. C 5. D 6. B 7. A 8. D 9. B 10. C

Exercise 5:
1. D 2. C 3. B 4. B 5. A 6. C 7. D 8. A 9. A 10. D

Exercise 6:
1. C 2. D 3. C 4. C 5. B 6. B 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. B

Exercise 7:
1. C 2. D 3. A 4. D 5. B 6. C 7. D 8. A 9. D 10. B

Exercise 8:
1. B 2. D 3. D 4. A 5. C 6. B 7. B 8. C 9. B 10. A

Exercise 9:
1. C 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. D 7. B 8. B 9. A 10. B

Exercise 10:
1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. B 6. B 7. A 8. B 9. C 10. B

IX. MẠO TỪ & GIỚI TỪ

MẠO TỪ

Exercise 1:
1. C 2. B 3. D 4. C 5. D 6. A 7. B 8. B 9. C 10. C

Exercise 2:
1. B 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. C 6. A 7. A 8. B 9. D 10. B

Exercise 3:
1. B 2. D 3. B 4. D 5. B 6. D 7. C 8. A 9. B 10. B

Exercise 4:
1. A 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. C 6. D 7. A 8. C 9. D 10. C

Exercise 5:
1. B 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. A 6. C 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. A

GIỚI TỪ

Exercise 1:
1. B 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. A 6. C 7. B 8. C 9. B 10. D

Exercise 2:
1. C 2. D 3. B 4. C 5. A 6. A 7. B 8. C 9. D 10. B

Exercise 3:
1. C 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A 6. B 7. D 8. C 9. A 10. A

Exercise 4:
1. D 2. B 3. C 4. D 5. C 6. A 7. C 8. B 9. C 10. B

Exercise 5:
1. C 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. A 6. B 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. C

Exercise 6:
1. D 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. D 6. A 7. B 8. C 9. A 10. C

Exercise 7:
1. D 2. C 3. D 4. C 5. B 6. D 7. D 8. A 9. D 10. A

Exercise 8:
1. B 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. C 6. D 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. A

Exercise 9:
1. D 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. A 6. C 7. B 8. B 9. D 10. C

Exercise 10:
1. B 2. D 3. D 4. D 5. D 6. C 7. A 8. C 9. C 10. A

Exercise 11:
1. D 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. B 6. B 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. A

Exercise 12:
1. A 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. B 6. C 7. A 8. A 9. D 10. A

Exercise 13:
1. B 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. A 6. C 7. A 8. B 9. D 10. B

Exercise 14:
1. C 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. D 6. C 7. B 8. C 9. B 10. A

Exercise 15:
1. A 2. B 3: A 4. A 5. C 6. A 7. B 8. D 9. C 10. B

Exercise 16:
1. D 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. D 6. C 7. A 8. C 9. C 10. A

Exercise 17:
1. C 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. B 6. A 7. C 8. C 9. C 10. D

Exercise 18:
1. C 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. B 6. B 7. B 8. C 9. B 10. D

Exercise 19:
1. B 2. D 3. B 4. C 5. D 6. B 7. D 8. B 9. B 10. C

Exercise 20:
1. B 2. B 3. D 4. D 5. A 6. D 7. D 8. A 9. B 10. D
Exercise 21:
1. D 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. D 6. C 7. A 8. D 9. B 10. D

X. ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MẪU & DANH ĐỘNG TỪ

Exercise 1:
1. B 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. A 6. C 7. D 8. C 9. B 10. D
Exercise 2:
1. C 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. B 6. C 7. D 8. B 9. C 10. A
Exercise 3:
1. B 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. D 6. A 7. C 8. B 9. D 10. A
Exercise 4:
1. B 2. D 3. B 4. B 5. B 6. A 7. B 8. A 9. C 10. A
Exercise 5:
1. D 2. C 3. C 4. C 5. C 6. B 7. D 8. D 9. A 10. B
Exercise 6:
1. A 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. A 6. A 7. C 8. A 9. B 10. B
Exercise 7:
1. A 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. A 6. B 7. C 8. C 9. B 10. D
Exercise 8:
1. C 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. C 6. C 7. C 8. C 9. C 10. D
Exercise 9:
1. B 2. D 3. B 4. B 5. C 6. C 7. D 8. C 9. A 10. B
Exercise 10:
1. A 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. B 6. D 7. C 8. D 9. D 10. A

XI. QUÁ KHỨ GIẢ ĐỊNH & THỨC GIẢ ĐỊNH

Exercise 1:
1. C 2. C 3. A 4. C 5. C 6. B 7. B 8. C 9. D 10. C
Exercise 2:
1. B 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. C 6. A 7. C 8. C 9. A 10. B
Exercise 3:
1. A 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. C 6. C 7. D 8. C 9. B 10. B
Exercise 4:
1. C 2. C 3. C 4. D 5. B 6. A 7. D 8. D 9. A 10. D
Exercise 5:
1. D 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. B 6. B 7. D 8. B 9. C 10. B
Exercise 6:
1. B 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A 6. A 7. C 8. C 9. A 10. C

XII. SỰ HÒA HỢP GIỮA CHỦ TỪ VÀ ĐỘNG TỪ

Exercise 1:
1. A 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. C 6. C 7. D 8. A 9. C 10. A
Exercise 2:
1. D 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. B 6. A 7. B 8. D 9. D 10. D
Exercise 3:
1. A 2. A 3. D 4. A 5. A 6. B 7. C 8. D 9. A 10. B
Exercise 4:
1. C 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. C 6. B 7. B 8. C 9. A 10. C

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 4

Exercise 1:
1. A 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. C 6. B 7. D 8. A 9. B 10. B
Exercise 2:
1. A 2. C 3. A 4. D 5. B 6. D 7. C 8. A 9. B 10. D
Exercise 3:
1. A 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. C 6. D 7. C 8. A 9. B 10. B
Exercise 4:
1. A 2. D 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. C 7. B 8. A 9. D 10. A
Exercise 5:
1. C 2. B 3. D 4. D 5. C 6. D 7. D 8. A 9. A 10. C
Exercise 6:
1. A 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. B 6. B 7. D 8. C 9. A 10. C
Exercise 7:
1. B 2. C 3. D 4. A 5. D 6. A 7. B 8. A 9. C 10. C
Exercise 8:
1. A 2. C 3. C 4. A 5. D 6. B 7. C 8. B 9. B 10. B
Exercise 9:
1. D 2. B 3. D 4. C 5. B 6. B 7. B 8. A 9. C 10. B
Exercise 10:
1. C 2. C 3. C 4. C 5. A 6. D 7. B 8. D 9. B 10. D
Exercise 11:
1. C 2. D 3. A 4. D 5. D 6. D 7. B 8. A 9. A 10. B
Exercise 12:
1. C 2. C 3. A 4. D 5. B 6. D 7. B 8. C 9. B 10. A
Exercise 13:
1. B 2. C 3. D 4. C 5. D 6. C 7. C 8. D 9. C 10. B
Exercise 14:
1. C 2. D 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. A 7. B 8. C 9. B 10. B

Exercise 15:
1. C 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. B 6. C 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. C

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 5

Bài tập đọc trắc nghiệm điền từ vào chỗ trống

Exercise 1: 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. C
6. D 7. C 8. A 9. D 10. B

Exercise 2: 1. B 2. A 3. A 4. D 5. C
6. B 7. A 8. B 9. A 10. D

Exercise 3: 1. A 2. C 3. C 4. D 5. C
6. A 7. B 8. C 9. A 10. B

Exercise 4: 1. C 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. D
6. C 7. A 8. B 9. D 10. C

Exercise 5: 1. B 2. A 3. D 4. A 5. D
6. C 7. A 8. A 9. D 10. B

Bài tập trắc nghiệm đọc hiểu

Exercise 1: 1. C 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. B
Exercise 2: 1. C 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. D
Exercise 3: 1. A 2. B 3. D 4. B 5. C
Exercise 4: 1. B 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. A
Exercise 5: 1. A 2. D 3. D 4. C 5. A
Exercise 6: 1. B 2. C 3. C 4. D 5. B
Exercise 7: 1. C 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. C
Exercise 8: 1. A 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. B
Exercise 9: 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. D
6. B 7. C 8. A 9. D 10. A

Exercise 10: 1. A 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. A
6. D 7. C 8. B 9. A 10. D

Exercise 11: 1. A 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. C
6. D 7. A 8. D 9. C 10. B

Exercise 12: 1. A 2. C 3. B 4. D 5. A
6. D 7. D 8. C 9. B 10. A

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 6

Bài tập câu đảo ngữ

Exercise 1:
1. C 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. C 6. B 7. D 8. D 9. D 10. B

Exercise 2:
1. B 2. B 3. B 4. B 5. A 6. A 7. A 8. A 9. B 10. A

Exercise 3:
1. A 2. B 3. D 4. C 5. B 6. B 7. A 8. B 9. C 10. C

Exercise 4:
1. A 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. C 6. B 7. A 8. D 9. B 10. A

Exercise 5:
1. B 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. D 6. B 7. A 8. B 9. C 10. D

Bài tập trắc nghiệm hoàn thành câu

Exercise 1:
1. C 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. B 6. B 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. C

Exercise 2:
1. B 2. A 3. D 4. A 5. B 6. C 7. A 8. C 9. A 10. C

Exercise 3:
1. D 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. B 6. C 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. B

Exercise 4:
1. B 2. A 3. A 4. A 5. B 6. B 7. A 8. B 9. C 10. A

Exercise 5:
1. D 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. D 6. C 7. D 8. D 9. D 10. A

Exercise 6:
1. B 2. D 3. B 4. D 5. A 6. B 7. C 8. A 9. C 10. D

Exercise 7:
1. C 2. D 3. B 4. B 5. B 6. A 7. C 8. D 9. C 10. A

Exercise 8:
1. D 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. D 6. A 7. D 8. C 9. B 10. A

Exercise 9:
1. C 2. C 3. C 4. D 5. D 6. B 7. C 8. A 9. D 10. C

Exercise 10:
1. C 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. A 6. C 7. C 8. B 9. D 10. A

Bài tập trắc nghiệm tìm câu đồng nghĩa

Exercise 1:
1. D 2. B 3. D 4. C 5. C 6. B 7. A 8. A 9. A 10. B

Exercise 2:
1. D 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. D 6. D 7. A 8. C 9. A 10. A

Exercise 3:
1. A 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. B 6. D 7. B 8. C 9. C 10. B

Exercise 4:
1. B 2. D 3. B 4. B 5. C 6. D 7. B 8. C 9. D 10. B

Exercise 5:
1. B 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. B 6. B 7. C 8. B 9. A 10. A

Exercise 6:
1. B 2. D 3. D 4. D 5. A 6. C 7. D 8. A 9. C 10. D

Exercise 7:
1. C 2. D 3. B 4. B 5. B 6. A 7. A 8. D 9. B 10. B

Exercise 8:
1. B 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. B 6. A 7. C 8. D 9. D 10. D

Exercise 9:
1. D 2. B 3. D 4. B 5. B 6. A 7. A 8. B 9. D 10. B

Exercise 10:
1. B 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. C 6. A 7. B 8. C 9. D 10. A

Bài tập trắc nghiệm phát hiện lỗi sai

Exercise 1:
1. A → is
2. D → our school has
3. C → is standing
4. D → didn't you
5. B → had been running
6. D → called
7. A → has taken
8. A → has been playing
9. B → has written
10. A → have been polishing

Exercise 2:
1. B → has graduated/ graduates
2. B → will have been
3. B → will have discovered
4. A →have seen
5. C → think
6. B → have given
7. C → had attended
8. A → have been waiting
9. A → for
10. C → began

Exercise 3:
1. A → object to
2. B → what was
3. D → was still alive
4. D → graduated/had graduated
5. C → had put
6. B → make full use
7. D → be
8. A → Ø
9. A → considers
10. B → are announced

Exercise 4:
1. C → work
2. B → in my attempt
3. A → obedient
4. C → share
5. C → went
6. C → had worked for
7. B → said
8. B → whether
9. A → Pointing at
10. B → how much

Exercise 5:
1. D → abroad
2. C → have tried to learn
3. C → or
6. C → to help
7. C → interesting
8. A → hadn't

4. D → for which
5. C → constantly
9. C → have made
10. A → don't

Exercise 6:
1. A → Despite/In spite of
2. C → of growing
3. C → Ø
4. C → by
5. D → the next
6. B → with
7. B → with doing
8. A → of
9. C → to
10. D → for him

Exercise 7:
1. D → were going
2. B → have been
3. C → hasn't spoken
4. B → happened
5. C → since
6. D → lent
7. C → ever been
8. D → has been
9. C → was
10. A → work

Exercise 8:
1. A → of
2. C → on
3. A → who
4. B → whose
5. B → from him
6. C → of whom
7. C → have made
8. B → who
9. A → whom
10. B → where

Exercise 9:
1. D → because of
2. B → told not only
3. A → hard
4. C → Ø
5. B → peaceful
6. B → rapidly
7. B → might be
8. B → in
9. C → although
10. B → to hunt

Exercise 10:
1. B → long-distance
2. B → has been
3. C → of
4. B → was published
5. C → Ø
6. D → as
7. C → a little
8. B → performed
9. B → is close
10. D → will be awarded

Đề thi đề nghị
(Tốt nghiệp THPT & Tuyển sinh ĐH, CĐ)

TEST 1

1. B 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. B 6. C 7. C 8. D 9. A 10. A
11. D 12. C 13. A 14. B 15. C 16. A 17. B 18. B 19. D 20. C
21. C 22. A 23. C 24. B 25. D 26. D 27. C 28. B 29. C 30. B

31. D → in the last few years
32. B → weeding/ to be weeded
33. B → am
34. C → to be
35. D → improve

36. D 37. D 38. B 39. C 40. A 41. B 42. A 43. C 44. D 45. B
46. C 47. A 48. C 49. B 50. A

TEST 2

1. B 2. C 3. C 4. D 5. D 6. B 7. A 8. D 9. D 10. C
11. A 12. C 13. C 14. B 15. A 16. D 17. A 18. B 19. A 20. C
21. A 22. D 23. D 24. C 25. C 26. D 27. B 28. A 29. B 30. C

31. B → had travelled
32. A → who acted
33. B → will
34. C → easier
35. B → from

36. D 37. D 38. A 39. B 40. C 41. B 42. C 43. A 44. D 45. B
46. B 47. C 48. C 49. B 50. A

TEST 3

1. B 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. B 6. D 7. C 8. C 9. A 10. C
11. B 12. C 13. B 14. B 15. D 16. B 17. C 18. A 19. B 20. A
21. D 22. B 23. C 24. B 25. B 26. A 27. B 28. B 29. D 30. B

31. C → will have been
32. D → have finished
33. D → least
34. D → would/ did
35. A → not only plays

36. D 37. D 38. A 39. B 40. D 41. C 42. B 43. D 44. A 45. B
46. A 47. C 48. B 49. B 50. D

TEST 4

1. D 2. D 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. B 7. A 8. C 9. A 10. B
11. B 12. A 13. A 14. C 15. C 16. B 17. B 18. C 19. A 20. D
21. C 22. C 23. C 24. C 25. A 26. D 27. D 28. C 29. A 30. B
31. A 32. D 33. C 34. A 35. B

36. D → and
38. C → bad
40. C → traveling
37. B → near/ next to
39. A → Ø

41. B 42. D 43. D 44. B 45. B 46. D 47. B 48. C 49. D 50. D
51. C 52. B 53. D 54. D 55. D 56. A 57. A 58. C 59. B 60. A
61. D 62. A 63. C 64. C 65. D 66. B 67. C 68. A 69. A 70. B
71. D 72. B 73. D 74. C 75. A 76. C 77. A 78. D 79. B 80. B

TEST 5

1. C 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. B 6. D 7. B 8. C 9. A 10. D
11. A 12. B 13. D 14. B 15. D 16. D 17. B 18. D 19. A 20. D
21. C 22. B 23. C 24. C 25. A 26. A 27. B 28. A 29. D 30. B
31. C 32. B 33. A 34. D 35. A

36. D → sea creatures
38. B → combine
40. A → (had) discovered
37. C → (to) encourage
39. D → spoken words

41. C 42. B 43. B 44. C 45. D 46. B 47. B 48. A 49. B 50. C
51. C 52. C 53. B 54. A 55. C 56. A 57. B 58. A 59. B 60. A
61. A 62. B 63. C 64. A 65. D 66. A 67. B 68. A 69. B 70. C
71. B 72. D 73. A 74. C 75. A 76. D 77. B 78. C 79. B 80. A

TÀI LIỆU THAM KHẢO

1. *Cấu trúc đề thi môn: Ngữ văn, Lịch sử, Địa Lí, Ngoại ngữ năm 2010 – Dùng để ôn thi Tốt nghiệp THPT và thi Tuyển sinh Đại học, Cao đẳng năm 2010*, Nguyễn An Ninh (Chủ biên), Nhà Xuất bản Giáo Dục Việt Nam.

2. *A Practical English Grammar*, 1990, A. J. Thomson, A. V. Martinet, Oxford University Press.

3. *English Grammar In Use*, 2nd Edition, Raymond Murphy.

4. *Oxford Guide to English Grammar*, 1994, John Eastwood, Oxford University Press.

5. *Understanding and Using English Grammar*, Betty Schrampfer Azar, Prentice Hall Regents.

6. *LinguaForum TOEFL iBT*, 2006, LinguaForum, Inc.

7. *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary*, 3rd Edition, 2008, Cambridge University Press.

8. *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary*, 8th Edition, Oxford University Press.

MỤC LỤC

Lời nói đầu 3
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 1: NGỮ ÂM 5
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 2: TỪ VỰNG 21
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 3: NGỮ PHÁP 74
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 4: CHỨC NĂNG GIAO TIẾP 189
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 5: KĨ NĂNG ĐỌC 213
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 5: KĨ NĂNG VIẾT 245
ĐỀ THI ĐỀ NGHỊ 290
(Tốt nghiệp THPT & Tuyển sinh ĐH, CĐ)
- Test 1 (Tốt nghiệp THPT) 290
- Test 2 (Tốt nghiệp THPT) 294
- Test 3 (Tốt nghiệp THPT) 298
- Test 4 (Tuyển sinh ĐH, CĐ) 302
- Test 5 (Tuyển sinh ĐH, CĐ) 310
ĐÁP ÁN 318
Tài liệu tham khảo 333

SÁCH PHÁT HÀNH TẠI

***HỆ THỐNG NHÀ SÁCH & SIÊU THỊ CỦA**
CÔNG TI CỔ PHẦN VĂN HÓA DU LỊCH GIA LAI TRÊN TOÀN QUỐC
***HỆ THỐNG NHÀ SÁCH & SIÊU THỊ CỦA**
CÔNG TI CỔ PHẦN VĂN HÓA PHƯƠNG NAM TRÊN TOÀN QUỐC

ĐÀ NẴNG:	**NS MINH TRÍ** – 103 Lý Thái Tổ
QUẢNG NGÃI:	**NS TRẦN QUỐC TUẤN** – 526 Quang Trung
NHA TRANG:	**CÔNG TY CP PHS** – 34 – 36 Thống Nhất – Nha Trang
	SIÊU THỊ TÂN TIẾN – 11 Lê Thành Phương
BÌNH THUẬN:	**NS HƯNG ĐẠO** – 328 Trần Hưng Đạo – TP. Phan Thiết
ĐỒNG NAI:	**NS KIM NGÂN** – 88 Cách Mạng Tháng Tám – TP. Biên Hòa
VŨNG TÀU:	**NS ĐÔNG HẢI** – 38 Lý Thường Kiệt
	NS ABC – 204 Bình Giã
GIA LAI:	**CÔNG TY SÁCH TBTH** – 40B Hùng Vương
DAKLAK:	**NS GIÁO DỤC** 19 Trường Chinh
	NS LÝ THƯỜNG KIỆT – 55 – 57 Lý Thường Kiệt
KONTUM:	**CÔNG TY CP SÁCH TBTH** – 129 Phan Đình Phùng
LÂM ĐỒNG:	**CÔNG TY CP SÁCH TBTH** – 09 Nguyễn Văn Cừ – Đà Lạt
DĂK NÔNG:	**NS GIÁO DỤC** – 30 Trần Hưng Đạo – Gia Nghĩ
TÂY NINH:	**NS VĂN NGHỆ** – 295 Đường 30 tháng 4
LONG AN:	**CÔNG TY PHS** – 04 Võ Văn Tần – TX. Tân An
TIỀN GIANG:	**CÔNG TY CP SÁCH TBTH** – 22 Hùng Vương – TP. Mỹ Tho
CẦN THƠ:	**CÔNG TY CP SÁCH TBTH** – 132 Đường 30 tháng 4
	NS HỒNG ÂN – 94 Xô Viết Nghệ Tĩnh
HẬU GIANG:	**CÔNG TY SÁCH TBTH** – 50 Nguyễn Thái Học – TX Vị Thanh
ĐỒNG THÁP:	**NS VIỆT HƯNG** – 200 Nguyễn Huệ – TP. Cao Lãnh
BẾN TRE:	**CÔNG TY CP SÁCH TBTH** – 03 Đồng Khởi
SÓC TRĂNG:	**NS TRẺ** – 41 Trần Hưng Đạo
	NS TRANG – 112 Nguyễn Thị Minh Khai
BẠC LIÊU:	**CÔNG TY CP SÁCH TBTH** – 59 Lý Thường Kiệt – Phường 3
	TRUNG TÂM PHS – 57 Hoàng Văn Thụ
KIÊN GIANG:	**NS ĐÔNG HỒ I** – 98B Trần Phú – Rạch Giá
	NS ĐÔNG HỒ II – 989 Nguyễn Trung Trực – Rạch Giá
CÀ MAU:	**CÔNG TY CP SÁCH TBTH** – 26 – 28 Lê Lợi – Phường 2
BÌNH DƯƠNG:	**NHÀ SÁCH 277** – 518 Cách Mạng Tháng Tám – Thủ Dầu Một
AN GIANG:	**NS THƯ QUÁN** – 3/5 Tôn Đức Thắng – TP. Long Xuyên
	NS THANH KIÊN – 496 Võ Thị Sáu – TP. Long Xuyên
	TT VĂN HÓA TỔNG HỢP – 15 – 17 Hai Bà Trưng

SÁCH CÓ BÁN LẺ TẠI CÁC CỬA HÀNG SÁCH TRÊN TOÀN QUỐC

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA HÀ NỘI
16 Hàng Chuối – Hai Bà Trưng – Hà Nội
Điện thoại: (04) 39724852; (04) 39724770. Fax: (04) 39714899

* * *

Chịu trách nhiệm xuất bản:
Giám đốc: PHÙNG QUỐC BẢO
Tổng biên tập: PHẠM THỊ TRÂM

Biên tập: HOÀNG THU HẰNG
Kĩ thuật vi tính: THANH VINH
Trình bày bìa: XUÂN THỪA

Thực hiện liên kết: **Nhà sách HỒNG ÂN**

SÁCH LIÊN KẾT

TỔNG ÔN TẬP CÁC CHUYÊN ĐỀ TIẾNG ANH
Mã số: 2L- 263ĐH2011
In 2.000 cuốn, khổ 16 × 24cm tại Công ty in Văn Lang.
Giấy phép xuất bản số: 911-2011/CXB/03-113/ĐHQGHN, ngày 17/8/2011.
Quyết định xuất bản số: 248LK-XH/QĐ - NXBĐHQGHN ngày 18/8/2011.
In xong và nộp lưu chiểu quý IV năm 2011.